This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

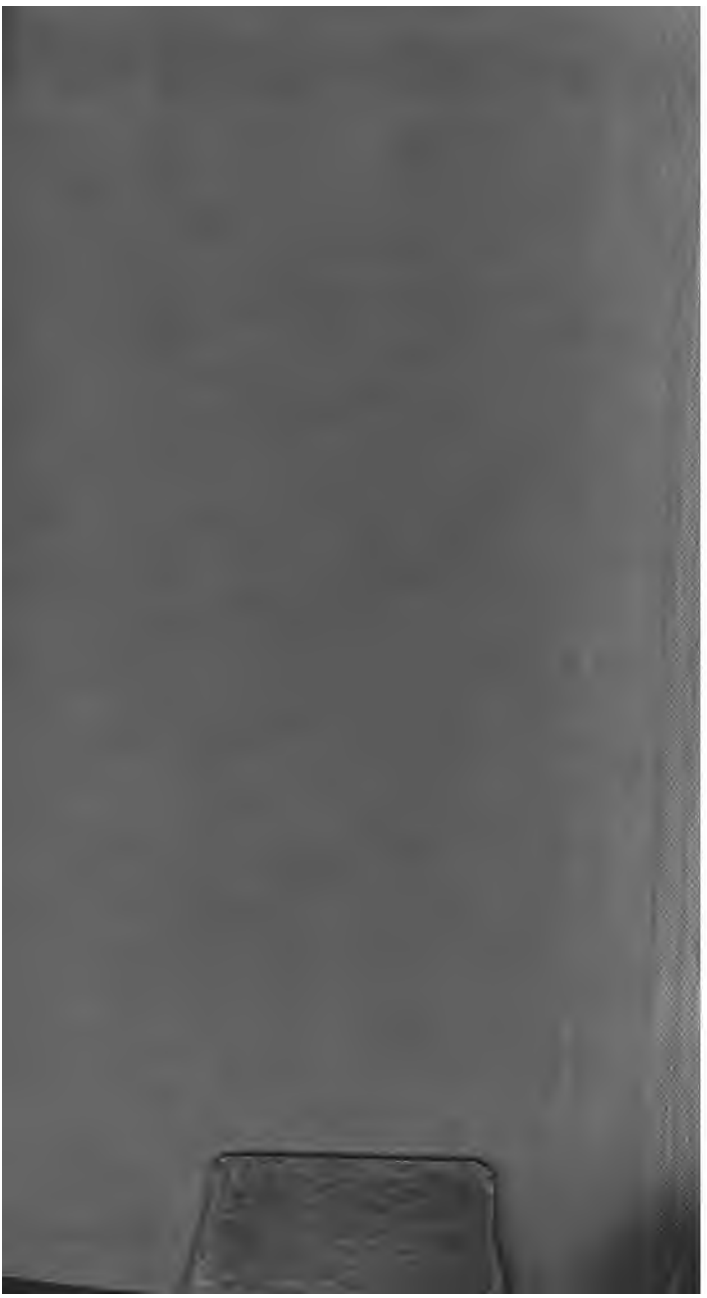
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



GRAMMAR

OF THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

WITH

PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

BY N. WANOSTROCHT, LL. D.

SEVENTH AMERICAN FROM THE LAST LONDON EDITION.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

A VERY COMPREHENSIVE TABLE OF CONTENTS,

AND AN ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT OF THE

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH REFERENCE TO THE PLACES WHERE THEY ARE CONJUGATED.

WITH

ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS;

AND A SCHEME FOR PARSING.

ALSO, A

TREATISE ON FRENCH VERSIFICATION,

BY M. DE WAILLY,

Member of the National Institute of France, &c. &c.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY RICHARDSON & LORD.

PRINTED BY J. H. A. FROST.

1824.

H. L. FAIRCHILD

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
142301
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
1900.

DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, TO WIT:

District Clerk's Office.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the eighteenth day of March, A. D. 1824, and in the forty-eighth year of the Independence of the United States of America, *Richardson & Lord*, of the said District, have deposited in this Office the Title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors, in the words following, *to wit:*

A Grammar of the French Language, with Practical Exercises, by N. Wanostrocht, LL. D. Seventh American from the last London Edition, to which is added, a very comprehensive Table of Contents, and an Alphabetical Arrangement of the Irregular Verbs, with reference to the places where they are conjugated, with Alterations, Additions and Improvements, and a Scheme for Parsing, also a Treatise on French Versification. By M. De Wailly, Member of the National Institute of France, &c. &c.

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled, "An Act for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the Copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned:" and also to an Act entitled, "An Act supplementaty to an Act, entitled, 'An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the Arts of Designing, Engraving and Etching Historical, and other Prints'"

JOHN W. DAVIS,
Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE publishers of the previous Boston editions of this Grammar, now offer a new and improved edition of a work which has become generally known and esteemed.

When it was first determined to reprint this judicious system of theoretically and practically teaching the French language, a perfect conviction was felt that it would meet the approbation of the wise and learned as soon as it was known; and the rapid sale of six editions in the United States within a few years has fully realized that expectation and given indubitable evidence of the intrinsic merit of this mode of instruction.

In London this Grammar has passed through sixteen editions, and it has likewise been printed several times at Paris.

Previous to the printing of every new edition the American publishers have always been careful to procure the latest English copy, in order to profit by any improvement which may have been made in succeeding editions, and this attention has always proved advantageous. Besides this, every edition has been carefully revised, enlarged and improved by the same editor, who, in the present, has availed himself of the alterations and meliorations liberally furnished by a worthy and intelligent Instructer. Therefore, it is confidently believed that this Grammar will continue to deserve the high standing it has attained, both in Europe and America, among the *real* judges of similar publications.

This work is now introduced into some of the first literary institutions in the country, and particularly into the University at Cambridge, and St. Mary's College in Baltimore.

Boston, March, 1824.

PREFACE.

THAT "a great book is a great evil" is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with: some part of our time must be spent on superfluities; and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient, and what rigorous justice cannot defend, may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the booksellers, I proceed to lay before the Reader the general Plan of the Work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the Author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit; and reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise-book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds materially tend to their improvement;

by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and *vice versâ*, which cannot absolutely be done, in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the Author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred, and made use, throughout all the exercises, of plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within the reach of the young learners' faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by the small figures placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps, to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

A few general rules for pronunciation only have been given. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the Author's chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision. That he has sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon himself to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

The author cheerfully embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgments to the Public, for the favourable reception given to the former editions of this Grammar, and, in general,

to all his other works: while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received, either as a TEACHER or as an AUTHOR. That generous indulgence he again solicits for their acceptance, in this new edition, and begs to assure them, that, in every situation of life, it will be his constant care, as well as his highest ambition, to deserve the flattering encouragement he has met with in this country, and never forget the obligations already conferred.

In this edition the errors in the former publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions which did not so well please in the course of practice, have been altered, and every improvement added, that could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgment the Author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs, being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and at the end of each are given their several compounds, with large exercises, both upon the primitives and compounds.

Alfred-House Academy, Camberwell.

CONTENTS.

AN Alphabetical Arrangement of Irregular Verbs . . xii
An Explanation of the Abbreviations 11
French Alphabet 12

SECT. I.

Of Grammar 13
Of the French Alphabet . . . . . *ib.*
Of Vowels—Diphthongs—Accents—Kinds of E . . . 14
Of Diæresis—Cedilla—Apostrophe 15
Alphabetical list of French words having their initial *h* mute . *ib.*
Variations in the pronunciation of Consonants . . . 17
Kinds of words 18
General Explanation of their use 19

SECT. II.

Of Nouns 20
Of Articles 21
Of the Definite, Partitive and Indefinite Articles . . . 22
Of Genders and Numbers 23
General Rules for the formation of the Plural Number . 24
Of Cases 26
Of the Declension of Nouns 27
Declension of the Article Definite *Le*, (the) before Nouns masculine beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated . . 28
Declension of the Article Definite *La*, (the) before nouns feminine beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated . . *ib.*
Declension of the Article Definite *L'* (the) for both Genders, before nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an *h* not aspirated 29
Recapitulation of the Article Definite . . . . . *ib.*
Rules for the proper use of the Definite Article with Exercises 30
Declension of the Article Partitive 38
Rules and Exercises upon this Partitive 39
Declension of the Article Indefinite 41
Rules and Exercises on this Indefinite . . . . . *ib.*
Declension of *Un*, m. *Une*, f. a or an 48
Rules and Exercises on this Article . . . . . *ib.*
Of Nouns Adjective 50
Of the Gender and Number of Adjectives . . . . . *ib.*
Declension of Nouns Adjective 53
Rules and Exercises upon Adjectives . . . . . *ib.*
The Place of an Adjective in a Sentence 56
Of Adjectives which precede their Substantives . . . *ib.*
Of Adjectives which come after their Substantives . . 57
Rules and Exercises upon these Adjectives 58

Of the Degrees of Comparison 60
Rules with Exercises upon the Degrees of Comparison . 61
Of Numbers 67
Rules and Exercises upon these Cardinal Numbers . . 68
Of the Ordinal Numbers 71
Rules and Exercises upon the Ordinal Numbers . . 72
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Preceding Rules 74

SECT. III.

Of Pronouns 81
Of Pronouns Personal 82
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns 83
Observations on the Pronouns *Je* and *Moi*, *Tu* and *Toi*, *Il* and *Lui*, *Ils* and *Eux* 85
Exercises upon the Preceding Observations 86
Of Conjunctive Pronouns and their Declensions . . . 87
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns 89
Of Particles Relative or Supplying Pronouns *en*, *y*, and *le* . 92
Rules and Exercises upon these Supplying Pronouns . . *ib.*
Of Pronouns Possessive, and their Declensions . . . 99
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns 100
Of Pronouns Demonstrative 104
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns 106
Of Pronouns Relative 110
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns 111
Of Pronouns Interrogative 116
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . . *ib.*
Of Pronouns Indefinite 119
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns 120
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Pronouns 135

SECT. IV.

Of Verbs and their different Sorts 142
Conjugation of Verbs and Moods 144
Tenses 147
Tenses of the Indicative Mood 148
Simple Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . . *ib.*
Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mood 153
Tenses of the Subjunctive or Conjunctive Mood, and their Compounds 157
Numbers and Persons 159
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb *Avoir*, to have 161
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb *Etre*, to be 163
Rules and Exercises on the two preceding Auxiliary Verbs . 166
Promiscuous Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of these Auxiliary Verbs 169

Rules and Examples for using these Verbs Interrogatively, &c. 170
Promiscuous Exercises on Rules of Interrogation, &c. . . 172
Remark on the Verb *Etre*, to be 174
First Conjugation in *er*, as in Parl-*er* 175
Important Observation upon the repetition of Verbs, &c. see N. B. 179
Exercises on this Conjugation 181
Exercises on the Compound Tenses 183
Second Conjugation, in *ir*, as in Pun-*ir* 184
Exercises on this Conjugation 187
Third Conjugation, in *evoir*, as in rec-*evoir* 190
Exercises on this Conjugation 193
Fourth Conjugation, in *re*, as in Vend-*re* 197
Exercises on this Conjugation 200
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Regular Verbs of the Four Conjugations 203
Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses, of the preceding Conjugations 206
Conjugations of the Passive Verbs 208
Of Neuter Verbs generally . . . . . *ib.*
Of Reflective Verbs 214
Model of Conjugations for the reflected Verbs of the Four Conjugations 219
Exercises on the Reflective Verbs 222
Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation 227
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation 230
Exercises on the Irregular Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations 235
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation 238
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs 243
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation 245
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds 251
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation 254
Observation upon *May*, and *Might*, when used as a Verb or Auxiliary 259
Observation upon the words *Will*, and *Would*, when used as a Verb or an Auxiliary 265
Exercises upon Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation . 266
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation 271
Exercises upon the preceding Irregular Verbs, and their Compounds 281
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation 284
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds 296
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation 302
Exercises on the preceding Verbs, and their Compounds . 313
Of the Impersonal Verbs 319
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs . . . . . *ib.*
Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs 321
Upon the Impersonal Verb *y avoir*, ... 322
Exercises on the preceding Verb 323
Remarks on the general Pronoun *On* 324
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun, &c. . . . . *ib.*

Remarks on the Impersonal Verb *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary 332
Exercises on the preceding Impersonal Verb . . . 334
Additional Remarks on the general Pronoun *On* . . . 337
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun 338
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs . 339

SECT. V.

Of Participles 342
Rules and Exercises on the Participles Active and Passive 342 to 352

SECT. VI.

Of Indeclinable Parts of Speech 353
Of Adverbs . . . . . *ib.*
Table of Adverbs . . 354, 357, 359, 361, 363, 365, 368, 369
Observation on the Adverb *Où* 370
Table of Adverbs continued . . . 373, 376, 378, 379, 382

SECT. VII.

Of Prepositions 383
Prepositions governing the Genitive or Ablative Cases . 383, 384
Exercises on these Prepositions 385
Prepositions governing the Dative Case 387
Exercises on these Prepositions . . . . . *ib.*
Prepositions requiring the Accusative Case . . . 388
Exercises upon these Prepositions 389
Observations on some Prepositions, and Exercises upon them, *Above*, 392; *At*, 393, 394; *By*, 395, 396, 397; *For*, 398; *From*, 399; *In*, 400, 401; *On*, or *Upon*, 402; *Over*, 403; *With*, 404, 405, 407, 408; *Without*, ... 409

SECT. VIII.

Of Conjunctions 411
Conjunctions requiring the Infinitive Mood, and Exercises upon them . . . . . *ib.*
Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Indicative Mood, and Exercises upon them in continuation 412
Conjunctions requiring the Future Tense 417
Remark on the Conjunction *Que*, preceding an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood 418

Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them 420, 421
Remarks on the Conjunctions *Si* and *Que* . . . 424
Exercises on the preceding Conjunctions 425
Verbs requiring the Conjunction *Que*, with the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood 427
Exercises on this and the preceding Rules 428
Observation on the Verb *Vouloir*, to will, to wish, . 431
Conjunctions *Qui*, *Que* or *Dont*, requiring the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them . 433

SECT. IX.

Of Interjections 435
Table of Interjections . . . . . *ib.*
Exercises on the preceding Interjections 436
Remarks on the Particles *De*, *à*, *Pour*, when not expressed, and Exercises upon them 437
Remarks on the Particle *De*, when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it 439
Remarks on the Particle *à*, when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it 441, 442
Important remarks on the Particles *De*, *à*, and *Pour*, with Exercises 444

SECT. X.

Idiomatical Expressions 445
Of the Verb *Avoir*, to have, and Exercises upon it . 445, 446
Of *Etre*, to be, and Exercises upon it 448
Of *Faire*, to make, or to do, and Exercises upon it . 449, 450
Of different Verbs, and Exercises upon them . 451, 452, 453, 454
General and Promiscuous Exercises 455
Of the Understanding of Languages . . . . *ib.*
Of Study 456
Indolence Characterised 458

SECT. XI.

Scheme for parsing a French Sentence . . . 458
Treatise upon French Versification 461

AN

ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT

OF

IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH REFERENCES TO THE PLACES IN WHICH THEY, OR SIMILAR VERBS, ARE CONJUGATED IN THIS GRAMMAR;

WITH REMARKS.

A.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page.
To Acquire	Acquérir . . .	. . . . .	230
Avoid,[1] or Shun	Fuir[2]	. . . . .	238
Abstain	S'Abstenir . .	Tenir . . .	246
Attain to	Parvenir à . .		
Anticipate . . .	Prévenir . . .		
Assault	Assaillir . . .	Tressaillir	247
be Able	Pouvoir[3] . . .	. . . . .	259
Absolve	Absoudre . . .	. . . . .	271
Abate	Rabattre . . .	Battre . . .	272
Acknowledge, or know again	Reconnoître .	Connoître	278
Accrue	Accroître . . .		
Appear	Paroître . . .		
Appear, to give evidence . . .	Comparoître .		

[1] *Eviter*, to avoid, and *assister*, to assist, are regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

[2] See Pret. p. 305, and Imperfect of Subjunct. p. 306.

[3] See p. 259 and 260.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Ask too much .	Surfaire .	Faire .	290
Admit	Admettre .	Mettre .	294
Anoint	Oindre[1] . .	Craindre	284
Apprehend, or understand . . .	Comprendre	Prendre	305
Abstract . . .	Abstraire . .	Traire .	309
Assist[2]	Secourir . .	Courir .	232
Agree	Consentir . .	Mentir .	239
be Acquainted with . . .	Connoître		278
be Afraid . . .	Craindre		284
fall Asleep . . .	S'Endormir .	Dormir.	234
fall Asleep again	Se Rendormir		
	B.		
To Boil	Bouillir . .	Bouillir[3]	231
Boil again . . .	Rebouillir .		
Belie	Démentir . .	Mentir .	239
Belong	Appartenir .	Tenir .	246
Become of . . .	Devenir[4] . .		
Become, fit, &c.	Convenir . .		
Befall	Survenir . .		
Beat	Battre . . .	Battre .	272
Beat again . .	Rebattre . .		
Beat down (abate)	Rabattre . .		
Bray	Braire[5]		274
Believe	Croire		285
Bake, or Boil, often Englished *to do*	Cuire . . .	Conduire	276
Bake again, do again	Recuire . .		
Bring to, or Reduce to . . .	Réduire . .		
Build[6], or Construct	Construire .		

1 See Remark, p. 303. 2 See Note 1 in preceding page.
3 See p. 232. 4 See Note *, p. 249. 5 See p. 274 and 275.
6 *Bâtir*, to build, and *Bannir*, to banish, are regulars of the Second Conjugation.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated l*
To Banish[1] . . .	Proscrire . .	Ecrire .
be Born . . .	Naître . .	Naître .
be Born again .	Renaître . .	

C.

To Conquer . . .	Conquérir .	Acquérir
Concur	Concourir .	Courir .
Contradict or belie	Démentir . .	Mentir .
Consent . . .	Consentir . .	
Cover	Couvrir . .	Offrir .
Cover again . .	Recouvrir . .	
Contain . . .	Contenir . .	Tenir .
Come	Venir[2] . . .	
Come back . .	Revenir . .	
Clothe	Vêtir . . .	
Come to, Befall .	Survenir . .	
Clear a table . .	Desservir . .	Servir .
Conclude . . .	Conclure . .	. . .
Conduct, Lead, or Carry	Conduire . .	Conduire
Construct, Build	Construire .	
Circumcise . .	Circoncire[3] .	Confire.
Chance, or Fall out	échoir[4] . .	Déchoir
Contradict . .	Contredire[5] .	Dire .
Curse	Maudire . .	
Constrain . . .	Contraindre .	Craindre
Compel		
Complain . . .	Se Plaindre .	
Come to life, as from an egg, &c.	éclorre[6] . . .	. . .
Counterfeit . .	Contrefaire .	Faire .
Compromise . .	Compromettre	Mettre .
Commit . . .	Commettre .	
Chide	Reprendre .	Prendre

1 See Note 6 in preceding page. 2 See Remark, p. 249.
3 See Participle Pass. p. 275. 4 See Participle Act. & Pass. p.
5 See Note, p. 287. 6 See p. 288.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Conquer	Vaincre[1]	Vaincre	311
Convince	Convaincre		

D.

To Discourse	Discourir	Courir	232
Die	Mourir	Mourir	240
be Dying	Se Mourir		
Detain	Détenir	Tenir	246
Disagree	Disconvenir		
Discover	Découvrir	Offrir	241
Distribute	Départir	Mentir	239
Dissolve	Dissoudre[2]	Absoudre	271
Drink	Boire[3]	. . .	273
Debate	Débattre	Battre	272
Decay	Déchoir	. . .	257
Do an ill office	Desservir	Servir	245
Deduct	Déduire	Conduire	276
Destroy	Détruire		
Do over, with mortar, &c.	Enduire		
Decrease	Décroître	Connoître	278
Disappear	Disparoître		
Describe	Décrire	Ecrire	289
Do	Faire	Faire	290
Do again	Refaire		
Defeat	Défaire		
Dissemble	Feindre	Craindre	284
Dye	Teindre		
Draw, Design	Peindre		
Defer, Put off, or Deliver up	Remettre	Mettre	294
Displease	Déplaire	Plaire	304
Distract	Distraire	Traire	309

E.

To Entertain	Entretenir	Tenir	246
Exclude	Exclure[4]	Conclure	275

1 See Note, p. 311. 2 See p. 272. 3 See N. B. p. 274.
4 See p. 290.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Exact	Surfaire	Faire	290
Enjoin	Enjoindre	Craindre	284
Enclose	Enceindre	Craindre	284
Encompass	Enceindre	Craindre	284
Elect	Elire	Lire	292
Extract	Extraire	Traire	309

F.

To Fetch	Quérir[1]	Acquérir	230
Flee, or Fly	Fuir[2]		238
Feel	Sentir	Mentir	239
Foresee, or have a foresight of	Pressentir	Mentir	239
Foresee	Prévoir[3]	Voir	263
Fit[4] or fit well	Seoir[5]	Asseoir	254
Fight	Combattre	Battre	272
Fear	Craindre	Craindre	284
Force	Contraindre	Craindre	284
Feign	Feindre	Craindre	284
Forbid	Interdire	Dire[6]	286
Foretell	Prédire	Dire[6]	286
Fall out, or Happen	échoir[7]	Déchoir	257
Fry	Frire[8]		292
Feed, or Graze	Paître	Connoître	278
Follow	Suivre	Suivre	308
Follow from	S'Ensuivre	Suivre	308
Fine-draw	Rentraire	Traire	309

G.

To Go	Aller	Aller	227
Go away	S'en Aller	Aller	227
Gather	Cueillir	Cueillir	233
Gather together	Recueillir	Cueillir	233
Go out	Sortir	Mentir	239

1 See p. 231. 2 See p. 238, 239. 3 See p. 264.
4 See the verb To Become, &c. 5 See p. 255.
6 See Note [illegible] 7 See p. 257. 8 See p. 292.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Grow	Croître	Connoître	278
Grow less	Décroître	Connoître	278
Grow again	Recroître	Connoître	278
Graze	Paître	Connoître	278
Glitter	Reluire[1]	Conduire	276
Glimpse, or to have a glimpse of	Entrevoir	Voir	263
Grind	Moudre	Moudre	295
Grind again	Remoudre	Moudre	295
Give other clothes	Revêtir	. . .	250
Gird	Ceindre	Craindre	284

H.

To Hold	Tenir	Tenir	246
Happen unexpectedly	Survenir	Tenir	246
Hear	Ouïr[2]	. . .	242
Hatch	Eclorre[3]	. . .	288
Hurt	Nuire[4]	Conduire	276
Humour	Complaire	Plaire	304
Hold one's tongue	Se Taire	Plaire	304
Hear of	Apprendre des nouvelles	Prendre	305

I.

To Incur	Encourir	Courir	232
Impart	Départir	Mentir	239
Infringe	Contrevenir à	Tenir	246
Intervene	Intervenir	Tenir	246
Invest	Revêtir	. . .	250
Interdict	Interdire[5]	Dire	286
Inscribe	Inscrire	Ecrire	289
Induce	Induire	Conduire	276
Instruct	Instruire	Conduire	276
Introduce	Introduire	Conduire	276
Include	Comprendre	Prendre	305

1 See p. 293. 2 See p. 242. 3 See p. 288.
4 See p. 303. 5 See Note, p. 287.

J.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Jut, Jet out, a term in Architecture only	Saillir[1]	Tressaillir	247
Join	Joindre	Craindre	284

K.

To Keep	Tenir		246
Know somebody	Connoître	Connoître	278
Know again	Reconnoître		
Know something	Savoir[2]		260

L.

To Lie	Mentir	Mentir	239
give one the Lie	Démentir		
Lead	Conduire	Conduire	276
Lead again	Reconduire		
Learn	Apprendre	Prendre	305
Leap for	Tressaillir		247
Laugh	Rire		307
Live	Vivre		312

M.

To Maintain	Maintenir	Tenir	246
	Soutenir		
Move	Mouvoir	Mouvoir	258
Move, or Stir up	émouvoir		
Mistake, or be deceived	Méconnoître,	Connoître	278
	or Se Méprendre,	Prendre	305
Make	Faire	Faire	290
Make up again	Refaire		
Mimic	Contrefaire		
Milk	Traire		309

N.

To make a great Noise	Bruire[3]		275

1 See p. 248, and N. B. p. 249. 2 See Notes, p. 261.
3 See p. 275.

O.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Overtake	Atteindre	Craindre	284
Offer	Offrir	Offrir	241
Open	Ouvrir		
Obtain	Obtenir	Tenir	246
do an ill office	Desservir	Servir	245
Open as an oyster	éclorre[1]		288
Outlaw	Proscrire	Ecrire	289
Omit	Omettre	Mettre	294
Outlive	Survivre	Vivre	312
Oblige	Astreindre[2]	Craindre	284

P.

To Prevent	Prévenir	Tenir	246
Proceed	Provenir		
Prescribe	Prescrire	Ecrire	289
Proscribe	Proscrire		
Prevail	Prévaloir[3]	Valoir	261
Provide	Pourvoir[4]	Voir	263
Pull down	Abattre	Battre	272
Preserve	Confire		277
Put out	éteindre	Craindre	284
Pretend	Feindre		
Paint	Peindre		
Pity	Plaindre		
Part with	Se Défaire	Faire	290
Put	Mettre[5]	Mettre	294
Permit	Permettre		
Promise	Promettre[6]		
Put back again	Remettre		
Put off			
Prejudice	Prévenir	Tenir	246
Prepossess			
Produce	Produire	Conduire	276
Pursue	Poursuivre	Suivre	308
Please	Plaire		304

1 See p. 288. 2 Grows obsole, p. 272. 3 See p. 262.
4 See p. 264. 5 See Note, p. 294. 6 See Note, p. 294

R.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Require	Requérir	Acquérir	230
get Rid of	Se Défaire	Faire	290
Run	Courir	Courir	232
Run to	Accourir		
Run over	Parcourir		
have Recourse to	Recourir		
Run away	Fuir[1]		238
Retain	Retenir	Tenir	246
Return	Revenir		
Remember, or Remind	Se Souvenir[2]		
Recollect	Se Ressouvenir		
Relieve	Subvenir		
Resent	Ressentir	Mentir	239
Reply	Repartir		
Repent	Se Repentir		
Roar	Bruire[3]		275
Resolve	Résoudre[4]	Absoudre	271
Retract, Recant	Se Dédire[5]	Dire	286
Read	Lire	Lire	292
Read again	Relire		
Remove	Démettre	Mettre	294
Resign	Se Démettre		
Rise, Revive as flowers	Naître, Renaître	Naître	302
Rebuke	Reprendre	Prendre	305
Reduce	Réduire	Conduire	276
Restrain	Restraindre	Craindre	284
Reach	Atteindre		
Revive, Recover	Revivre	Vivre	312

S.

To Succour	Secourir	Courir	232
Sleep	Dormir	Dormir	234
make Sleep	Endormir		

[1] See p. 238, 239, Pret. and Imp. [2] See Note †, p. 249.
[3] See p. 275. [4] See p. 272. [5] See Note *, p. 287.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Shun	Fuir		238
Suffer	Souffrir	Offrir	241
Serve	Servir		245
Support	Soutenir	Tenir	246
Suit	Convenir		
Start, Startle	Tressaillir		247
Stir up	émouvoir	Mouvoir	258
See	Voir	Voir	263
See again	Revoir		
Solve	Soudre[1]	Absoudre	271
Sew	Coudre	Coudre	280
Stitch			
Sew again	Recoudre		
Sharpen	Emoudre	Moudre	295
Set out	Partir	Mentir	239
Set out again	Repartir		
be Sensible of	Ressentir		
Smell	Sentir		
Struggle	Se Débattre	Battre	272
Sit down	Asseoir[2]	Asseoir	254
Sit down again	Se Rasseoir		
Supersede	Surseoir[3]		256
Say	Dire	Dire	286
Say again	Redire		
Slander	Médire[4]		
Speak ill of			
Shut, or close	Clorre	Eclorre	288
Shut, or	Enclorre[5]		
Surround with walls, &c.			
Subscribe	Souscrire	Ecrire	289
Satisfy	Satisfaire	Faire	290
Shine	Luire[6]	Conduire	276
Submit	Soumettre	Mettre	294
Surprise	Surprendre	Prendre	305
Smile	Sourire	Rire	307

1 See p. 271. 2 See p. 255. 3 See p. 256.
4 See Note, p. 287. 5 See p. 288. 6 See p. 293.

English.	*French.*	*Conjugated like*	Page
To Seduce	Séduire	Conduire	276
Suffice, or be Sufficient	Suffire[1]	Confire	277
Seem	Paroître	Connoître	278
Subtract	Soustraire	Traire	309
T.			
To Tell	Dire	Dire	286
Tell again	Redire	Dire	286
Transcribe	Transcrire	Ecrire	289
Turn out	Démettre	Mettre	294
Transmit	Transmettre	Mettre	294
Take	Prendre	Prendre	305
Take again	Reprendre	Prendre	305
Translate	Traduire	Conduire	276
Throw down	Abattre	Battre	272
U.			
To Unsew	Découdre	Coudre	280
Use, or make use of	Se Servir	Servir	245
Uncover	Découvrir	Offrir	241
Unsay	Se Dédire[2]	Dire	286
Undo	Défaire	Faire	290
Undo again	Redéfaire	Faire	290
Understand	Comprendre	Prendre	305
Unlearn	Désapprendre	Prendre	305
Undertake	Entreprendre	Prendre	305
V.			
To Vanquish	Vaincre[3]		311
W.			
To Welcome	Accueillir	Cueillir	23
be Worth	Valoir		261
Wish, or be Willing	Vouloir[4]		264
Write	écrire	Ecrire	289
Write again	Récrire	Ecrire	289
Whet	Emoudre	Moudre	295

1 See p. 308.
2 See Note *, p. 287.
3 See Note *, p. 311.
4 See p. 265, 266.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MADE USE OF IN THE FOLLOWING WORK.

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
adj.	Noun adjective.
pro.	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p. act.	Participle active.
p. p.	Participle passive.
p.	Preposition.
adv.	Adverb.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
∽	The English word that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, [1], [2], [3], &c. direct to the arrangement of the words in the French sentence.

Two words having the same figure are expressed by the French word placed under one of them.

Two or three words between parentheses ( ), are expressed by the French under them, or have been previously expressed.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

Roman Letters.		Italic Letters.		Old Pro.	New Pro.
A	a	*A*	*a*	*ah*	*ah*
B	b	*B*	*b*	*bay*	*be*‡
C	c	*C*	*c*	*say*	*ke* and *ce*
D	d	*D*	*d*	*day*	*de*
E	e	*E*	*e*	*a*	*a*
F	f	*F*	*f*	*eff*	*fe*
G	g	*G*	*g*	*jay**	*ghe* and *g*
H	h	*H*	*h*	*ash*	*he*
I	i	*I*	*i*	*ee*	*ee*
J	j	*J*	*j*	*jee**	*je**
K	k	*K*	*k*	*kah*	*kah*
L	l	*L*	*l*	*ell*	*le*
M	m	*M*	*m*	*emm*	*me*
N	n	*N*	*n*	*enn*	*ne*
O	o	*O*	*o*	*o*	*o*
P	p	*P*	*p*	*pay*	*pe*
Q	q	*Q*	*q*	*ku*†	*ke*
R	r	*R*	*r*	*airr*	*re*
S	s	*S*	*s*	*ess*	*se* and *z*
T	t	*T*	*t*	*tay*	*te*
U	u	*U*	*u*	*u*†	*u*†
V	v	*V*	*v*	*vay*	*ve*
X	x	*X*	*x*	*eeks*	*ke-se* and *z*
Y	y	*Y*	*y*	*ee grαik*	*ee grαik*
Z	z	*Z*	*z*	*zaid*	*ze*

* The two consonants *g* and *j* are sounded in the Alphabet like in *pleasure* or *z* in *azure*.

† *U* has no similar sound in English, and must be learned from master.

‡ In the new pronunciation *e* after each consonant is sounded *a* in the English word *barber*, faintly sounding the *r*.

A PRACTICAL

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

SECTION I.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deduci 'e from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression, to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.

ALPHABET;—is composed of twenty-five letters, of which words are formed; five of them, *a, e, i, o, u,* are distinguished by the name of vowels, which form a perfect sound of themselves. The twenty other letters *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, y, z,* are called consonants, and cannot be pronounced but when joined with vowels, except *y*, which has often the sound of double *i*, and of which some make a sixth vowel.

VOWELS, three sorts;—SIMPLE, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, which are subdivided into short and long, the sound of which is more prolonged and deeper.

COMPOUND, of two or three simple vowels, as *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*, *au*, *eu*, *ou*, *æ*, *œu* : *ai* has the sound of *e* mute in *faisant*,* and the sound of *e* close in *je lirai*, as well as in all the verbs in the first person singular of the future.

NASAL, when they are joined to *m* or *n*, and when they form only one sound, as *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *in*, *im*, *ain*, *ein*.

DIPHTHONG;—Is the union of several vowels, the pronunciation of which causes two sounds to be heard by a single impulse of the voice. *Dieu*, *yeux*, *niais*, *pion*, *ouïe*, *mien*, are diphthongs: yet, *Caen*, *eau*, *paon*, *craie*, are not so, because they are pronounced *Can*, *ô*, *pan*, *crê*.

ACCENTS, three sorts;—The acute ´, the grave `, and the circumflex ^, serve to modify the sound of the vowels; the office of the latter is to render long the vowels which are affected by it; thus pronounce *â*, *ê*, *î*, *ô*, *û*, by a greater opening of the mouth, almost as if it were *aa*, *ee*, *ii*, *oo*, *uu*. It is thus we write *âge*, instead of *aage*; this is also the reason why it is placed over the vowels that were formerly followed by an *s*, which has been dropped, since it is no longer pronounced; as in *asne*, *beste*, in which the suppression of the *s*, requires that we should write *âne*, *bête*, in order to shew that *â* and *ê* are long.

KINDS *of* E, *five*;—TWO KINDS, *Mute* : 1*st*.—One whose dull sound is almost null in *brave*, *encore*, which are pronounced no otherwise than *brav*, *encor*.

2*d*.—The other, the sound of which, although obscure, can be prolonged, nearly as the sound of *eu*, in *je*, *me*, *te*, *revenir*, *redemander*.

3*d*.—CLOSE, *by the accent Acute*, in *bonté*; also *ez* is equivalent to *é*, as in *voyez*, *lisez*, *touchez*, &c.

* See *Faire*, page 290.

4th.—OPEN, *by the accent Grave*, in *accès*, *succès*, *nèfle*, which accent is suppressed in *greffe*, *sans cesse*, *abbesse*.

5th.—VERY OPEN, *by the accent Circumflex*, in *être*, *tête*, *tempête*, which were formerly pronounced and written *estre*, *teste*, &c.

MIDDLING, followed by a double consonant, and the sound of which is between that of *é* close and *è* open, in *maisonnette*, *musette*, *poulette*.

The DIÆRESIS, (¨)—Which is placed over the vowels *ë*, *ï*, *ü*, and causes them to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel as in *poëte*, *aïeul*, *Saül*, and may be ranked among the accents.

The CEDILLA, (¸)—A little dash, which is put under the *c*, is also a sort of accent, since it serves to modify the hard pronunciation which it would otherwise have before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and to change it into that of *S*; it is thus we pronounce it in *françois*, *façon*, *reçu*.

The APOSTROPHE, (') ;—Is only a comma put over the place which the vowel *e* or *a* ought to occupy, which is suppressed when the word following begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate;* thus, instead of *le esprit*,

---

* AN ALPHABETICAL LIST
of such French Words as have their initial *h* mute.

HABILE,	*CLEVER*	harmonie,	*harmony*
habilement,	*cleverly*	hebdomadaire,	*weekly*
habileté,	*cleverness*	Hébraïque,	*Hebraick*
habiller,	*to clothe*	Hébreu,	*Hebrew*
habillement,	*dress*	hécatombe,	*an hecatomb*
habit,	*a coat*	hégire	*hegira*
habiter,	*to inhabit*	hélas !	*alas !*
habitable,	*inhabitable*	Hélicon,	*Helicon*
habitant,	*inhabitant*	héliotrope,	*turn-sol*
habitude,	*custom*	hémisphère,	*hemisphere*
habituel,	*habitual*	hémistiche,	*hemistich*
habituer,	*to use*	hémorrhagie,	*bloody-flux*
haleine,	*breath*	hémorrhoïdes,	*piles*
hameçon,	*a fishing hook*	hépatique,	*hepatical*

la ambition, and *le homme*, we must pronounce and write *l'esprit*, *l'ambition*, *l'homme*. But when the *h* is

herbage,	*herbage, pasture*
herbe,	*herb* or *grass*
herboriste,	*herbalist*
héréditaire,	*hereditary*
hérésie,	*heresy*
hérétique,	*heretic*
héritage,	*inheritance*
hériter,	*to inherit*
héritier,	*an heir*
heritière,	*an heiress*
hermine,	*ermine*
hermite,	*an hermit*
hermitage,	*hermitage*
héroïne,*	*an heroine*
héroïque,	*heroical*
héroïsme,	*heroism*
hésiter,	*to hesitate*
hésitation,	*hesitation*
heur,	*luck*
heure,	*hour*
heureux,	*happy*
heureusement,	*happily*
héxagone,	*an hexagon*
héxamètre,	*hexameter*
hiatus,	*hiatus, a gap*
hier,	*yesterday*
hiéroglyphe,	*hieroglyphic*
hirondelle,	*a swallow*
histoire,	*history*
historien,	*historian*
historique,	*historical*
histrion,	*a buffoon*
hiver,	*winter*
hiverner,	*to winter*
holocauste,	*burnt sacrifice*
hombre, (jeu)	*ombre*
homélie,	*an homily*
homicide,	*an homicide*
hommage,	*homage*
homme,	*man*
honnête,	*honest*
honnêtement,	*honestly*
honnêteté,	*honesty*
honneur,	*honour*
honorable,	*honorable*
honoraire,	*honorary*
honorer,	*to honour*
hôpital,	*hospital*
horizon,	*horizon*
horloge,	*a town clock*
horloger,	*watch-maker*
hormis,	*except*
horoscope,	*horoscope*
horreur,	*horror*
horrible,	*horrid*
horriblement,	*horribly*
hospitalier,	*hospitable*
hospitalité,	*hospitality*
hostie,	*host* or *victim*
hostilité,	*hostility*
hôte,	*landlord*
hôtesse,	*landlady*
hôtel,	*a hotel or great house*
hôtelier,	*inn-keeper*
hôtellerie,	*an inn*
huile,	*oil*
huilier,	*oil-cruet*
huissier,	*usher* or *tip staff*
huître,	*oyster*
humain,	*humane*
humainement,	*humanely*
humaniser,	*to civilise*
humanité,	*humanity*
humble,	*humble*
humblement,	*humbly*
humectation,	*moistening*
humecter,	*to moisten*
humeur,	*humour*
humide,	*damp, moist*
humidité,	*humidity*
humiliant,	*mortifying*
humiliation,	*humiliation*
humilier,	*to humble*
humilité	*humility*
hyacinthe,	*hyacinth*
hydre,	*hydra*
hydromel,	*mead*
hydropique,	*hydropic*
hydropisie,	*dropsy*
hymen,	*hymen*
hymne	*hymn*
hyperbole,	*hyperbole*
hypocondre,	*hypocondriac*
hypocrisie,	*hypocrisy*

* The *h* in all this family is only aspirated in *héros*.

aspirate, the article remains entire; we must not say *l'héros*, but pronounce *le héros, du héros, au héros.*

VARIATION IN THE PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS;—C is pronounced hard like *k* before the vowels *a, o, u,* in *cocarde, cube;* like *s* before *e, i,* in *cécité.* There are even some words in which it is pronounced like *g,* as in *second,* &c. *G* is pronounced hard before *a, o, u;* like *j,* before *e, i;* when we wish to modify its pronunciation before *a, o, u,* an *e* is placed after it, as in, *il gagea, nageoire;* when on the contrary we wish to have it pronounced hard before *e, i,* an *u* is placed after it, as in *guérir, guide. H* is of two sorts, aspirated as in *haïr, envahir;* then the consonants by which it is preceded are not sounded; it is called mute, when it is not pronounced at all, as in *homme, héroïne.* The *h* of *héros* is aspirate, that of its derivatives is not so. *Q* when not the last letter of a word, as in *cinq,* is never used without being followed by *u,* which gives it the pronunciation of *k* as in *qui, quelconque;* yet in several words *u* has retained its ancient sound of *ou,* and then *qu* is pronounced like *kou,* as in *aquatique, équation. S* is pronounced hard in *salut, sénat;* but between two vowels, it takes the pronunciation of *z,* as in *viser, raison,* &c. *T* followed by *i* and another vowel, is pronounced like *c,* as in *partial, partiel, portion;* but if *ti* is preceded by *s* or *x,* or if it is at the beginning of a word, it is pronounced hard, as in *tirer, question, mixtion. X* is pronounced like *cs* in *fixer, taxer;* like *gz* in *examen, ex-*

hypocrite,	*hypocrite*	hypothèse,	*hypothesis*
hypothèque,	*mortgage*	hysope,	*hysop*
hypothéquer,	*to mortgage*	hystérique,	*hysteric*

In a familiar discourse, the letter *h* is not aspirated in the following words, viz. *Hanovre, Hollande,* and *Hongrie,* when either of them is preceded by the particle *de;* for though we always say *le Hanovre, la Hollande* and *la Hongrie,* yet it is usual to say and write *l'Electorat d'Hanovre, la Reine d'Hongrie, la toile d'Hollande,* and the like. As to other national and proper names, the initial *h* is aspirated in most of them; as in *Hainaut, Hambourgh, Havanne, Henri,* &c. but in *Hamilton, Harcourt, Hector, Hélène, Hercule, Hérode, Homère, Horace,* and *Hyppolite,* it is mute.

ample; and like *s* in *six*, *dix*, *soixante*. *Ch* is generally pronounced like *sh*, as in *chat;* yet it is pronounced often like *k: Christ*, *orchestre*, *bacchante*, are examples. *Rh*, *th*, *ph*, are pronounced like *r*, *t*, *f*, in *rhume*, *thème*, *philosophe*, which are pronounced *rume*, *tème*, *filosofe*.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice: ex. *ba*, *me*, *moi*, &c.

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant: ex. *mon*, my; *livre*, book, &c.

A SENTENCE, or PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete: ex.

Je suis votre ami,	I am your friend.
J'écrivis hier à votre tante,	I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called a member of the period: ex.

Les grands hommes sont rares; on doit les respecter, et l'on devroit toujours travailler à se rendre semblable à eux.	Great men are scarce; we ought to respect them, and constantly endeavour to resemble them.

A DISCOURSE, or SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together, and arranged according to the rules of the language.

KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

1. L'ARTICLE,	ARTICLE.
2. LE NOM ET ADJECTIF,	NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.
3. LE PRONOM,	PRONOUN.
4. LE VERBE,	VERB.

5. Le Participe,	Participle.
6. L'Adverbe,	Adverb.
7. La Pre'position,	Preposition.
8. La Conjonction,	Conjunction.
9. L'Interjection,	Interjection.

Five of them are declinable; that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun and adjective, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The articles are certain minute words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words, *the*, *of the*, *from the*, and *to the*. These in French, are

Le, la, les,	The
De, du, de la, des,	Of *or* from the.
A, au, à la, aux,	To the.

The noun, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing which is the object of discourse: ex.

Papier,	Paper.	*Bon,*	Good.
Plume,	Pen.	*Petit,*	Little.
Pain,	Bread.	*Mauvais,*	Bad, &c.

The pronoun is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition: ex.

J'ai vu M. votre père, et lui ai parlé,	I saw your father, and spoke to *him.*

In this instance the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The verb is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject: ex.

Mon frère est *malade*,	My brother *is* ill.
Ma sœur écrit *une lettre*,	My sister *writes* a letter.
Votre cousine est *punie*,	Your cousin *is* punished.

The verb is varied by modes, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the noun adjective: ex.

Ayant,	Having	*Aimé*,	Loved.
Donnant,	Giving.	*Puni*,	Punished, &c.

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the noun or verb, or express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality: ex.

Je vous aime sincèrement,	I love you *sincerely*.
Venez demain,	Come *to-morrow*.

In these instances the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed: ex.

Chez *mon ami*,	*At* my friend's house.
Devant *moi*,	*Before* me, &c.

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse: ex. *et*, and; *car*, for; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul: ex.

Hélas! *mon Dieu!*	*Oh!* my God! &c.

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

SECTION II.

OF NOUNS.

NOUNS are divided into substantives and adjectives. A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE expresses a thing subsisting by

itself, and can make a complete sense independent of any other word: ex. *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind: ex. *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars; yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number: ex. *peuple*, people; *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only: ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London, &c.

N. B. A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, colour, form or quantity, of the substance to which it belongs; and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case: ex. *bon*, good; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red; *jaune*, yellow; *rond*, round; *carré*, square; *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when we can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS, four things must be considered, viz.

Les Articles,	The Articles.
Les Genres,	The Genders.
Les Nombres,	The Numbers.
Les Cas,	The Cases.

ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

L'Article défini,	The Article definite.
L'Article partitif,	The Article partitive.
L'Article indéfini,	The Article indefinite.

The Article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called, because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

SINGULAR.

Le, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant or H aspirated; ex. *le roi*, the king; *le héros*, the hero, &c.

La, for the feminine: ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

L', with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or H not aspirated: ex. *l'enfant*, the child; *l'homme*, the man, &c.

PLURAL.

Les, for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel: ex. *les rois*, the kings; *les reines*, the queens; *les enfans*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word SOME being always expressed or implied.

SINGULAR.

Du, for the masc.
De la, for the fem.
} These two articles are used before nouns beginning with a consonant or H aspirated: ex. *du pain*, some bread; *de la viande*, some meat.

De l', for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an H not aspirated: ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

PLURAL.

Des, for both genders: ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greater part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English *a* or *an*; but it may be observed, that it is always de-

clined with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the *or* a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the *or* a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as *une table*, a table: the plural speaks of more than one, as, *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number: as,

1. The names of metals: ex. *or*, gold; *argent*, silver; *cuivre*, brass; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices: ex. *avarice*, avarice; *charité*, charity; *foi*, faith; *haine*, hatred; *orgueil*, pride; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted: ex. *la vue*, the sight; *le goût*, the taste; *l'odorat*, the smell; *le toucher*, feeling; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules:

Artillerie,	artillery.	*Faim*,	hunger.
Attirail,	implements.	*Fumée*,	smoke.
Bonheur,	happiness.	*Fuite*,	flight.
Colère,	anger.	*Gloire*,	glory.
Courroux,	wrath.	*Honte*,	shame.
Enfance,	infancy.	*Jeunesse*,	youth.
Lait,	milk.	*Salut*,	safety.
Miel,	honey.	*Soif*,	thirst.
Noblesse,	nobility.	*Sommeil*,	sleep.
Pauvreté,	poverty.	*Vieillesse*,	old age.
Sang,	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only; such as,

Ancêtres,	ancestors.	*Atours*,	apparel.
Ayeux,	forefathers.	*Ciseaux*,	scissars.
Funérailles,	a funeral.	*Hardes*,	clothes.
Frais,	expense.	*Limites*,	limits.
Délices,	delight.	*Mœurs*,	manners.
Dépens,	cost.	*Mouchettes*,	snuffers.
Entrailles,	entrails.	*Ténèbres*,	darkness.
Epousailles,	espousals.	*Vivres*,	victuals.
Fonts,	font.		

And, in general, those which, in English, admit of no singular.

In general the plural number is formed by adding an *s* to the singular: ex.

Le père, the father;	*les pères*, the fathers,
La mère the mother;	*les mères*, the mothers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural: ex.

Le fils, the son;	*les fils*, the sons.
Une noix, a walnut;	*des noix*, walnuts.
Le nez, the nose;	*les nez*, the noses.

EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x*, instead of *s*: ex.

Un chapeau, a hat;	*des chapeaux*, hats.
Un manteau, a cloak;	*des manteaux*, cloaks.
Un lieu, a place;	*des lieux*, places.
Un chou, a cabbage;	*des choux*, cabbages.

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*: ex.

Un matou, a great cat;	*des matous*, great cats.
Un sou, a cent;	*des sous*, cents.
Un trou, a hole;	*des trous*, holes.
Un licou, a halter;	*des licous*, halters.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux*: ex.

Un animal, a living creature;	*des animaux*, living creatures.
Un cheval, a horse;	*des chevaux*, horses.
Un travail, a work;	*des travaux*, works.

These only are excepted :

Un Bal, a ball,	*Un Gouvernail*, a helm,
Détail, account, retail,	*Un Sérail*, a seraglio,
Eventail, a fan,	*Un Portail*, a gateway.

Which form their plural in *s*.

Nouns of more than one syllable (polysyllables) ending in *nt*, most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s* : as,

Enfant, a child; *enfans*, children.
Commandement, command; *commandemens*, commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form their plural by adding *s* : as,

Dent, tooth; *dents*, teeth.
Pont, bridge; *ponts*, bridges.

Tout, adj. all, makes *tous*, in its plural masculine; *toute* in the feminine gender sing. and *toutes* in the plural.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

Ayeul, grandfather; *ayeux*, grandfathers.
Bétail, cattle; *bestiaux*, cattle.
Ciel, heaven; *cieux*, heavens.
Œil, eye; *yeux*, eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,* testers of a bed.
{ *des œils de bœuf*, ovals.

There are in French several compound words like the last two, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may soon be removed by means of reflection; for example :

A noun being composed of a substantive and an adjective, united by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation : as,

Un gentil-homme, a nobleman; *des gentils-hommes*, noblemen.

A noun compounded of two substantives and a preposition, united by hyphens, the first only in French,

* This term is growing obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.

which is generally the last in English, admits of the plural formation: as,

Un arc-en-ciel, a rainbow;	*des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.
Un chef-d'œuvre, a masterpiece.	*des chefs-d'œuvre*, masterpieces.

N. B. Some of these French compound words are sometimes rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural in the French is still the same: as,

Un cul-de-sac, an alley (without egress);	*des culs-de-sac*, alleys.

Nouns composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation: as,

Un avant-toit, eaves,	*des avant-toits*, eaves,
Un casse-noisette, a nut-cracker;	*des casse-noisettes*, nut-crackers.
Un garde-fou, a rail;	*des garde-foux*, rails, &c.

Monseigneur, my lord	make in the plural	*Messeigneurs*, my lords.
Monsieur, Mr. or gent.		*Messieurs*, gentlemen.
Madame, Mrs. or madam		*Mesdames*, ladies.
Mademoiselle, miss		*Mesdemoiselles*, misses.

CASES.

There are six cases, viz.

1. *Le Nominatif*,	Nominative.
2. *Le Génitif*,	Genitive.
3. *Le Datif*,	Dative.
4. *L'Accusatif*,	Accusative.
5. *Le Vocatif*,	Vocative.
6. *L'Ablatif*,	Ablative.

The NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, and the accusative follows it. The

nominative is the *subject* of the sentence, and the accusative is the *object* to which it refers: ex.

Le roi aime le peuple, The king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? THE KING (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the King love? The answer is THE PEOPLE, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

The GENITIVE and ABLATIVE are declined with the same article, but the first is always preceded by another word on which it depends: as,

La porte de la chambre, The chamber door, that is, the door of the chamber.

La maison de mon père, My father's house, &c.

Or it is governed by a preposition, as,

Près du feu, Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* of *or* of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in English, as may be seen in the sentences before mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* from *or* from the.

The DATIVE shows to whom the thing spoken of, is given, or to what it is attributed: as,

Donnez cette pomme à mon frère, Give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à, au, à la, aux,* to *or* to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling or naming the person to whom the speech is addressed: as,

Ami, qui êtes-vous? Friend, who are you?

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its

several variations; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

Declension of the Article Definite Le (*the*), *before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant, or an* H *aspirated.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *Le Prince,*	The prince.
Le prince est généreux,	The prince is generous.
Gen. *Du prince,*	Of the prince.
Les vertus du prince,	The virtues of the prince; or, the prince's virtues.
Dat. *Au prince,*	To the prince.
Parler au prince,	To speak to the prince.
Acc. *Le prince,*	The prince.
Aimer le prince,	To love the prince.
Voc. *O prince,*	O prince.
Abl. *Du prince,*	From the prince.
Recevoir des lettres du prince,	To receive letters from the prince.

Declension of the Article Definite La (*the*), *before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant, or an* H *aspirated.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *La princesse,*	The princess.
La princesse est aimable,	The princess is amiable.
Gen. *De la princesse,*	Of the princess.
Les regards de la princesse,	The looks of the princess; or, the princess's looks.
Dat. *A la princesse,*	To the princess.
Donner à la princesse,	To give to the princess.
Acc. *La princesse,*	The princess.
Imitez la princesse,	Imitate the princess.
Voc. *O princesse,*	O princess.
Abl. *De la princesse,*	From the princess.
Etre séparé de la princesse,	To be separated from the princess.

Declension of the Article Definite L' (*the*), *for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an* H *not aspirated.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. *L'enfant,*	The child.
L'enfant est timide,	The child is fearful.
Gen. *De l'enfant,*	Of the child.
Le tempérament de l'enfant,	The child's temper; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. *A l'enfant,*	To the child.
Attribuer à l'enfant,	To attribute to the child.
Acc. *L'enfant,*	The child.
Admirer l'enfant,	To admire the child.
Voc. *O enfant,*	O child.
Abl. *De l'enfant,*	From the child.
S'éloigner de l'enfant,	To go away from the child.

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, *H aspirated or not aspirated, is declined, in both genders, by the article *les* (the).

Nom. *Les rois,*	The kings.
Les rois commandent,	The kings command.
Gen. *Des rois,*	Of the kings.
L'ordre des rois,	The order of the kings: or, the kings' order.
Dat. *Aux rois,*	To the kings.
Envoyer aux rois,	To send to the kings.
Acc. *Les rois,*	The kings.
Respectez les rois,	Honour the kings.
Voc. *O rois,*	O kings.
Abl. *Des rois,*	From the kings.
Etre loin des rois,	To be far from the kings.

RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Mas.	Fem.	Mas. & Fem.	Mas. & Fem.
Nom. & Ac.	*Le,*	*la,*	*l';*	*Les,* the.
Gen. & Ab.	*Du,*	*de la,*	*de l';*	*Des,* of *or* from the.
Dat.	*Au,*	*à la,*	*à l';*	*Aux,* to the.

* See the list of words beginning with an *h* not aspirated, page 15.

The *definite article* must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, and before names of countries and provinces, though the English admit of no article in this case: ex.

L'homme est mortel,	Man is mortal.
Le Danemarc, la Suède et l'Angleterre, sont les trois royaumes du nord,	Denmark, Sweden, and England, are the three northern kingdoms.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I hate idleness. -- Virtue is estimable. --
Je, pro. *hais*, v. *paresse*, f. *Vertu*, f. *est*, v. *estimable*, adj.
Gold is preferable to silver. ---- Do you[2]
Or, m. *préférable*, adj. *argent*, m. ∽ *vous*, pro.
prefer[1] England to France? Corn grows
préférez, v. *Angleterre*, f. *France*, f. *Blé*, m. *croît*, v.
for men, and grass for cattle. ---- Love
pour, p. *homme*, m. *et*, c. *herbe*, f. *bétail*, m. *Aimez*, v.
wisdom. --- Do [1]not[3] neglect[2] study. --
sagesse, f. ∽ *ne pas*, adv. *négligez*, v. *étude*, f.
Avoid leisure. --- She comes from church. --
Evitez, v. *loisir*, m. *Elle*, pro. *vient*, v. *église*, f.
We speak of America, and not
Nous, pro. *parlons*, v. *Amérique*, f. *non pas*, adv.
of Poland. ---- Grant us peace. ---
Pologne, f. *Accordez*, v. *nous*, pro. *paix*, f.
Honour is due to kings. --- They
Honneur, m. *dû*, p. p. *roi*, m. *Ils*, pro.
come from Africa. ---- Pride disgraces man. --
viennent, v. *Afrique*, f. *Orgueil*, m. *dégrade*, v.
Charity patiently[2] bears[1] injuries[3].
Charité, f. *patiemment*, adv. *souffre*, v. *injure*, f.

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English: ex.

L'homme que vous m'avez recommandé est fort habile,	The man whom you recommended to me is very skilful.

Les poires de votre jardin sont excellentes, The pears of your garden are excellent.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

Where is the master of the house? - - The
Où,adv. *est* *maître*,m. *maison*,f.
prince spoke to the king. - - To the third*
prince,m. *parla*,v. *troisième*,adj.
page of the book. - - The[1] lazy[2] do [3]not[4]
page,f. *livre*,m. *paresseux*,adj.pl.
love[4] work[5]. - - - - Justice is the mistress and
aiment,v. *ouvrage*,m. *Justice*,f. *maîtresse*,f.
queen of virtue. - - Send the child to school. - -
reine,f. *Envoyez*,v. *enfant*,m. *école*,f.
Walk in the garden. - - Tranquillity
Promenez-vous,v. *dans*,p. *jardin*,m. *Tranquillité*, f.
of soul is the height of felicity. - - Give the tooth
âme,f. *comble*,m. *félicité*,f. *Donnez*,v. *cure-*
picks to the gentlemen. - - - - Education is to the
dent,m. *Messieurs*,m. *Education*,f.
mind, what cleanliness is to the body. - - The
esprit,m. *ce que*,pro. *propreté*,f. *corps*,m.
life of man is short. - - The enemies were on
vie,f. *courte*,adj. *ennemi*,m. *étoient*,v. *sur*,p.
the mountain. - - You admire the beauty of
montagne,f. *Vous*,pro. *admirez*,v. *beauté*,f.
the ladies. - - To the thickness of the walls. - - We
dame,f. *épaisseur*,f. *muraille*,f.
go to the park. - - - It is the will of the em-
allons,v. *parc*,m. *C'est*,v. *volonté*,f. *em-*
peror. - - - The fate of nations is governed
pereur,m. *sort*,m. *nation*,f. *gouverné*,p.p.
by Providence. - - You play with the boys.
par,p. *Providence*,f. *jouez*,v. *avec*,p. *garçon*,m.
- - Revenge is the pleasure of a weak[2] mind[1]. - -
Vengeance,f. *plaisir*,m. *un foible*,adj.
Italy is the garden of Europe. - - The most noble
Italie,f. *Europe*,f. *plus*,adv. *noble*,adj.

* Adjectives take no article unless used substantively.

of virtues is charity. - - Carry the grammar to the
Portez,v. *grammaire*,f.
boys, and the dictionary to the girls. - - - - - He
dictionnaire,m. *fille*,f. *Il*,pro.
comes from the Indies. - - Give me the loaf.
vient,v. *Inde*,f. *moi*,pro. *pain*,m.

This article being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, as well as before adjectives used as substantives, and agree with them in *gender* and *number*: ex.

Le sel, la moutarde, et l'huile, sont sur les tables,	The salt, mustard, and oil, are on the tables.
Le blanc, le rouge et le noir, sont trois différentes couleurs,	White, red and black, are three different colours.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Prefer virtue to riches, friendship to
Préférez,v. *richesses*,f.pl. *amitié*,f.
money and utility to pleasure. - - The father, mother,
argent,m. *utilité*,f. *plaisir*,m. *père*,m. *mère*,f.
and children are dead. - - The men, women, and chil-
sont,v. *morts*,p.p. *femme*,f.
dren of the village were all at the burial. - - - - -
village,m. *étoient*,*tous*,adj. *à*,p. *enterrement*,m.
Children generally[2*] like[1] apples and pears.
ordinairement,adv. *aiment*,v. *pomme*,f. *poire*,f.
I like yellow and grey. - - Peace and plenty
aime,v. *jaune*,m. *gris*,m. *abondance*,f.
make men happy. - - - - - Wheat and barley
rendent,v. *heureux*,adj. *Froment*,m. *orge*,f.
are dear. - - - I hate milk, butter, and cheese. - -
chers,adj. *lait*,m. *beurre*,m. *fromage*,m.
Bring the knives and forks. - - - Patience
Apportez,v. *couteau*,m. *fourchette*,f. *Patience*,f.
and perseverance are necessary. - - - - The desire
persévérance,f. *nécessaire*,adj. *désir*,m.

* Place simple adverbs after verbs, and in compound tenses before the participles.

of glory, riches, power, and pleasure, is a
gloire, f. *richesse*, f. pl. *pouvoir*, m. *une*
disease of the mind. - - - - Have you passed
maladie, f. *âme*, f. *Avez*, v. *passé*, p.p.
through Spain, Portugal, or Holland ? - - Pre-
par, p. *Espagne*, f. *Portugal*, m. *ou Hollande*, f.
fer always virtue, prudence, and good sense
toujours, adv. *prudence*, f. *bon*, adj. *sens*, m.
to beauty. - - Put the wine, beer, and cider on
Mettez, v. *vin*, m. *bière*, f. *cidre*, m. *sur*, p.
the table. - - - (It is said) that America, France, and
table, f. *On dit que*
Spain have made peace with England.
ont, v. *fait*, p.p.

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun employed as an apposition, or definition of the noun which precedes; and when it precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *dignity*, *office*, or *business*: ex.

Alexandre, fils *de Philippe*,	Alexander *the* son of Philip.
Mon ami demeure à Londres, ville *capitale d'Angleterre*,	My friend lives in London, *the* capital city of England.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Jupiter, a god of the heathens, was the son of
dieu, m. *païens*, m. *étoit*, v. *fils*, m.
Saturn, and the father of the other gods. - - Robert,
Saturne *autres*, adj.
duke of Normandy, the brother of Henry, king
duc, m. *Normandie*, *frère*, m. *Henri*,
of England, was the son of William the con-
Guillaume, *con-*
queror. - - - My sister lives at York, the cap-
quérant, m. *Ma*, pro. *sœur*, f. *demeure*, v. *à*, p.
ital city of the county of the same name.
comté, m. *même*, adj. *nom*, m.

Mr. C***, the rector of the parish of St. James, and
curé,m. *paroisse*,f. *Jâques*
his brother, the dean of the cathedral, were
son,pro. *doyen*,m. *cathédrale*,f. *étoient*,
the sons of Mr. L***, the first lord of
premier,adj. *seigneur*
the admiralty.
amirauté,f.

In several instances, the definite article is neither expressed in English nor in French, as in narrations, when the style is animated; and after the conjunction *ni*, when it implies a complete negation, otherwise it has an article, requiring in both cases the negation *ne* before the verb: ex.

Conscience, honneur, intérêt, tout est sacrifié; il n'a ni *justice* ni *humanité*,
Conscience, honour, interest, every thing is sacrificed; he has *neither* justice *nor* humanity.

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux,
Neither gold nor greatness can make us happy.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The town was taken by storm: men,
ville,f. *fut*,v. *prise*,p.p. *d'assaut*,m.
women, children, old people, (every body) was
vieillard,m. *tout*,adj.
put to death. - - Palaces, temples, public[2] build-
mis,p.p. *à mort*. *Palais*,m. *édi-*
ings[1], private[2] houses (every thing) was
fice,m. *particulière*,adj. *maison*,f. *tout*
destroyed. - - His father will[2] spare[2] [1]neither[3]
détruit,p.p. *Son*,pro. *épargnera*,v. *ne ni*
pains nor money. - - - (He is) a fatherless child,
peine,f.sing. *C'est*,v. *orphelin*, adj.
he has neither parents nor friends. - - Neither the
a *parent*,m. *ami*,m.
house nor bed are made for you.
lit,m. *sont faits*,

When, in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence,

having a dependence on each other, and having no stop between them, the last (in English) must be placed at the beginning of the sentence (in French), and the others having the sign of the English possessive case, thus ('s) or (') only, come after it, with the genitive of this article before them, according to their gender and number: ex.

Le fils du roi, The king's son.
La couronne de la reine, The queen's crown.
That is, *the son of the king*, the *crown of the queen.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have seen the king's apartments and the
ai,v. *vu*,p.p. *appartement*,m.
queen's picture. - - - - The chancellor's son's wife is
portrait,m. *chancelier*,m.
the prime minister's eldest[2] sister[1]. - - - The man's
premier, *aînée*,adj. *sœur*,f.
strength is very great. - - - - Lend me the
force,f. *grande*,adj. *Prêtez*,v. *moi*,pro.
maid's cloak. - - - - My cousin's brother is
servante,f. *mantelet*,m. *Mon*,pro. *cousin*,m.
my uncle's best friend. - - - - The title of
oncle,m. *meilleur*,adj. *ami*,m. *titre*,m.
Dauphin belongs to the king of France's eldest[2]
appartient,v. *aîné*,
[1]son. - - Modesty is a woman's greatest orna-
Modestie,f. *une femme*,f. *le plus grand*,adj. *orne-*
ment.
ment,m.

The genitive of this article is often made in English by *to*, especially before nouns expressing *alliance*, *consanguinity*, or *kindred*, *witness*, or *inheritance*; and in short whenever *to* may be rendered by the above genitive definite: ex.

Monseigneur le duc de ***, My lord duke of ***, bro-
frère du roi, ther to the king, or the
king's brother.

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Mr. Richard, brother to the Prince's steward,
Mons. *intendant*,m.
has married Miss Prescot, niece to the Constable
a,v. *épousé*,p.p. *Mlle.* *nièce*,f. *connétable*,m.
of the Tower. - - - I have spoken to the Marchioness
Tour,f. *parlé*,p.p. *Marquise*,f.
of ***, sister to the queen's first Lady of honour. - -
Dame,f.
Mr. Henry, perfumer to the princess, has made
Henri,m. *parfumeur*,m. *fait*,p.p.
a [2]considerable [1]fortune. - - - The heir to the
considérable,adj. *fortune*,f. *héritier*,m.
crown of Portugal is the Prince of Brasil. - - My
couronne,f. *du Brésil*,m.
father was witness to that quarrel. - - -
a été,p.p. *témoin*,m. *cette*,pro. *querelle*,f.
I am a friend to [2]diligent [1]scholars, and an
suis,v. *diligent*,adj. *écolier*,m.
enemy to idleness.
ennemi,m. *paresse*,f.

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substantive and signifying *much*, *a great deal*, *many*, the genitive of this same article must always be used: ex.

Bien du mérite,	Much merit.
Bien des amis,	Many friends.
Bien de l'argent,	A great deal of money.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The children make much noise. - - - - This man
font,v. *bruit*,m. *Cet*,pro.
has (a great deal) of money, but he has also many
aussi,adv.
enemies. - - - - They [2]give [1]you much trouble
donnent,v. *peine*,f.
now; but they will[2] give[2] you[1] afterward
à présent,adv. *mais*,c. *donneront*,v. *ensuite*,adv.
much pleasure. - - - - (There were) many ladies in
Il y avoit,v. *dames en*

*company (last night). - - - - Mr. R. has read
*compagnie hier au soir,adv. Mons. lu,p.p.
many books, and he has acquired much know-
livre,m. acquis,p.p. connois-
ledge. - - - - To teach youth (we must
sances,s.f.pl. Pour,p. enseigner,v. jeunesse,f. (il faut,v.
have) (a great deal) of patience.
avoir,v.)

If the second substantive in French (which is the first in English) serve to denote some *particular commodity*, *use*, *quality*, or *liquor*, then it must be put in the dative: ex.

Le pot au *lait*,	The[1] milk[3]-pot[2].
La femme aux *pommes*,	The[1] apple[3]-woman[2].
Une cruche à l'*eau*,	A water-jug.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Tell the servant to bring[2]
Dites,v. *au* or *à la domestique*,m.&f. *de apporter*,v.
me[1] the tea-cannister, sugar-dish, and cream-
me,pro. *thé*,m. *boîte*,f. *sucre*,m. *pot*,m. *crême*,f.
basin. - - - Go to the wine-cellar and bring[2] us[1] the
bassin,m. *Allez*,v. *vin*,m. *cave*,f. *apportez*
vinegar-bottle. - - - (There is) the oyster-woman. - - -
vinaigre,m. *bouteille*,f. *Voilà huître*,f.pl.
I live in* the hay-market, my cousin in the
foin,m. *marché*,m. *mon*,pro.
fish-market, and my sister in the poultry-market. - -
poisson,m.sing. *ma*,pro. *volaille*,f.
Give me the oil-bottle, pepper-box, and mustard-
moi,pro. *huile*,f. *poivre*,m. *boîte*,f. *moutarde*,f.
pot. - - - - The butter-boy, the greens-girl, the
beurre,m. *légume*,m.pl.
hot[3]-rolls[2] man,[1] and the gingerbread-woman,
chauds,adj. *pain*,m.pl. *pain d'épices*,m.
called here. - - - We had cabbage-soup,
ont passé,p.p. *ici*,adv. *eûmes*,v. *chou*,m.pl. *de la soupe*,

* *In* is generally *en*, when immediately followed by a noun, and *dans* when followed by an article or pronoun.

a rice - pudding, a (leg of mutton) with caper
un riz,m. *pouding*,m. *gigot*,m. *capre*,f.pl
sauce, and ice - cream. - - We shall have pease
de la sauce,s. *glace*,f. *aurons*,v. *pois*,m.
porridge, a salt[2] cod,[1] with egg-sauce, and a
de la soupe, *une salée*,adj. *morue*,f. *œuf*,m.pl.
turbot with lobster-sauce. - - I bought a plum -
homard,m.pl. *ai acheté raisins secs*,m.
cake, an apple - tart, and two gooseberry and
gâteau,m. *pomme*,f.pl. *tarte*,f. *groseille*,f.pl.
cherry pies.
cerise,f.pl. *tourte*.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.
Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.
Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.
Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.
Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.
Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.
Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

Nom. Ac. { *des livres*, some books, / *des auteurs*, some authors.
Gen. Ab. { *de livres*, of or from some books. / *d'auteurs*, of or from some authors.
Dat. { *à des livres*, to some books. / *à des auteurs*, to some authors.

N. B. In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by the same article, as *some:* ex.

Y a-t-il du *pain ici?* Is there *any* bread here?
Avez-vous de la *viande?* Have you *any* meat?

This article must be used wherever the English word *some*, or *any*, is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence: ex.

Du *pain et* de l'*eau lui suffisent*,	Bread and water are sufficient for him.
Apportez du *vinaigre*, de la *moutarde*, de l'*huile et* des *fourchettes*,	Bring *some* vinegar, mustard, oil and forks.
Avez-vous de l'*argent à nous prêter ?*	Have you *any* money to lend us ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary
sont,v. *chose*,f. *nécessaires*,adj.
to man. - - I drink wine and water. - - She eats
bois,v. *mange*,v.
cheese. - - - Bring me some mustard. - - - Have you
fromage,m.
bought some paper, pens, and ink ? - - Send
acheté,p.p. *papier*,m. *plume*,f. *encre*,f.
him some bread, meat, and potatoes. - - - - Do you[2]
lui *pomme de terre*,f.
sell[1] fruit[3] ? - - Buy some tea and sugar. - -
vendez,v. *fruit*,m. *Achetez*,v. *thé*,m.
Will you eat some beef with turnips and
Voulez,v. *manger*,v. *bœuf*,m. *navet*,m.
carrots ? - - Do you drink beer ? - - (Is there) any
carotte,f. *buvez*,v. *bière*,f. *Y a-t-il*
wine in the cellar ? - - - (Was there) any oil in the
Y avoit-il
bottle ? - - I[1] have[2] given[4] him[3] bread, money,
donné,p.p. *lui*,pro.
and clothes. - - She has modesty and prudence. - -
habit,m. *modestie*,f. *prudence*,f.
He has bought some dishes and plates. - - - Will
plat,m. *assiette*,f.
you have some milk or cream ? - - I eat fish, eggs,
œuf,m.

greens, artichokes, and asparagus. - - - Bread, meat,
légume, *artichaut*,m. *asperge*,f.pl.
fish and vegetables, often[2] make[1] a good
végétaux,m.pl. *souvent*,adv. *font*,v. *bon*
dinner.
diner,m.

If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, we must use *de* or *d'* : as,

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
N. Ac. }	*De mauvais vin*,	*De bonne eau*,	*D'excellent pain*,
G. Abl. }	Bad wine,	Good water,	Excellent bread.
Dat.	*à de mauvais vin*,	*à de bonne eau*,	*à d'excellent pain*,
	To bad wine.	To good water.	To excellent bread.

PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	*De bons livres*,	*d'habiles gens*,
G. Ab. }	Good books.	Learned men.
Dat.	*à de bons livres*,	*à d'habiles gens*,
	To good books.	To learned men.

N. B. This last rule is without exception. But some persons find it difficult to distinguish between the genitive of the definite and this article ; now let them but parse, and they will perceive that in this phrase : *Lonres est le centre* du *bon goût*, *du* is no more than the genitive of the definite article denoting what kind of *taste*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You always[2] read[1] good books. - - [1]Bad wine[2]
toujours,adv. *lisez*,v.
is[4] [3]not[5] worth[4] good water. - - - He speaks to learned
vaut,v. *parle*,v.
men. - - - I have heard good news. - - - -
gens,f.* *appris*,p.p. *bonne*,adj. *nouvelle*,f.pl.
You have fine fruit. - - - - She has worthy
avez,v. *beau*,adj. *digne*,adj.
friends. - - Bring me good pens. - - Onions, celery,
Oignons,m. *céleri*,m.

* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

leeks, chervil, and (a great deal) of meat make
poireau,m. *cerfeuil*,m. *beaucoup*,adv. *font*,v.
what the French call good
ce que,pro. *François*,m.pl. *appellent*,v.
broth. - - - - I prefer good water to bad cider. - - - -
bouillon,m. *cidre*,m.
I have discoursed with learned people. - - My father
conversé,p.p. *gens*,f.
has in his garden good plums, fine peaches,
son,pro. *prune*,f. *belle*,adj. *pêche*,f.
and very large apricots. - - - - Miss Sharp
très,adv. *gros*,adj. *abricot*,m. *Mlle.f.*
has fine eyes. - - Paris is the centre of wit.
beau, œil,m. *bel esprit*,m.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE,

used before proper names of persons and places, and in the *Gen.* and *Abl.* the *e* is cut off before a vowel or an *h* mute, as usual.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *Pierre*, Peter.
Gen. Abl. *de Pierre*, of Peter.
Dat. *à Pierre*, to Peter.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *Marie*, Maria.
Gen. Abl. *de Marie*, of Maria.
Dat. *à Marie*, to Maria.

Nom. Acc. *Antoine*, Antony.
Gen. Abl. *d'Antoine*, of Antony.
Dat. *à Antoine*, to Antony.

Nom. Acc. *Londres*, London.
Gen. Abl. *de Londres*, of London.
Dat. *à Londres*, to London.

N. B. It is necessary to observe, that the particle *To*, used after a word signifying *coming*, *going*, *returning*, or *sending to*, placed before the name of a *kingdom*, *republic*, *country*, *province*, or *county*, must be rendered in French by the preposition *en*, without any article : ex.

Mon frère est allé en *Italie*, My brother is gone *to* Italy.
Il doit bientôt retourner en *Amérique*, He is soon to go back *to* America.

On the contrary, *to* must be rendered by *de*, when immediately preceded by the words *road*, or *path-way*: ex.

Le chemin de *Londres*, The road *to* London.
Le chemin de *Paris*, The way *to* Paris.

It must be observed that the *proper names* of most of the islands and other countries both in the East and West-Indies, and a few places in Europe, do not follow the above rule, but take the definite article, such as *l'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia; *le Brésil*, Brasil; *le Caire*, Cairo; *le Canada*, Canada; *la Guadeloupe*, Guadaloupe; *la Jamaïque*, Jamaica; *le Japon*, Japan; *la Martinique*, Martinico; *le Pérou*, Peru; *la Virginie*, Virginia; *le Mexique*, Mexico; and a few others: ex.

Venir	*de l'Abyssinie,*	to come	from Abyssinia,
	du Brésil,		from Brasil,
	du Caire,		from Cairo.
Aller	*à la Chine,*	to go	to China,
	au Canada,		to Canada,
	au Japon,		to Japan.

EXERCISE UPON THESE RULES.

(Here is) John's brother. - - Speak to Martha. - -
Voici,adv. *Jean* *Parlez*,v. *Marthe.*
It is Peter's hat. - - - - She goes to Richmond. - - -
C'est,v. *chapeau*,m. *va*,v.
He comes from Paris. - - - You have Mr.
vient,v. *Mons.*
Richard's sword. - - - When[1] will[2] you[3] go[2] to
épée,f. *Quand*,adv. *irez*,v.
France? - - I know not, for my father says
sais,v. *ne pas*,adv. *car*,c. *dit*,v.
that he (will[2] send) me[1] soon to Canada or
que,c. *il*,pro. *enverra*,v. *bientôt*,adv.
Jamaica. - - Give me Laura's cap. - - - - I (am going)
Laure *bonnet*,m. *vais*,v.

to Roxbury. - - - I have found Andrew's waistcoat.
trouvé,p.p. *André*,m. *veste*,f.
She (shall come back) to England (next year)
reviendra,v. *l'année prochaine*
to see her brother who is arrived from
pour voir,v. *son*, *qui*,pro. *est*,v. *arrivé*,p.p.
Japan and China. - - Carry that to Stephen. - -
Portez,v. *cela*,pro. *Etienne*.
(Here is) the road to Medford. - - - - My mother
Ma,pro.
intends to send my sister to Portugal
se propose de,v. *envoyer*,v. *ma*,pro.
or Spain, and thence to Rome, and my cousin (is to)
de là *doit*,v.
go to Mexico or Cairo.
aller,v. *ou*,c.

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of *quantity*, whether expressed in English or not; after the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the word *que*, what, standing for, how much, or how many, and, *quelque chose*, something, *rien*, nothing; before names of countries, kingdoms and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, &c. or by a verb signifying *coming*, *arriving*, or *returning from*: ex.

Tant de *pommes*,	So many apples.
Tant d'*argent*,	So much money.
Point de *repos*,	No rest.
Que de *peines et* de *soins!*	What care and trouble!
*Quelque chose** de *bon*,	Something good.
Il arrive de *France*,	He arrives *from* France.
Rien de *mauvais*,	Nothing bad.
Le roi d'*Angleterre*,	The king *of* England.
Elle vient d'*Amérique*,	She comes *from* America.

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have bought six yards of cloth. - - - Bring
acheté,p.p. *six* *aune* *drap*,m.
me three pounds of veal, and two pounds of
trois *livre* *veau*,m. *deux*

* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

mutton. - - She has a great number of children. - -
mouton,m. *un grand*,adj. *nombre*,m.
He has (too much) vanity. - - - You have less merit,
trop,adv. *vanité*,f. *moins*,adv.
but more wisdom. - - What a noise you make. - -
mais,c. *plus*,adv. *sagesse*. ⌒ *bruit*,m. *faites*,v.
(How many) fools in the world ! - - Do [1]not[4] give[3]
fou *monde*,m. ⌒ *ne pas*,adv.
her[3] (too many) pears. - - I[1] have[3] [2]no[4] daugh-
lui,pro. *trop*,adv. *ai* *ne point*,adv.
ters.[5] - - (So much) pride does [1]not[4] become[3] him[2]. - -
Tant,adv. *orgueil*,m. ⌒ *sied*,v. *lui*,pro.
(There is) something noble in his physiognomy. - -
Il y a,v. *sa*,pro. *physionomie*.
We have (so many) grapes. - - - They have a little
raisin,m. *un peu*,adv.
money. - - I know the king of Prussia. - - Did you
connois,v. *Prusse*,f. *Avez*,v.
see the duke of Bavaria with the archbishop
vu,p.p. *duc*,m. *Bavière*,f. *archevêque*,m.
of York ? - - He commanded an army of forty
commandoit,v. *une armée*,f. *quarante*
thousand men. - - - She[1] says[3] [2]nothing[4] true[5]. - - -
mille *dit*,v. *ne rien*,adv. *vrai*,adj.
You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. - -
parlez,v. *Alexandre*,m. *Macédoine*,f.
Do you[2] come[1] from Italy ? - - - No, I come
⌒ *venez*,v. *Non*,adv. *viens*,v.
from Africa.
Afrique.

De is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the *character*, *cause*, *country*, *matter*, *nature*, and *quality* ; and after the *adjectives of number*, when they are followed by a participle passive : ex.

Une maison de *brique*,	A[1] brick[3] house[2].
Un bonnet de *nuit*,	A night cap.
Une cuiller d'*argent*,	A silver spoon.
Du poisson de *rivière*,	River fish.
Du vin de *Bourgogne*,	Burgundy[2] wine[1].
Quatre de *renvoyés*,	Four (sent away.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Your[1] sister[2] has[3] a[4] silk[6] gown[5] and a gold
Votre, pro. *sœur*, f. *a*, v. *une soie*, f. *robe*, *un or*, m.
thimble. - - We drink Champagne wine. - - - - It is a
dé, m. *buvons*, v. *C'est*, v.
marble pillar. - - - - - They have a country
marbre *pillier*, m. *une* *campagne*
house built with oak wood. - -
maison *construite*, p.p. *de*, p. *chêne* *bois*.
Edinburgh is the capital city of the kingdom
Edinbourg, m *capitale*, adj. *ville*, f. *royaume*, m.
of Scotland. - - Shut the fore - door. - - A lady
Ecosse. *Fermez*, v. *devant* *porte*, f. *Une*
of wit is a jewel of worth. - - - - (He is) a man
esprit *un joyau*, m. *prix*. *C'est*, v.
of honour. - - - She has bought silver buckles
honneur. *argent* *boucle*, f.
and diamond ear - rings. - - - - - Have you
diamant *pendans-d'oreille*, m. *Avez*, v.
spoken to the silk-merchant? - - - Give me the
parlé, p. p. *marchand*, m.
upper - crust. - - - Bring me my straw - hat and
dessus, *croûte*, f. *mon paille* *chapeau*, m.
my night - cap. - - - - Miss Brown's chamber - maid and
nuit *bonnet*, m. *Mlle.* *chambre* *fille*, f.
Mrs. Rose's house-keeper are two sis-
Mme. *femme de charge*, f. *deux*
ters. - - The rich make use of silver plate,
riche, m. pl. *se servent*, v. *vaisselle*
and the poor make use of iron forks
pauvre, m. pl. *font*, v. *usage*, m. *fer*, m.
and pewter spoons. - - - - - The enemies had a
étain, m. *cuiller*. *eurent*, v.
hundred men killed, seventy wounded, and
cent *tués*, p. p. *soixante-dix* *blessés*, p. p.
forty lost.
quarante *perdus*, p. p.

De is placed after the adjectives signifying dimension, as *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high, tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long; and *profond*, deep; though there is no article expressed in English: ex.

Une table longue de *dix pieds et large* de *huit*, — A table ten feet long and eight broad.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into the substantive; then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de:* ex.

Une table de *dix pieds* de *longueur et* de *huit* de *largeur*, — A table ten feet long and eight broad.

In this last example it may be seen, that the French and English are parallel with each other; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw a tree eighteen feet large.
J'ai, v. *vu*, p.p. *un arbre*, m. *dix-huit pied*, m. *gros-*
----- I have a box four inches thick,
*seur**. *une boîte*, f. *quatre pouce*, m. *épais-seur*,
ten feet long, and six broad. -- I know
dix pied, m. *long-ueur*, *large-ur*. *connois*, v.
a man seven feet high. ----- (It is) a ditch
un sept haut-eur. *C'est*, v. *un fossé*, m.
nine feet six inches deep and five feet broad.
neuf profond-eur cinq
(There is) a room fifty paces long and
Voilà une chambre, f. *cinquante pas*, m.
twenty broad. --- The walls of our garden
vingt muraille, f. *notre*, pro.
are *or* (have) thirty feet three inches high, and two
sont, v. or †*ont*, v. *trente trois deux*
feet broad. -- I have a tree eighteen feet round
un arbre, m. *dix-huit gros-seur*, f.
and sixty high.

* Read *gros*, adjective, *grosseur*, substantive, without separation, and so of the others. See the rules to form the feminine gender, p. 50.

† *See* the rule upon *avoir* and *être* next page.

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *sont*, which is the proper word of the English *are*, and follows the preceding rule: but if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the word *sont*, are, is to be rendered into French by the verb *ont*, have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed.

Literal example by the adjective:

Notre chambre est longue de *vingt pieds et large* de *douze*,	Our room is long *by* twenty feet and wide *by* twelve.

By the substantive:

Notre chambre a vingt pieds de *longueur et douze* de *largeur*,	Our room has twenty feet *in* length and twelve *in* width.

When two substantives are joined together, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the particle *à*, in the sense of *for*; ex.

Un moulin à *papier*,	A paper[s] mill[1].
Une boîte à *poudre*.	A powder[s] box[1].

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.
Canon, m. *poudre* f. *fut*, v. *inventée*, p.p. *par*, p. *moine*, m.
The servant has lost the steel, and cannot
perdu, p.p. *briquet*, m. *ne peut pas*
light the candle. - - - - If you go to London
allumer, v. *chandelle*, f. *Si*, c. *allez*, v.
to-morrow, bring me a toupee - iron. - Have you
demain, adv. *apportez*, v. *toupet*, m. *fer*, m.
seen the water-mill which my father has bought?
vu, p.p. *que*, pro. *acheté*, p.p.
No, but I have seen the wind-mill which your
Non, adv. *vent*, m.

brother has built at Greenwich. - - - I have
fait bâtir, v. *à*
found your sister's work - bag. - - - William has for-
ouvrage *sac*, m. *Guillaume a dé-*
bidden his children to go to the dancing room.
fendu à ses *d'aller* *danser* *salle*, f.

DECLENSION *of* UN, m. UNE, f. A *or* AN.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.
Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.
Dat. *à un livre*, to a book.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.
Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.
Dat. *à une plume*, to a pen.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have a hat and a sword. - - - - She speaks
chapeau, m. *épée*, f. *parle*, v.
of an officer. - - - He[1] has[3] given[4] it[2] to[5] a
officier, m. *donné*, p.p. *le*, pro.
sailor. - - (There are) à bird and a cage. - - - -
matelot, m. *Voilà* *oiseau*, m. *cage*, f.
An ungrateful man is a monster (in the) eyes of a
ingrat, m. *monstre*, m. *aux* *œil*, m.
sensible[2] man[1]. - - Alexander was a great warrior,
sensé, adj. *Alexandre*, m. *étoit*, v. *guerrier*, m.
and a very learned philosopher. - - A fine
très, adv. *savant*, adj. *philosophe*, m. *belle*, adj.
flower in a garden is an ornament.
fleur, f. *ornement*, m.

It must be observed, that the English article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered in French by the definite articles, *le*, *la*, *les*; and by the preposition *par*, used for *time* and *space* in the sense of *each*, *every*, or *per*: ex.

Deux chelins le *cent*,	Two shillings *a* hundred.
Un écu le *boisseau*,	A crown *a* bushel.
Cinq chelins par *semaine*,	Five shillings *a* week.
Une guinée par *mois*,	One guinea *a* month.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Barley	sells	for	three	shillings	a	bushel. - - -		
Orge,f.	*se vend*,v.							
That	ale	(is worth)	six	pence	a	pint. - - -		
Cette,pro.	*aile*,f.	*vaut*,v.		*sou*,m.		*pinte*,f.		
Beef	costs	eight	pence	a	pound. - - - -			
Bœuf,m.	*coûte*,v.	*huit*,adj.			*livre*,f.			
This	lace	cost	a	crown	an	ell. - - -	He	
Cette,pro.	*dentelle*,f.	*coûta*,v.		*écu*,m.		*aune*,f.		
sells	his	best	cloth	a	guinea	a	yard. - -	
vend,v.	*son*,pro.	*meilleur*	*drap*,m.		*une*		*verge*,f.	
Burgundy	wine	(is sold)	nine	shillings	a	bottle. - -		
		le vin	*se vend*,v.		*neuf*,adj.			
My	shoemaker	sold[2]	me[1]	two	pair	of		
Mon,pro.	*cordonnier*,m.	*a vendu*,p.p.			*paire*,f.			
shoes	(at the rate)	of [2]half	[1]a	guinea	a	pair. - - -	My	
soulier	*à raison*	*demi*						
master	comes	twice	a	week. - -	My	uncle	goes	
	vient,v.	*deux fois*,adv.				*va*,v.		
to France	thrice	a	year. - - -	She	gives	three		
	trois fois,adv.	*an*,m.		*donne*,v.				
shillings	a	day	and	ten	pence	a	mile.	
		jour,m.			*mille*,m.			

According to the rule p. 33, *a* or *an* is not expressed in French before the second noun when it qualifies the first; the same article is likewise omitted when the verb *être* precedes the substantive; excepting when that verb has *ce* for its nominative: in the first instance the noun is employed as an adjective, in the second as a substantive; thus *il est homme* signifies, he has the feelings of a man, whilst *c'est un homme* means, there is a man.

M. D., membre de la chambre des communes	M. D., *a* member of the house of commons.

Etes-vous Anglois ?	Are you *an* Englishman ?
Non, Monsieur, je suis François,	Nor, sir, I am *a* Frenchman.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw the Duke of C***, a prince of the blood,
J'ai vu *duc*,m. *sang*,m.
who (was speaking) to Mr. F., a member of
qui,pro. *parloit*,v.
parliament. - - His cousin is a surgeon, and his brother
parlement,m. *Son* *chirurgien*,m.
is a physician. - - My sister is a milliner,
médecin,m. *marchande de modes*,f.
my brother is a tailor, and I am a carpenter. - - -
tailleur,m. *charpentier*,m.
I have read Castor and Pollux, a [2]French [1]opera. - - -
opéra,m.
Bristol, a sea - port, passes now
mer,f. *port*,m. *passe*,v. *à présent*,adv.
for the second city of the kingdom of Eng-
pour,p.
land. - - - Is she a duchess, or a marchioness ?
Est,v. *duchesse*,f. *marquise*,f.
- - - No, she is a countess.
comtesse,f.

OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives form their plural as the substantives.

RULE *to form their* FEMININE GENDER.

Many adjectives in *al* have no plural for their masculine ; as *conjugal*, conjugal ; *fatal*, fatal ; *filial*, filial ; *natal*, natal ; *naval*, naval ; *total*, total ; and some few others, with which a little practice will soon acquaint the learner.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders : ex.

Un jeune homme,	A young man.
Une jeune femme,	A young woman.

Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d*, *e*, *i*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc.		Fem.		
	Grand,		*grande*,*	great, tall, large.
	Poli,		*polie*,	polite.
	Aimé,		*aimée*,	loved.
	Civil,		*civile*,	civil.
	Demi,		*demie*,	half.
	Nu,		*nue*,	naked.

The last two adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

Une demi-livre,		A half-pound.
Une livre et demie,		A pound and a half.
Nu tête,	bare head,	*la tête nue.*
Nu pieds,	bare feet,	*les pieds nus.*

There are a few ending in *an*, *as*, *el*, *il*, *eil*, *ien*, *in*, *es*, *et*, *is*, *on*, *os*, *ot*, and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e*, mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc.		Fem.		
	Gras,		*grasse*,	fat.
	Gentil,		*gentille*,	genteel.
	Eternel,		*éternelle*,	eternal.
	Pareil,		*pareille*,	alike.
	Chrétien,		*chrétienne*,	christian.
	Epais,		*épaisse*,	thick.
	Bon,		*bonne*,	good.

* When that adjective precedes a substantive singular of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, we often suppress, in French, both in the pronunciation and writing the *e*, which is supplied by an apostrophe as in the following instances.

A grand' peine,		with hard labour.
Avoir	*grand' faim*,	to be very hungry.
	grand' soif,	to be very thirsty.
	grand' peur,	to be very much frightened.
Faire grand' chère,		to live well, to fare sumptuously.
La grand' mère,		the grand mother.
La grand' messe,		the high mass.
La grand' chambre,		the high court.

Should however the word *grande* be preceded by *très*, *fort*, very, *une*, one, or *la plus*, the most, then the final *e* must be added ; as,

Une fort grande salle, A very large room.

Masc.	*Gros,*	Fem.	*grosse,*	big.
	Sot,		*sotte,*	foolish, simple.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

Masc.	*Beau, bel,**	Fem.	*belle,*	handsome, fine.
	Bénin,		*bénigne,*	benign.
	Favori,		*favorite,*	favourite.
	*Fou, fol,**		*folle,*	foolish, crazy.
	Frais,		*fraîche,*	fresh.
	Long,		*longue,*	long.
	Malin,		*maligne,*	malicious.
	*Mou, mol,**		*molle,*	soft.
	*Nouveau, nouvel,**		*nouvelle,*	new, novel.
	*Vieux, vieil,**		*vieille,*	old.

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine: ex.

Masc.	*Blanc,*	Fem.	*blanche,*	white.
	Franc,		*franche,*	sincere.
	Sec,		*sèche,*	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted.

Masc.	*Caduc,*	Fem.	*caduque,*	in decay.
	Grec,		*Grecque,*	Greek.
	Public,		*publique,*	public.
	Turc,		*Turque,*	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine: ex.

Masc.	*Bref,*	Fem.	*brève,*	short.
	Naïf,		*naïve,*	plain, ingenuous.
	Neuf,		*neuve,*	new, not old.
	Veuf,		*veuve,*	widowed.
	Vif,		*vive,*	quick.

Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se*: ex.

Masc.	*Douloureux,*	Fem.	*douloureuse,*	painful, dolorous.
	Heureux,		*heureuse,*	happy, &c.
	Jaloux,		*jalouse,*	jealous.

* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated.

The following are excepted:

Masc.	*Doux*,	Fem. *douce*,	sweet.
	Faux,	*fausse*,	false.
	Perplex,	*perplexe*,	perplexed.
	Préfix,	*préfixe*,	prefixed.
	Roux,	*rousse*,	reddish.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in *gender*, *number*, and *case*: ex.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	*Le bon livre*,	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	*Du bon livre*,	of or from the good book.
Dat.	*Au bon livre*,	to the good book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	*Les bons livres*,	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	*des bons livres*,	of or from the good books.
Dat.	*aux bons livres*,	to the good books.

SINGULAR.—Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	*La bonne plume*,	the good pen.
Gen. Abl.	*de la bonne plume*,	of or from the good pen.
Dat.	*à la bonne plume*,	to the good pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	*Les bonnes plumes*,	the good pens.
Gen. Abl.	*des bonnes plumes*,	of or from the good pens.
Dat.	*aux bonnes plumes*,	to the good pens.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The tall man, the little (*petit*, adj.) woman, and the pretty (*joli*, adj.) children, whom (*que*, pro.) I met (*ai rencontrés*, p.p.) yesterday (*hier*, adv.) with their grandmother (were going) (*alloient*, v.) to London: they were (*avoient*, v.) all very hungry and thirsty. - - - The polite[2]

inhabitants[1] of that fine city treat all the
habitant,m. *cette*,pro. *traitent*,v.
strangers in a civil[2] and frank[3] manner.[1] - - -
étranger,m. *de une* *manière*,f.
Lean[2] sheep[1] grow fat in good
Maigre,adj. *les brebis*,f.pl. *deviennent*,v. *dans*,p.
pastures. - - - Constant[2] study[1] joined to a great
pâturage,m. *étude*,f. *joint*,p.p.
application makes men learned. - - - The new[2]
application,f. *rend*,v. *savant*,adj. *neuf*
coat,[1] which you [2]gave [1]me, is
habit,m. *que*,pro. *avez donné*,p.p.
better than the old great-coat which my
meilleur,adj. *que*,c. *redingote*,f.
father had bought at his tailor's. - - We went
avoit *achetée* *chez*,p. *allâmes*,v.
yesterday to the high court where we found all
trouvâmes,v.
the judges already met.
déjà,ad. *assemblés*,p.p.

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, not immediately following them, must be put in the plural, when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if these substantives be of different genders: ex.

Le frère, la sœur, le neveu, et la nièce, sont tous morts, The brother, sister, nephew, and niece are all dead.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The book, paper, pencil, and penknife, which
papier,m. *crayon*,m. *canif*,m. *que*
you lent[2] me[1], are excellent. - - - The
avez prêté,p.p. *me*,pro. *excellent*,adj.
pen, ruler, inkhorn and grammar which my bro-
règle,f. *écritoire*,f.

ther has bought, are very good. - - - The king,
très,adv.
queen, prince, and princesses were gone. - - - The
étoient,v. *sorti*,p.p.
corn, wheat, rye, pease and beans, in a word, all
seigle,m. *fève*,f. *en mot*,m.
the grains which were on the ground,
grain,m. *qui*,pro. *étoient*,v. *sur*,p. *terre*,f.
were frozen. - - - My father's house, and my uncle's
furent,v. *gelé*,p.p.
(country-seat) are (very much) alike.
château,m. *bien*,adv. *semblable*,adj.

When two or more substantives of different genders are immediately followed by an adjective or participle past, these may agree in gender and number with the last substantive, particularly when the substantives are synonymous or nearly so; any other case met with in authors is either a poetical licence or an oversight: ex.

Il gouverne avec un pouvoir et une autorité absolue,	He governs with an absolute power and authority.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He studies with an incredible[3] application[1] and
étudie,v. *incroyable*,adj.
courage[2]. - - - He who has for his guides
courage,m. *Celui*,pro. *qui*,pro. *guide*,m.
consummate[3] zeal[1] and prudence[2] deserves
consommé,adj. *un zèle*,m. *une prudence*,f. *mérite*,v.
the general[3] esteem[1] and applause[2] of his
estime,f. *applaudissement*,m. *ses*,pro.
fellow-citizens. - - - I found the doors, the
conciloyen,m. *ai trouvé*,p.p. *porte*,f.
windows, and the shutters shut.
fenêtre,f. *volets*,m. *fermé*,p.p.

THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them; but there is a kind of adjectives, which may either precede or follow their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following are commonly placed before.*

Beau, handsome, fine.	*Joli*, pretty.
Bon, good.	*Méchant*, wicked.
Brave, brave.	*Mauvais*, bad.
Cher, dear.	*Meilleur*, better.
Chétif, vile, poor, mean.	*Moindre*, less.
Galant, well-bred.	*Petit*, little, small.
Grand, great, tall.	*Saint*, holy.
Gros, big, large.	*Tout*, all.
Honnête, honest, civil.	*Vieux*, old.
Jeune, young.	*Vrai*, true.

EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was
vu,p.p. *dame*,f. *qui*,pro.
speaking) to an old gentleman. - - - He had
parloit,v. *monsieur*,m. *Il*,pro. *avoit*,v.
a fine hat and a pretty sword. - - Your little
chapeau,m. *epée*,f. *Votre*,pro.
sister deserved a better fate. - - I know a young
méritoit, v. *destin*, m. *connois*, v.
man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. - - -
cheval, m. *écurie*, f.

* No general rule can be given on this subject however, for of those adjectives enumerated here above, many may be placed after and receive a new signification, thus *un galant homme* means a well-bred man, *un homme galant*, a gallant, &c. Practice and observation only will give that knowledge.—See next rule.

He[1] has[3] lent[4] it[2] to an honest man. - - The
a *prêté*, p.p. *le*, pro.
apostle Paul was a holy man. - - - My brother has
apôtre, m.
bought a good watch. - - - Your father was a
acheté, p. p. *montre*, f. *étoit*, v.
brave general, and a well-bred man. - - - You have
avez, v.
lost all your money. - - - - Vile creature, I have
perdu, p.p. *créature*, f.
heard your wicked conversation. - - - Mr. A. is a
entendu, p.p. *conversation*, f.
great man, and the best of all fathers.
homme

Some adjectives have different meanings according as they are placed before or after their substantive, as, *une femme* sage, a wise woman: *une* sage *femme*, a midwife; and *une* grosse *femme*, a big woman; *une femme* grosse, a pregnant woman; *un homme* honnête, a civil man; *un* honnête *homme*, an honest man; a little practice will soon remove any of these apparent difficulties.

The following adjectives must be placed after their substantives.

1. All participles used as adjectives; as,

Une personne reconnoissante,	A grateful person.
Du bœuf rôti,	Roast beef.

2. All adjectives expressing the *shape* or *form*; as,

Une table ronde,	A round table.
Une chambre carrée,	A square room.

3. All adjectives expressing the *colour* or *taste*; as,

Un chapeau noir,	A black hat.
Un habit rouge,	A red coat.
Une pomme douce,	A sweet apple.
Une liqueur amère,	A bitter liquor.

4. All adjectives expressing the *matter* of which a thing is composed; as,

Des parties sulfureuses,	Sulphurous parts.
Un corps aérien,	An aerial body.

5. All adjectives expressing the quality of *hearing* and *touching;* as,

Un instrument sonore,	A sonorous instrument.
Une voix harmonieuse,	An harmonious voice.
Un bois dur,	A hard wood.
Un corps mou,	A soft body.

6. All adjectives expressing the name of nations; as,

L'empire Romain,	The Roman empire.
La poësie Angloise,	The English poetry.

7. All adjectives, which, when used by themselves, convey the meaning of a substantive, as *rich, blind,* &c.

Un homme riche,	A rich man.
Une femme aveugle,	A blind woman.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

An ignorant young man is despised by (every *méprisé*, p.p. *de*, p. *tout le* body.) - - - You have an English hat, and she has a *monde*, m. *Anglois*, adj.
French gown. - He reads an Italian proverb. - - *François*, adj. *robe*, f. *lit*, v. *Italien*, adj. *proverbe*, m.
I like (very much) the German tongue and *aime*, v. *beaucoup*, adv. *Allemand*, adj. *langue*, f.
the Spanish dress. - - - - (It is) a square place. *Espagnol*, adj. *habillement*, m. *C'est*, v. *carré*, adj. *place*, f.
She likes sweet wine. - - Your sister has an har- *aime*, v. *doux*, adj. *le vin*, m.
monious voice. - - - - I have bought a white gown *voix*, f. *blanc*, adj.
and a black cloak. - - - You have a faithful *noir*, adj. *mantelet*, m. *fidèle*, adj.

servant. - - - - - - I eat green pease, with
domestique, m. *et*, f. *mange*, v. *vert*, adj.
boiled mutton. - Bring me a pound and a half
bouilli, p.p. *mouton*, m. *demi*, adj.
of cherries, and half a pound of currants. - We had a
cérise, f. *groseille*, f. *eûmes*, v.
kind reception, and we played at a di-
favorable, adj. *accueil*, m. *joûâmes*, v. *à*, p. *di-*
verting game. - He lives in a cold country.
vertissant, adj. *jeu*, m. *demeure*, v. *froid*, adj. *pays*, m.
- - You have left the windows and the door
laissé, p.p. *fenêtre*, f. *porte*, f.
open. - - Will you have a bit of roast
morceau, m. *rôti*, p.p.
chicken? - - Do you[2] read[1] the Punic war? - -
poulet, m. *lisez*, v. *Punique*, adj. *guerre*, f.
He has made a rash vow. - - Your sister
fait, p.p. *téméraire*, adj. *vœu*, m.
is an agreeable lady. - - I like a grey stuff. - -
agréable, adj. *gris*, adj. *étoffe*, f.
(It was) really a tragical history.
C'étoit, v. *réellement*, adv. *tragique*, adj. *histoire*, f.

When two or more adjectives belong to one substantive, the surest way is to place them after it, with the conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and if an adjective be used in a sentence without a substantive, this adjective must always be rendered in French by the masculine gender.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and bountiful king. - -
juste, adj. *sage*, adj. *bienfaisant*, adj.
Mr. Brown's daughter is with a sincere and
Monsieur, m. *sincère*, adj.
generous lady. - - I have a scholar of a solid,
généreux, adj. *écolier*, m. *solide*, adj.
bright, and lively genius. - - The wicked
brillant, adj. *vif*, adj. *esprit*, m. *méchant*, adj. pl.
(shall be) punished. - - Miss Preston is a
seront, v. *puni*, p.p. *Mademoiselle*, f.

young, handsome, and well-shaped lady. - - She has
bien-fait, adj.
married a sober, virtuous, and amiable
épousé, p.p. *sobre*, adj. *vertueux*, adj. *aimable*, adj.
man.—The good (shall be) praised.—The diligent
seront, pl. *loué*, p.p. *diligent*, adj. pl.
(shall be) rewarded.
récompensé, p.p.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of *more* or *less* in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison:

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive:* but this is merely an adjective used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution: ex. *joli*, pretty; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shows its *equality*, *excess* or *defect:* it is therefore of three sorts:

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès*, The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, The comparative by defect.

The comparative by *equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, as many; *aussi*, so, or as, before an adjective; and *que*, as, after it: ex.

Votre oncle a autant *d'argent, et* autant *d'amis* que *mon père*, Your uncle has *as much* money, and *as many* friends *as* my father.

Ma sœur est aussi *ambitieuse* que *vous*, My sister is *as* ambitious *as* you.

Mon frère est aussi *savant* que *le vôtre*, My brother is *as* learned *as* yours.

N. B.—From the preceding examples and the following, it will be easily seen that when the adverbs, *tant*, so much, so many; *autant*, as much, as many; *plus*, more, and *moins*, less, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The learner will also observe that *si* and *aussi*, so, as; generally precede adjectives, when a comparison is made by either; whereas *tant* and *autant* are always followed by a noun or verb, the French conjunction *que*, Englished by either *as*, *than*, or *that*, being the term of the comparison; *plus* or *moins* may precede either an adjective, a noun, or verb.

Than, after *more* or *less*, *plus* ou *moins*, followed by a *noun of number*, is rendered in French by *de*, and not by *que*: ex.

Je perds plus d'*un Louis et vous gagnez moins* de *cinq francs*,	I lose more *than* a Louis and you gain less *than* five francs.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. -- *étoit*,v. *ambitieux*,adj. *que*,c. *César*, m.

I am as tall as you. - - - Miss D. has as much live- *suis*,v. *haut*,adj. *Mlle a*,v. *viva-*

liness, and she is as amiable as her cousin. -- If my fa- *cité*,f. *est*,v. *sa*,pro. *cousine*,f. *Si*, c.

ther were as rich as my uncle, he (would make) a better *étoit*, v. *oncle*, m. *feroit*, v.

use of his riches. - We have as many books as your *usage*,m. *ses*, pro. *autant*, adv. *vos*,pro.

brothers, and they are as learned as we. - I am as honest *sont*, v. *nous*,pro.

and civil as my companions. - - You [2]owe [1]me more *compagnon*,m. *devez*, v.

than two dollars, and you pay[2] me[1] less than fifty cents. *gourde* *payez* *sou*,m.

The *comparative by excess* is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

Sa cousine est plus *diligente que moi, et est* plus *savante que vous*,	Her cousin is *more* diligent than I, and is *more* learned than you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Miss A. is handsomer and more learned than
Mlle *que*, c.
her sisters. - - Lucia is taller and more proud
Lucie,f. *orgueilleux*, adj.
than her little cousin. - - - His sister is more
sa,pro. f. *Sa*, pro.
covetous than he. - - - Nothing is pleasanter to
avare,adj. *lui*,pro. *Rien ne*,adv. *agréable*,adj.
the mind than the light of truth. - - - -
esprit,m. *lumière*,f. *vérité*, f.
Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and
aimable,adj.
nothing is more desirable than wisdom. - - -
désirable,adj. *sagesse*,f.
My daughter is taller than your son by* two inches. - - -
de *pouce*,m.
Your brother is taller than you by the[2] whole[1] head[3]. - -
tout *tête*,f.
In winter the roads are always worse than
En hiver,m. *chemin*,m. *plus mauvais*,adj.
in summer. - - He gave[2] me[1] a more beautiful eagle.
été. *donna* *aigle*, f.

The *comparative by defect* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before an adjective; or *tant*, so much, so many; or *si*, so; with the negation *ne pas*, or *point*, not; or *ne, ni*, neither, nor, before them: ex.

Votre cousine est moins *noble*	Your cousin is *less* noble
que vous,	than you.
Il n'est pas si *orgueilleux que*	He is not *so* proud as his
sa sœur,	sister.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Mrs. P*** is less polite than her daughter,
Mme *poli*, adj.
but her daughter (is not) so revengeful as she.
n'est pas,adv. *vindicatif*,adj.
You are[2] [1]not[3] so dutiful as your brother.
êtes,v. *ne pas*,adv. *obéissant*,adj.
My father is not so rich as yours, but he has
le vôtre, pro.

* *By, after* a comparison is rendered into French by *de*.

not so much self-love. - - - - - Miss Goodwill has less wit
amour-propre,m. *Mlle*
than her mother. - - - - - - Paris (is not) so populous as
peuplé,adj.
London.—Your companion is neither so prudent nor
n'est ni *ni*
so circumspect as you.

It must be observed, that in sentences in which the above adverbs *more* or *less* are repeated to express a comparison, the definite article *the*, preceding either, is totally suppressed in French: as,

Plus *on est pauvre*, moins *on a d'embarras*,	*The* poorer* people are, *the less* care they have.
Plus *je la vois*, plus *je la hais*,	*The more* I see her, *the more* I hate her.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The more a thing is difficult, the more honour-
chose, f. *difficile*,adj. *hono-*
able[3] it[1] is[2]. - - - The less you give to your chil-
rable,adj. *elle*,pro. *donnez*,v. *vos*
dren, the less they spend. - - - The [1]richer[4] they[2]
ils,pro. *dépensent*,v.
are[3], the more covetous they are. - - The more a
avare,adj.
young man studies, the more learned he grows.
étudie,v. *savant*, adj. *devient*,v.
The more a drunkard drinks, the more thirsty he is. - -
ivrogne,m. *boit*,v. *altéré*,adj.
The more odious laziness is, the more we should
odieux,adj. *paresse*,f. *devrions*,v.
avoid[2] it[1]. - - The less you apply, the less you
éviter,v. *la*,pro. *vous vous appliquez*,v.
learn. - - The more they know[2] you[1], the less
apprenez,v. *connoîtront*,v.fut.
they will esteem[2] you[1].
estimeront,v.fut.

The above comparative adverbs, *si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*, *plus* and *moins*, must be repeated, in French, before

* *Poorer*, *richer*, and all similar forms are rendered into French by *more* poor, *more* rich; observe well the construction of the above sentence.

each adjective, noun, verb, or adverb, in the sentence: ex.

Votre frère est aussi *savant et* aussi *éclairé que mon cousin*,	Your brother is *as* learned and enlightened as my cousin.
M. Robert n'a ni tant *de bien* ni tant *d'esprit que M. Dubois*,	Mr. Robert has neither *so much* wealth nor wit as Mr. Dubois.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

My father has as many (apple - trees) *autant*,adv. *pommier*,m.
and (pear - trees) in his orchard as (there are) *poirier*,m. *verger*,m. *il y en a*,v.
in yours. - - - - His eldest brother (will be) more *le vôtre.* *aîné*, adj. *sera*, v.
attentive, industrious, and rich than he. - - - - *attentif*,adj. *industrieux*,adj. *lui*, pro.
Miss A*** has less wit, less liveliness, and becom- *vivacité* *agré-*
ingness than her sister. - - She has as much virtue *mens*
and good sense as beauty and modesty. - - My *sens* *Mon*, pro.
cousin is as merry, lively, and amiable as his *gai*,adj. *enjoué*,adj. *ses*,pro.
school-fellows.
compagnon,m.

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the adverbs used in forming the superlative degree.

The three following adjectives are comparative by themselves, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*; and *aîné*, elder, or eldest, is used for *plus âgé*, or *le plus âgé*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The watch which my grand-father has bought
montre,f. *que*,pro. *grand-père*,m. *achetée*, p.p.
is better than the clock which he gave to
pendule, f. *a donnée*, p.p.
my mother. - - - - My friend's buckles are better than
mère,f. *boucle*,f.

those of his uncle, but mine are worse
celles,pro. *oncle*,m. *les miennes*,pro.
than his. - - - - - - - - - The life of a slave is
les siennes,pro. *vie*,f. *esclave*,m.
ten times worse than death itself. - - - - - - The
dix fois,adv. *mort*,f. *même*,adv.
pain which I endure is less than that which
peine,f *que souffre*,v. *celle*,pro. *qui*,pro.
is inflicted on galley-slaves.
infligée,p.p. *aux galérien*,m.

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives: 1. The *relative* which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le*, *la*, *les*, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *aux*, precede the adverbs *plus*, standing then for most, *mieux*, best, *moins*, least, before an adjective; or the adjectives *meilleur*, best, *moindre*, least, *pire*, worst: ex.

Votre sœur est la plus *belle* et la meilleure *femme de la ville*,	Your sister is *the* handsomest and *best* woman in the town.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The vine is one of the [2]most useful[3]* and [4]agree-
vigne,f. *un les plus utiles*,adj.pl.
able gifts[1] of Providence[5]. - - Virtue is [1]the[3] most[4] pre-
don,m. *Providence*,f. *pré-*
cious[5] thing[2] † in the world. - - - The lion is the
cieux,adj. *chose*,f. *du monde*,m.
strongest and most courageous of all animals. - - - -
fort,adj. *courageux*,adj. *animal*,m.
(There is) the handsomest lady in London. - - - She is
Voilà,adv. *de*
so touchy, that she will not bear the least
bourru,adj. *veut*,v. *souffrir*,v.
joke. - - - - - Miss P. is the mildest, politest, and most
raillerie,f. *doux*,adj. *poli*,adj.
affable of all her sisters. - - Ingratitude is
affable,adj. *ses*,pro.

* See the gender of adjectives, p. 50. † See the note in the page that follows this.

the greatest of all vices. - - - If France were as rich
vice,m. *étoit*,v.
as England, (it would be) the best country in the world.*
ce seroit,v. *pays*,m.

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very, *infiniment*, infinitely, precedes an adjective; and when any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns *mon*, *ton*, *son*, *notre*, *votre*, *leur*, *&c.* they become superlatives: ex.

Votre oiseau est très-joli, Your bird is very pretty.
Vous êtes mon meilleur ami, You are my best friend.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

God is a being infinitely great and perfect. - - - -
être,m. *parfait*, adj.
I am your most humble and obedient
très,adv. *obéissant*,adj.
servant. - - - The front of your house is very
serviteur,m. *façade*,f.
beautiful. - - - - You are very good, but your brother
beau.
is very wicked. - - - - - My uncle has a very fine coun-
méchant,adj. *cam-*
try - house, and very spacious[2] gardens[1]. - - - -
pagne *spacieux*,adj.
My best friend is dead. - - - - Our common
Notre,pro. *commun*, adj.
enemy has [1]the[0] most[4] inveterate[5] hatred[2] against
invétéré,adj. *haine*,f. *contre*,p.
this country. - - - - Their least embarrassments
ce,pro. *pays*,m. *Leurs*,pro. *embarras*,m.

* It may be observed in some of these examples, that the preposition *in*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered in French by one of these articles *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition *by*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by *de* only.

make their greatest delight. - - - - - Pride and
font,v. *délices*,f.pl. *Orgueil*,m.
passion are his least defects.
colère,f. *ses*,pro. *défaut*,m.

OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers: 1st, The *absolute*, which simply relates the number of the things spoken of, viz.

Un, (femin. *une*,)	One.
Deux,	Two.
Trois,	Three.
Quatre,	Four.
Cinq, (*q* is sounded,)	Five.
Six, (pron. *siss*,)	Six.
Sept, (pron. *set*,)	Seven.
Huit, (*t* is sounded,)	Eight.
Neuf, (*f* is sounded,)	Nine.
Dix, (pron. *diss*,)	Ten.
Onze,	Eleven.
Douze,	Twelve.
Treize,	Thirteen.
Quatorze,	Fourteen.
Quinze,	Fifteen.
Seize, (*sei* is broad,)	Sixteen.
Dix-sept, (pron. *diss-set*,)	Seventeen.
Dix-huit, (pron. *diz-uit*,)	Eighteen.
Dix-neuf, (pron. *diz-neuf*,)	Nineteen.
Vingt, (*gt* are dropped,)	Twenty.
Vingt et un,	Twenty-one.
Vingt-deux,	Twenty-two.
Vingt-trois, &c.	Twenty-three, &c.
Trente,	Thirty.
Trente et un,	Thirty-one.
Trente-deux, *&c.*	Thirty-two, &c.
Quarante,	Forty.
Cinquante,	Fifty.
Soixante, (pron. *soissante*,)	Sixty.
Soixante et un,	Sixty-one.
Soixante et deux, *&c.*	Sixty-two, &c.

g is dropt, but *t* is sounded.

Soixante et dix,	Seventy.
Soixante et onze, &c.	Seventy-one, &c.
Quatre-vingts, (*gts* are dropped, and *gt* in the following too,)	Eighty.
Quatre-vingt-un,	Eighty-one.
Quatre-vingt-deux, &c.	Eighty-two, &c.
Quatre-vingt-dix, &c.	Ninety, &c.
Cent, (*t* in *cent* is dropped, and in the following too,)	A *or* one* hundred.
Cent-un,	A *or* one* hundred and one, &c.
Deux-cents, (*x* is dropped, and the two final consonants in the following also, and before any other word, beginning with a consonant,)	Two hundred.
Trois Cents,	Three hundred.
Neuf cents, (*f* dropped,)	Nine hundred.
Mille, *mil*,†	A *or* one* thousand.
Deux mille,	Two thousand.
Trois mille, &c.	Three thousand, &c.
Cent mille, &c.	A *or* one* hundred thousand, &c.
Neuf cent mille, (*f* dropped,)	Nine hundred thousand.
Un million,	A million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite *de*, *à*, and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined without any article intervening; and they are invariable in their form, except *quatre-vingt*, eighty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million; which take an *s* in their plural, when immediately followed by a substantive: ex.

Quatre-vingts femmes,	Eighty women.
Deux cents hommes,	Two hundred men.

* It will be seen by the following, that the English particle *a* or *one* is not expressed in French: ex.

Je l'ai vu et lui ai parlé cent fois, mille fois,	I have seen him and spoken to him *a* hundred times, *a* thousand times.

† *Mentioning* the date of the year, we must write, *mil*, and not *mille*: ex. *L'an mil huit-cent quinze*, the year 1815.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I was in the company of seven gentlemen and
compagnie,f. *MM.*
nine ladies. - - He has spoken to three officers and
dame *parlé,*p.p.
two generals. - - If I had a hundred guineas I would[3]
*avois,*v. *guinée* *en*
lend[3] you[1] eighty. - - The army of our
*prêterois,*v. *armée,f.* *nos,*pro.
allies was composed of a hundred thousand
*allié,*m. *etoit composée,*p.p.
men of foot, and twenty thousand of horse. - - -
infanterie *cavalerie.*
They took fifteen hundred men prisoners,
*prirent,*v. *prisonnier,*
killed four thousand, wounded a thousand,
*en tuèrent,*v. *en blessèrent,*v.
and (carried away) above two millions in specie. - -
*emportèrent,*v. *plus de* *espèces.*
The battle (was fought) in one thousand eight hun-
bataille,f. *se livra,*v. *en*
dred and fourteen, at three o'clock (in the) morning.
heure,f. *du* *matin.*

These numbers are employed as substantives, in some cases, as in the game of cards, and in dates: ex.

Le huit de cœur,	The eight of hearts.
Nous partîmes de Boston le quinze,	We left Boston on the fifteenth.
Je reviendrai le douze,	I shall return on the twelfth.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Will you but tell[2] me[1], if you have the seven of
seulement *dire*
clubs? - Yes, I have[2] it[1], and the ten of spades too. - The
trèfle? *ai* *le* *pique* *aussi.*

nine of diamonds (is missing) in this pack. -- I (shall be)
carreau manque ce jeu. serai
absent for a week or two, but you may be certain, that
pouvez
I shall be here on the twenty-fifth. -- Tell my sister
Dites à
that I expect[2] her[1] on the seventeenth. - - - - You may
attends la
date your letter the twenty-sixth. - - - - - - The
dater,v. *du*
sixteenth (will be) her birth-day. - - - - - The ten of
sera son jour de naissance,m.
diamonds is not good. - - I have the ace of spades. --
carreau as pique.
We (shall have) a holiday on the twenty-fifth instant. ---
aurons du courant.
Congress met on the third of December. ---
s'est assemblé
We received the President's Message on Friday, the
recumes
fifth of this month, it is most excellent.
ce très

In every instance therefore the cardinal numbers must be used in French when speaking of the days of the month, though the ordinal be used in English; excepting for *le premier*, the first, speaking of the first day of every month: as,

Le premier de Mai,	The first of May.
Le deux de Novembre,	The second of November.
C'est aujourd'hui le quatre d'Août.	To day is the fourth of August.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My friend will come (to see[2]) us[1] on the fifth of
viendra,v. *voir*,v.
next[2] month[1]. - - Lady[2] - day[1] falls
prochain,adj. *mois*,m. *Notre Dame jour*,m. *tombe*,v.
on the twenty-fifth of March. -- In the leap[2]
Mars,m. *bissextile*,adj.

year[1] the month of February has one day more,
année,f. *Février*, m. *de plus*,adv.
which is the twenty-ninth. -- The first of November
qui,pro. *Novembre*,m.
is (all-saints-day,) and the fifth of the same month
la toussaint *même*,adj. *mois*,m.
is the day of the [2]Gun powder [1]plot. -------
des poudres,pl. *conspiration*,f.
Come on the first day of July.
Venez,v. *Juillet*,m.

2. *The ordinal numbers.* This class of numerals, beside the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

Le premier ou *unième*,	The first.
Le second ou *deuxième*,	The second.
Le troisième,	The third.
Le quatrième,	The fourth.
Le cinquième,	The fifth.
Le sixième,	The sixth.
Le septième,	The seventh.
Le huitième,*	The eighth.
Le neuvième,	The ninth.
Le dixième,	The tenth.
Le onzième,*	The eleventh.
Le douzième,	The twelfth.
Le treizième,	The thirteenth.
Le quatorzième,	The fourteenth.
Le quinzième,	The fifteenth.
Le seizième,	The sixteenth.
Le dix-septième,	The seventeenth.
Le dix-huitième,	The eighteenth.
Le dix-neuvième,	The nineteenth.
Le vingtième,	The twentieth.
Le vingt-et-unième,	The twenty-first.
Le vingt-deuxième, *&c.*	The twenty-second, &c.
Le trentième,	The thirtieth.
Le trente-deuxième, *&c.*	The thirty-second, &c.
Le quarantième,	The fortieth.

* No elision *is to be made in the* article before onze, onzième ; huit, *huitième ; for we say, le, du, au, la, de la, à la*, &c. onze, onzième, &c.

Le cinquantième,	The fiftieth.
Le soixantième,	The sixtieth.
Le soixante-et-dixième,	The seventieth.
Le quatre-vingtième,	The eightieth.
Le centième,	The hundredth.
Le cent unième,	The hundred and first.
Le cent deuxième, &c.	The hundred and second, &c.
Le deux centième,	The two hundredth.
Le millième,	The thousandth.

These ordinal numbers are declined with the article definite *le, la,* &c. and are placed before their substantives: ex.

Le premier jour du mois, The first day of the month.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE RULE PAGE 70.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters,
Juin *ai reçu*,v.
but the eleventh [2]has afforded[3] me[1] more
procuré,p.p. *me*,pro. *plus*,adv.
pleasure than the others. - - - - Mrs. B. is the fifth
autre,pro. *Mme*
lady whom I saw to day. - - - - The spring
que,pro. *ai vue*,p.p. *aujourd'hui*, adv. *printemps*,m.
begins on the twenty-first or twenty-second of
commence,v.
March. - - - - He cannot spend the sixth
Mars. *ne peut pas*,v. *dépenser*,v.
part of his fortune. - - - - The eleventh of No-
partie,f. *sa*,pro. *fortune*,f.
vember, which is the eleventh month of the year,
année,f.
was [1]the[3] dullest[4] day[2] of the[6] whole[5] month[7].
fut *triste*,adj. *tout*,adj.

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute* number in French, though the ordinal be used in English, except the *first* and *second;* and we place it after the substantive, *as in English,* without expressing the article the: ex.

George Trois,	George *the* Third.
Louis Seize,	Lewis *the* Sixteenth.
Henri Quatre,	Henry *the* Fourth.
Henri Premier,	Henry *the* First.
George Second,	George *the* Second.

and not, *Henri* Un, *George* Deux.

We say, for the following *solitary names* of an *Emperor* and a *Pope*, as a distinction from other sovereigns,

Charles Quint,	Charles the Fifth.
Sixte Quint,	Sixtus the Fifth.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Edward the Sixth, the son of Henry the
Edouard,m. *fils*
Eighth, and the grand - son of Henry the Seventh,
petit,adj.
was[2] but[3] nine years old when he began
avoit,v. *ne que* *an* *quand*,c. *commença*,v.
to reign. - - - - - - Henry the Fifth, King of England,
à régner,v. *roi*,m.
the son of Henry the Fourth, and father of Henry
the Sixth, married Catharine, the daughter of
épousa,v. *Cathérine*
Charles the Sixth, king of France; conquered the
conquit,v.
greatest part of that kingdom, and died (in the)
partie,f. *ce*,pro. *royaume*,m. *mourut*,v. *au*
midst of his victories. - - - (Long live) George
milieu *ses*,pro. *victoire*,f. *Vive*,v.
the Third, grand - son to George the Second. - - - -
petit,adj.
Charles the Fifth, Emperor of Germany and king of
Allemagne, *roi*,m.
Spain; and Sixtus the Fifth, one of the popes, were
pape,m. *étoient*,v.
two great men.
grand,adj.

The definite article *the* is also suppressed in French before the *ordinal number*, when it is preceded by a *noun used to quote a chapter, article*, or page of a book;

but, should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English, and the article is expressed: ex.

Livre troisième, Book *the* third.
Le troisième livre, The third book.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What you (look for) you (will find[2]) it[1]
Ce que,pro. *cherchez*,v. *trouverez*,v. *le*, pro.
in the Second Book of Samuel, chapter the third,
Samuel, *chapitre*
verse the ninth, page the first, and line tenth.
verset *page*,f. *ligne*
------- We read in Telemachus, book the
lisons,v. *dans Télémaque*,
seventh, page the hundred and twenty-fifth, that
que
Mentor pushed Telemachus into the sea, and
poussa,v. *mer*,f.
threw[3] himself[1] (into it[2]) afterward with
jeta, v. *se*, pro. *y*, adv. *ensuite*, adv.
him. --- Our master forgives the first time,
lui,pro. *Notre*,pro. *pardonne*,v. *fois*,f.
threatens the second, and always[2] punishes[1]
menace,v. *toujours*,adv. *punit*,v.
the third.

RECAPITULATORY *or promiscuous* EXERCISES *upon all the preceding* RULES. *Review them well before you write.*

Ignorance is the mother of admiration,
Ignorance,f. *est*,v. *mère*,f. *admiration*, f.
error, and superstition. ---- The covetous de-
erreur,f. *superstition*,f. *avare*, adj.pl. *mé-*
spise the poor. ------ Humility is the basis of
prisent,v. *pauvre*,adj. pl. *Humilité*,f. *base*,f.
Christian virtues. - Pride is generally the effect
Chrétien,adj. *Orgueil*,m. *effet*,m.
of ignorance. -- Give me some bread, meat,
Donnez,v. moi,pro.

turnips, and water. - - Merit and favour are
navet, *Mérite*,m. *faveur*,f. *sont*,v.
the two springs of envy. - - - - Interest, pleasure,
source,f. *envie*,f. *Intérêt*,
and glory, are the three motives of the actions
motif,m. *action*,
and conduct of men. - - Is[2] it[3]. [1]not[1]
conduite,f. *Est*,v. *ce*,pro. *ne pas*,adv.
Peter's book? - - - - Your father is gone to London,
allé,p.p.
where he has bought some horses and cows, which
vache,f. *que*,pro.
he intends to send to Canada or Jamaica.
se propose,v. *d'envoyer*,v. *ou*
- - - - - The father's house and the son's garden
maison,f. *jardin*, m.
(are adjoining.) - - - - - - He found the windows
se joignent,v. *trouva*,v.
and the doors shut. - - Truth is the bond of
Vérité,f. *lien*,m.
union and the basis of human happiness:
union,f. *base*,f. *humain*,adj. *bonheur*, m.
without it (there is no) confidence in
sans,p. *elle*,pro. *il n'y a point* *confiançe*,f.
friendship, and no security in promises. - -
amitié,f. *point*,adv. *sûreté* *promesse*,f.
The love of liberty and independence is the
amour,m. *liberté*,f.
character of noble minds. - - - Iron, steel,
caractère,m. *âme*,f. *Fer*,m. *acier*, m.
and brass are more useful than gold and
cuivre,m. *utile*,adj.
silver. - - The smith has (at last) repaired
serrurier,m. *enfin*,adv. *réparé*, p.p.
the two jacks, and the cook (is
tourne-broche,m. *cuisinière*,f. *fait*
roasting) the meat. - - I have seen the inside of the
rôtir,v. *dedans*,m.
church. - - - Bring me my powder-box, and
église,f. *ma*,pro.
my toupee-iron. - - I take a lesson three times
mon,pro.
prends, ~

a week. - - - The study of grammar is[2] [1]neither[2] so
étude,f. *ne ni*,c.
dry nor so dull, as (it is thought.) - - - -
sec,adj. *triste*,adj. *on se l'imagine*,v.
Have some prudence and patience, and you (will have)
Ayez,v. *aurez*,v.
success. - - - - - A good conscience is to the soul
succès,m. *conscience*,f. *âme*, f.
what health is to the body. - - - Merit and
ce que,pro. *santé*,f. *corps*,m.
virtue are the only source of true
unique,adj. *véritable*,adj.
nobility. - - - Religion, commerce, and arms
noblesse,f. *Religion*,f. *commerce*,m. *arme*, f.
are proper instructions for a young prince. - -
propre.adj. *instruction*,f. *à*
Her father has been made a knight
Son,pro. *été*,p.p. *fait*,p.p. *chevalier*;m.
of the order of the Bath, and her grandfather
ordre,m. *Bain*,m.
was a knight of the order of the Garter. - - - -
étoit,v. *Jarretière*,f.
He has not (so much) profit, but more honour. - -
tant,adv. *profit*
Fortune's favours are seldom the prize of
faveur,f. *rarement*,adv. *prix*,m.
virtue. - - - Gaming is the son of avarice, and the father
Jeu,m.
of despair. - - - - This cloth is equal to some
désespoir,m. *Ce*,pro. *drap*,m. *comparable*,adj.
silk. - - I see the coast of England. - - The example
soie,f. *vois*,v. *côte*,f. *exemple*,m.
of a good life is a lesson for the rest of man-
vie,f. *pour*,p. *reste*,m. *genre*
kind. - The French fleet was destroyed
humain,m. *François*,adj. *flotte*,f. *fut*,v. *détruite*,p.p.*
by the brave Admiral Nelson, on the first of August,
Amiral,m. *Août*,m.
one thousand seven hundred and ninety eight. - - - - - -

* *For the* agreement of participles, see p. 344.

The eldest[2] son[1] of the king of England
aîné,adj.
bears the title of Prince of Wales as
porte,v. *titre*,m. *Galles* *comme*,adv.
presumptive heir to the crown. - - - Lewis
présomptif,adj. *héritier* *couronne*,f. *Louis*
the sixteenth was the grand-son of Lewis the fif-
petit,adj.
teenth. - - - - William, surnamed the Con-
Guillaume,m. *surnommé*,p.p. *Con-*
queror, King of England and Duke of Nor-
quérant,m. *Duc*,m. *Nor-*
mandy, was one of the greatest generals of the
mandie
eleventh century. - - - - He (was born) at Falaise, and
siècle,m. *nâquit*,v. *à*
was the natural son of Robert, Duke of Nor-
naturel,adj. *Nor-*
mandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. - - - He
mandie *fourreur*,m. *fille*
died at Hermentrude, in France, on the ninth of
mourut,v. *à*
September, one thousand eighty-seven. - - - - Mrs. Nel-
son's servant knows the price of all the provisions.
servante,f. *sait*,v. *prix*,m. *denrée*,f.
- - She bought yesterday some chickens at one shilling
poulet,m. *à*
and three pence a piece. - - - She came from America
vint,v. *Amérique*
in three weeks. - - - Thomas was formerly a mu-
en,p. *étoit autrefois*,adv. *mu-*
sician, now he is a dancing - master,
sicien, *à présent*,adv. *danse*, *maître*
to-morrow he (will be) a painter. - - This
demain,adv. *sera*,v. *peintre*. *Cette*,pro.
water is very agreeable to the smell. - - - - - We
odorat,m.
(are going) to Coxheath, to see the camp. - - I
allons,v. *voir*,v. *camp*,m.
have in my ward-robe five coats, sixteen waistcoats,

twenty-two pair of stockings, and forty-six hand-
mou-
kerchiefs. - - - The road to Roxbury is very bad
choir *chemin*,m.
in winter. - - - Bring us good wine, good beer,
en,p. *hiver.*
and the oil-bottle. - - The front of the king's
façade,f.
palace (is not) so beautiful as I thought. - - - Gene-
n'est pas *croyois*,v. *Géné-*
rosity excites admiration. - - - Charles the second,
rosité,f. *excite*,v. *admiration*,f.
the son of Philip the fourth, the grandson of Philip
Philippe
the third, and the great grand-child of Philip the
arrière *petit - fils*
second, left his kingdom to Philip the fifth. - -
laissa,v. *son*,pro.
On the eighteenth of February one thousand four
Février
hundred and seventy-eight, the Duke of Clarence,
Duc
brother to King Edward the fourth, was drowned in
frère,m. *Edouard* *fut*,v. *noyé*,p.p.
a butt of malmsey-wine. - The inhabitants of the
tonneau,m. *malvoisie* *habitant*,m.
city of Dublin have presented a petition to
ville,f. *ont*,v. *présenté*,p.p. *adresse*,f.
the king. - - - - Good cider is preferable to bad
cidre
wine. - - That man always wears a green hat, a white
a,v.
shirt, red shoes, and black stockings. He has
chemise,f. *bas*,m.
many children and plenty of money. - - The
bien.adv. *beaucoup*,adv. *argent*,m.
longer the day is, the shorter is the night. - - You have
jour,m. *nuit*,f.
a fine hat. - - Shame is a mixture of the grief
Honte,f. *mêlange*,m. chagrin,m.

and fear which infamy causes. - - Religion,
crainte,f. *que*,pro. *infamie*,f. *cause*,v.
morality, government, fine arts, in a word,
morale,f. *gouvernement*,m. *beau en*,p.
(every thing) is overturned. - - Homer was the
tout renversé,p.p. *Homère fut*,v.
first poet who personified the divine at-
poëte,m. *personnifia*,v. *divin*,adj. *at-*
tributes, human passions, and physical
tribut,m. *humain*,adj. *physique*,adj.
causes. - - - Pride and vanity are often the source
vanité,f. *souvent*,adj.
of the misfortunes of mankind. - - - - - - We sell
malheur,m. *vendons*,v.
good bread, excellent meat, and very large
gros,adj.
fishes; but[1] we[2] have[4] [3]neither[5] gold nor
poisson; *mais*,c. *avons*,v.
silver. - - (Is there) any beer in the cellar? - -
Y a-t-il *cave*,f.
Mrs. B. is a good, virtuous, prudent, and
vertueux,adj.
generous lady: she has a daughter as beautiful as an
fille,f.
angel, but she has neither so much docility nor af-
ange,m.
fability as her cousin. - - Pindar (was born) at
Pindare,m. *nâquit*, v.
Thebes, a city of Greece. - - Malta is a small island,
Grèce. *Malthe* *île*,f.
but it produces some corn, cotton, honey,
elle,pro. *produit*,v. *coton*,m. *miel*,m.
figs, and the finest oranges in the world. - - The
figue, f. *beau*,adj. *orange*,f.
inhabitants of that fine country are all catholics,
pays
and go every Sunday to hear high mass. - The
vont,v. *tous les Dimanches*
pleasure of the mind is greater than the pleasure
esprit

of the body, and the diseases of the mind are
corps,m. *maladie*,f.
more pernicious than the diseases of the body. - -
pernicieux,adj.
Health, honours, and fortune united together,
Santé,f. *uni*,p.p.* *ensemble*,adv.
cannot satisfy the heart of man. - - -
ne peuvent,v. *satisfaire*,v. *cœur*,m.
(It is) in the sixth page of the second book, chapter
C'est,v.
the third. - - Miss W's. father, a banker in the
Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but
Strand,m. †
she is prouder and more haughty than
orgueilleux,adj. *hautain*,adj.
if she were the handsomest woman in Europe. - - -
étoit,v. †
Their son arrived yesterday at Portsmouth from
Leur,pro. *arriva*
Peru and Martinico, in the St. George, a ninety-
Pérou *Martinique*,
gun ship. - - - Hypocrisy is a homage which
canon *vaisseau*,m. *hommage*,m. *que*,pro.
vice pays to virtue. - - A judicious answer
vice,m. *rend*,v. *judicieux*,adj. *réponse*,f.
does more honour than a brilliant repartee. - - -
fait,v. *brillant*,adj. *repartie*,f.
Give me a knife and fork. - - - My father has bought
one-and-thirty fine grey horses. - - (He is) an
gris,adj. *C'est*,v.
intrepid man, and a man of honour and pro-
intrépide,adj. *pro-*
bity. - - - - - Mr. C***, the queen's jeweller, has a
bité. *jouailler*
very prudent wife, and the most faithful, indus-
fidèle,adj. *indus-*
trious, and honest servant in London. - -
trieux,adj. *honnête*,adj. *domestique* †

* *See page 344.* † See the remarks on the prepositions *in* and *by, in the note,* in the degrees of comparison, page 66.

He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom,
trouva,v. *jeunesse*,
and even virtue, united in her per-
même,adv. *réuni*,p.p. *sa*.pro.
son. - Thomas has discretion, but he has no
discrétion,f. *ne point*,adv.
wit. - - They have a quantity of apples and pears. - -
quantité,f.
Vienna, the capital of the empire of Germany,
Vienne *Allemagne*,
is a fine city. - - The more pleasing plays
agréable,adj. *spectacle*,m.
are, the more dangerous they are. - - The rich,
dangereux,adj. pl.
the poor, the young, the old, the learned, and the
savant,adj.
ignorant, are all subject to death. - - True friends are
sujet,adj. *mort*,f. *Vrai*,adj.
almost as rare as good writers. - - The famous
rare,adj. *écrivain*,m. *fameux*,adj.
mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above two hundred
mine,f. *du* *plus*,adv.
and fifty fathoms deep. - - Henry the first, king of Eng-
toise *Henri*
land, and brother to William Rufus, died the richest
le Roux, *mourut*,v.
prince in Europe. - - Paul is taller than you by an inch,
* *pouce*,m.
but Mrs. Nichol's brother is the tallest of all.
Mme

SECT. III.

OF PRONOUNS.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS;

1. *Les Pronoms personnels*, Pronouns personal.
2. *Les Pronoms conjonctifs*, Pronouns conjunctive.

* *See the Note*, page 66.

3. *Les Prònoms possessifs*, Pronouns possessive.
4. *Les Pronoms démonstratifs*, Pronouns demonstrative.
5. *Les Pronoms relatifs*, Pronouns relative.
6. *Les Pronoms interrogatifs*, Pronouns interrogative.
7. *Les Pronoms indéfinis*, Pronouns indefinite.

OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

Pronouns personal are those which directly denote the persons, and supply the place of them.

There are three persons:

The first is the person who speaks: ex.

Je parle,	I speak.
Nous parlons,	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to: ex.

Tu parles,	Thou speakest.
Vous parlez,	You speak.

The third is the person spoken of: ex.

Il or *elle parle*,	He *or* she speaks.
Ils or *elles parlent*,	They speak.

Both Genders.

Singular.	Plural.
Je or *moi*, I.	*Nous*, we.
Tu or *toi*, thou.	*Vous*, you *or* ye.

Masculine.

Il or *lui*, he, it.	*Ils*, or *eux*, they.

Feminine.

Elle, she, it.	*Elles*, they.

The above pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite: ex.

First Person for both Genders.

Singular.	Plural.
G. A. *de moi*, of *or* from me.	*de nous*, of *or* from us.
Dat. à moi, to me.	à nous, to us.
Acc. moi, me.	nous, us.

Second Person for both Genders.

	Singular.	Plural.
G. A.	*de toi*, of *or* from thee.	*de vous*, of *or* from you.
Dat.	*à toi*, to thee.	*à vous*, to you.
Acc.	*toi*, thee.	*vous*, you.

Third Person.

Singular.

G. A.	*de lui*, of *or* from him.	*d'elle*, of *or* from her.*
Dat.	*à lui*, to him.	*à elle*, to her.*
Acc.	*lui*, him.	*elle*, her.*

Plural.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
G. A.	*d'eux*, of *or* from them.	*d'elles*, of *or* from them.
Dat.	*à eux*, to them.	*à elles*, to them.
Acc.	*eux*, them.	*elles*, them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person, viz.

Singular and Plural. Both Genders.

1st. G. A. *de soi*, of *or* from { oneself, himself, herself, themselves.

Dat. *à soi*, to oneself, himself, &c.

Acc. *soi*, oneself, himself, &c.

N. B. Though it have been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects: this seldom happens in the first and second persons; but the personal pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate: ex.

Ce chien est fort beau, mais il est trop gras,	That dog is very handsome, but *it* is too fat.

* *Her, when a personal pronoun*, is to be rendered by elle, la, or *lui*; *but, when joined to a noun*, by the pronoun possessive, son, sa, ses.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

This picture is very old, but it is
Ce,pro. *portrait*,m. *ancien*,adj.
well painted.--The house which I bought
bien,adv. *peint*,p.p. *que*,pro. *ai acheté*,p.p.
is well situated, but I assure[2] you[1] that it
situé,adj. *assure*,v. *que*,adv.
costs[2] me[1] much.----The books which
coûte,v. *me*,pro. *beaucoup*,adv.
you saw in my library are good
vîtes,v. *ma*,pro. *bibliothèque*.f.
books, but they are badly bound.-----Your
mal,adv. *relié*,p.p. *Vos*, pro.
buckles (would be) much more in the fashion, if
boucle, f. *seroient*, v. *à mode*, f.
they were smaller.---My hat is quite
étoient, v. *Mon*, pro. *tout*, adv.
new, but it is too big.------Their
neuf, adj. *trop*, adv. *grand*, adj. *Leur*, pro.
coach is old, but it is as good as if
carrosse, m. *vieux*, adj. *si*, c.*
it were new.
étoit, v. *neuf*.

2d. The general and indefinite pronoun, *on*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural; ex. When we say, On *chante*, on *mange*, *we* sing, *they* sing; *one* eats, or *people* eat; we mean, *some* men or women sing, eat.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

People imagine that when they are
On, pro. *s'imagine*, v. *que quand*, adv. *on est*, v.
rich, they are happy; but they (are mistaken)
on heureux, adj. *on se trompe*, v.
very often; for, the more one has, the
très, adv. *souvent*, adv. *car*, c.
more one wishes to have.-------When we are
veut, v. *avoir*, v. *on*

* *Si* loses the *i* before *il*, he; *ils*, they.

(raised up) to honours, or we are invested
élevé,p.p. *ou que*,c. *revêtu*,p.p.
with some dignity, we (are to) expect
de quelque,adj. *dignité*,f. *doit*,v. *s'attendre*,v.
to be criticised. - - - - - (Some persons) reported
à être critiqué,p.p. *On*,pro. *rapporta*,v.
last week, that in France they
dernier,adj. *semaine*,f. *en*
talk of peace.
parle,v.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more special manner, the person spoken of: as,

Moi-même, myself.	*Soi-même*, oneself.
Toi-même, thyself.	*Nous-mêmes*, ourselves.
Lui-même, himself.	*Vous-mêmes*, yourselves.
Elle-même, herself.	*Eux-mêmes*, or *elles-mêmes* themselves.

Observations *on the* Pronouns Je *and* Moi, Tu *and* Toi, Il *and* Lui, Ils *and* Eux.

Je and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case; *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to another pronoun: but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more, either expressed or understood: ex.

Qui a pris mon livre?	Who took my book?
C'est moi,	It is *I*. That is,
C'est moi *qui l'ai pris*,	It is *I* who took it.

Moi must be used instead of *Je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief*, &c.; when *I*, in English, is followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is; and lastly, whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons; in which case it must be immediately followed by *Je*: ex.

Moi *lui parler!*	*I* speak to him or her!
Moi qui vous aime,	*I* who love you.

Il étoit à pied et moi *j'étois à cheval,* He was on foot, and *I* was on horseback.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who (was calling[2]) me[1] ? -- It was not
appeloit,v. *me*,pro. *Ce étoit ne pas*,adv.
I. - - - - The boy wants to speak[2] (to you[1].) - - - I
désire,v. ∽ *parler*,v. *vous*.
who am older than he, I, go and speak[2]
âgé,adj. *lui*,pro. *aller*,v. ∽
(to him[1] !) No, I will not go, (let him come)
lui,pro. *Non*,adv. *veux*,v. *y aller*, *qu'il vienne*,v.
himself. - - - It is I who (am to) be rewarded
dois,v. *récompensé*,p.p.
instead of him. - - - My father commanded the
au lieu *lui*,pro. *commandoit*,v.
horse, and I commanded the foot. - - - - - He
cavalerie,f. *commandois* *infanterie*,f.
could not do[2] it[1] in one day, and I
put,v. *faire*,v. *le*,pro. *en*,p.
did it in the space of three hours. - - - -
ai fait,v. *dans*,p. *espace*,m. *heure*.
When the enemy appeared, my companions
parut,v. *mes*,pro.
(ran away) and I remained alone.
prirent la fuite,v. *restai*,v. *seul*,adj.

The same rule is to be attended to with respect to *toi*, *lui*, *eux*, &c. : as,

Toi *qui me parles*,	*Thou* who speakest to me.
Lui *que je méprise*,	*He* whom I despise.
Eux *que je respecte*,	*They* whom I respect.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How darest thou answer thy
Comment,adv. *oses*,v. *répondre à*,v. *ton*,pro.
master in so[3] insolent[4] a[1] manner[3] ? thou
de *si*,adv. *insolent*,adj. *manière*,f.
whom he loves, thou for whom he takes
que,pro. *aime*,v. *pour*,p. *qui*,pro. *prend*,v.
so much pains. - - - - He and they, not (being able)
peine,sing. pouvant,v.

(to agree,) were obliged to part. - - - - - -
s'accorder,v. *furent*,v. *obligé*,p.p. *de se séparer*,v.
It is I who wrote the letter but it is he
ai écrit,p.p. *lettre*,f.
who [2]carried it[1]. - - - It is[2] [1]neither[3] I, nor
a portée,p.p. *la*,pro.. *Ce ne ni*,c. *ni*,c.
thou, nor he, who have broken the windows,
avons,v. *cassé*,p.p. *fenêtre*,f.
but it is they who have[2] done[3] it[1].
ont,v. *fait*,p.p. *le*,pro.

After these remarks, it is also necessary to observe here, that *je*, I, and *nous*, we, never admit of an adjective or participle immediately after it, except in *acts*, or *deeds*, *notes*, or *bills*, *receipts*, and the like: ex.

Je, *soussigné, demeurant à Londres, déclare, &c.*	*I*, the undersigned, living in London, declare, &c.
Nous, *soussignés, reconnoissons avoir reçu de Mons. D**, la somme de—*	*We*, the undersigned, acknowledge to have received from Mr. D**, the sum of—

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are *always joined* to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative case of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive as in the personal, which are,

For the First Person, both Genders.

	Singular.	Plural.
Dat. or Ac.	*Me*, *Moi*,* me, *or* to me, for *à moi*, or *moi*.	*Nous*, us, *or* to us, for *à nous*, or *nous*.

For the Second, both Genders.

Dat. or Ac.	*Te*, *Toi*,* thee, *or* to thee, for *à toi*, or *toi*.	*Vous*, you, *or* to you, for *à vous*, or *vous*.

* *Moi* and *toi* must be used instead of *me* or *te*, after the second person singular or plural of the imperative mood, conjugated without a negative: ex.

écoutes-moi,	hear me.
suivez-moi,	follow me.

For the Third.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Dat. *Lui*,	to him, to it,	for *à lui*,
Acc. *Le*,	him, it,	for *lui*.

Feminine.

Dat. *Lui*,	to her, to it,	for *à elle*.
Acc. *La*,	her, it,	for *elle*.

PLURAL.—Both Genders.

Dat. *Leur*,	to them,	for *à eux*,m. *à elles*,f.
Acc. *Les*,	them,	for *eux*,m. *elles*,f.

Dat. or Acc. *Se*, { oneself, himself, herself, themselves, } for *à soi*, or *soi*.

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are of both Genders, viz.

Me or *moi*, *te* or *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*: ex.

Vous me *parlez*,	You speak *to me*.
Il vous *croit*,	He believes *you*.
Vous me voiez de, &c.	You desire *me to*, &c.

In the first example, *me* is the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi*, to me; in the second, *vous* is the accusative, &c.

Lui, and *leur* are used in the dative only, and are of both genders:

Je lui *parle*,	I speak *to him* or *to her*.
Vous leur *écrivez*,	You write *to them*.

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied to things animate or inanimate, viz.

Le, mas. him, it; *la*, fem. her, it; and *les*, masc. and fem. them: ex.

Je le *vois tous les jours*,	I see *him* every day.
Je le *sais*,	I know *it*.
Nous la connoissons,	We know *her*.
Il les enverra ce soir,	He will send them to-night.

The pronoun personal may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction; but the conjunctive pronouns are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English: ex.

Je parle,	I speak.
Avons-nous parlé,	Have we spoken?
Il me *parle,*	He speaks *to me.*
Nous les *connoissons,*	We know *them.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book,
acheta,v.
and after having[2] read[3] it[1], he gave[2] it[1]
après,p. *avoir*,v. *lu*,p.p. *le*,pro. *donna*,v.
to my sister. - - - You speak of my cousin,
ma,pro. *mon*,pro.
do you know him? - - - I see her and speak
connoissez,v. *vois*,v. *parle*,v.
to her (every day). - - - Do you[2] know[1] your
tous les jours. *savez*,v. *vos*,pro.
lessons? - - - We know them all. - - - I (will carry)
leçon,f. *savons*,v. *tout*,adj. *mènerai*,v.
them to my brothers, but I (will write)
chez,p. *mes*,pro. *écrirai*,v.
to them before. - - - - - I find him more reason-
auparavant,adv. *trouve*,v. *raison-*
able than his sister. - - Your dog (is*
nable,adj. *sa*,pro. *chien*,m. *a*
thirsty,) shall[2] I[3] give[2] him[1] water? - - They are
soif, *donnerai*,v. *lui*
tired, and I give them some rest.
fatigué,p.p. *donne*,v. *repos*,m.

In the *second* person singular and the *first* and *second* persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated *affirmatively*, the conjunctive pronouns come after the verb: but if the verb be conjugated *negatively*, the pronouns follow the above rule: ex.

* See page 174.

Donnez-lui *de l'argent*, Give *him* money.
Ne lui *donnez pas de pain*, Do not give *him* any bread.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Send them some apples, but do not send
Envoyez,v.
them any plums. - - I give you these books,
prune,f. *donne*,v. *ces*,pro.
but do not lend them to your brother. - - - -
prêtez,v. *votre*,pro.
You may tell it to my father, but do not
pouvez,v. *dire*,v. *mon*,pro.
tell it to my mother. - - Believe me, go
dites,v. *ma*,pro. *Croyez*,v. *allez*,v.
and speak to them, but do not insult them. - -
parler,v. *insultez*,v.
Have you returned (to her) the handkerchief
rendu,p.p. *mouchoir*,m.
which she has lent you ? - - Send it to-morrow,
que prêté,p.p. *demain*,adv.
do not forget it. - - Bring me some cho-
oubliez,v. *Apportez*,v. *cho-*
colate, but bring[3] me[3] [1]no[4] sugar.
colat,m.

When two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and; *ou*, or; the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns may precede the last imperative by which it is governed; but that construction is not now much used: ex.

Cherchez-le, *et* lui *dites de* Look for *him*, and tell *him*
venir ici, or *dites* lui *de*, &c. to come hither.

After the verbs *se fier à*, to trust to, *penser à*, *songer à*, to think of, *viser à*, to aim at, *courir à*, *accourir à*, to run to, *venir à*, to come to, and some of the reflective verbs followed by a preposition governing a dative case, the pronouns must be placed after the verb, especially if used in opposition or contradiction to each other; or denote the order in which a thing ought to be done: *and if there be* more than one dative pronoun, the first *only may be* placed before the verb, and the others *after: ex.*

Fiez-vous à moi,	Trust *to me.*
Nous pensons à vous,	We think *of you.*
Cela s'adresse à toi,	That is addressed *to thee.*
Je cours à lui,	I run *to him.*
Il me *parle aussi bien qu'*à vous *et* à eux.	He speaks *to me* as well as *to you* and *them.*

EXERCISE ON THESE AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Bring me my hat, or send it to me by the carrier. - - - - Trust to him, but do not
voiturier,m. *Fiez-vous*,v.
trust to them, and do not believe them. - - Think
croyez,v. *Pensez*,v.
of us, and write to us as soon as you can. - - -
écrivez,v. *tôt*,adv. *pourrez*,v.
Go and see her, and carry her these
Allez,v. *voir*,v. *portez*,v. *ces*,pro.
flowers. - - - Send me my clock, or bring it
fleurs,f. *pendule*,f.
to me yourself. - - - Do not give it to
vous-même,pro. *donnez*,v.
my sister, give it to me. Why do you prefer her to
préférez,v.
me, and give her all your affection?

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order.

Singular.	Plural.
Me, m. & f. me *or* to me,	*Nous*, m. & f. us *or* to us,
Te, m. & f. thee *or* to thee,	*Vous*, m. & f. you *or* to you,
Se, m. & f. oneself, himself, herself,	*Se*, m. & f. themselves,

are to be placed before all others;—next,

Le, m. him, it,	*Les*, m. & f. them,
La, f. her, it,	

And then,

Lui, m. & f. to him, to her,	*Leur*, m. & f. to them.
Il me le *promit,*	He promised it to me.
Je vous les donnerai,	I will give them to you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother (will send) them to you, or he
enverra,v.
(will bring) them to you himself. - - - He likes
apportera,v. *aime*,v.
your[2] house[3] (very much[1]); for we showed
votre,pro. *fort*,adv. *car*,c. *fîmes voir*,v.
it to him. - - - Carry it to them. - - - He will[2] [1]not[3]
Portez,v. *veut*,v. *ne pas*
sell[6] it[4] to them[5], but he will give it to
vendre,v. *veut donner*,v.
you. - - - If they ask a favour, will you
Si,c. *demandent*,v. *grâce*,f.
refuse it to them ? - - - Why do you
refuserez,v. *Pourquoi*,adv.
give it to him ? Had you not promised
donnez,v. *Aviez*,v. *promis*,p.p.
it to her ? - - - He speaks to me, and not to you. - -
parle,v. *non pas*
If they behave themselves well, I will
comportent,v.
reward them. - - He had promised it to
récompenserai,v. *avoit*,v.
him, but he gave it to me.
a donné,p.p.

N. B. There are three other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns; they are *en*, *y*, and *le*, and follow the foregoing rules for placing them, *y* taking the precedence of *en*, when they meet together in a sentence.

En always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before: it is rendered in English by *of* or *from him, her, it, them; about him, her, it*, &c.; *with* or *without him, her, it*, &c.; *at it*, &c; *for it*, &c.; *upon it*, &c.; *any, one, ones, none, some, some of*, &c.; *thence, thereof*, and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English, especially when immediately followed *by a numeral* adjective or a noun of quantity, though *it must be* absolutely expressed in French: ex.

Nous en *parlons*,	We speak *of him, of her, of it, of them ; about him, about her, about it, about them.*
*J'*en *suis fâché*,	I am sorry *for it.*
Donnez-lui en,	Give *him some*, (of it.)
Lui en *avez-vous porté ?*	Did you carry *him* or *her any ?* (of them.)
Ne lui en *envoyez pas*,	Send *him* or *her* none.
Nous en *venons*,	We come *from it* or *thence.*
Combien avez-vous de domestiques ? Nous en *avons six*,	How many servants have you ? We have six, (*of them.*)
Avez-vous un jardin à la campagne ? Oui, nous en *avons un très-joli*,	Have you a garden in the country ? Yes, we have a very pretty one, (*of them.*)

In the third, fourth, fifth sentences, it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it*, or *of them*, &c. are elegantly understood in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before,

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have heard *ouï dire*,v. that your uncle is arrived, *arrivé*,p.p. and I[1] am[3] very[4] glad[5] *aise*,adj. of it[2]. - - She spoke[3] to *parla*,v. him[1] of it[2]. - - - Talk[3] *Parlez*,v. no[1] more[4] of it[2], for I[1] *ne plus*, *car*,c. will[3] not[2] hear[6] *veux*,v. *ne entendre parler*,v. of it[5] (any more[4]). - - *plus*,adv. I[1] thank[4] *remercie*,v. you[2] for it[3]. - - Do you[4] [1]not[5] see[3] *voyez*,v. the[6] beauty[7] of it[2] ? - - They are *sont*,v. sorry *fâché*,adj. for it. - - Since *Puisque*,c. you have no pears *poire* in your garden, I (will send) *enverrai*,v. *you some*. - - - They[1] have[4] stolen[5] *ont*,v. *volé*,p.p.

from us[2] the[6] greatest[7] part[8] of them[3]. - - My
partie,f. *Mon*,pro.
brother has written a letter to your sister, and
écrit,p.p.
shown[3] me[1] the[4] two[5] first[6] lines[7] of it[2]. - - -
a montré,p.p. *ligne*,f.
Will you lend me some books? With all
Voulez,v. *prêter*,v. *De*,p.
my heart, I (will lend) you some very pretty
cœur,m. *prêterai*,v.
ones. - - Do you[2] think[1] that[3] she[4] has[7] spoken
croyez,v. *ait*,v.subj. *parlé*,p.p.
to him[5] of it[6]? - - If I had money, I (would give)
avois,v. *donnerois*,v.
you some, but you know, as well as I do,
mais,c. *savez*,v.
how scarce[3] it[1] is[2] now. - - - - Send[4]
combien,adv. *rare*,adj. *à présent*,adv. *Envoyez*,v.
me[2] [1]none[3 5]. - - - Have[2] you[3] any[1]? - - - Do [1]you[4]
ne en pas *Avez*,v.
remember[3] it[2]?
souvenez,v. *en*.

Y is used for the dative only: it is Englished by *to it, to them, of it, in it, upon it, thither, there, &c.* and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French. It seldom supplies the place of animate objects, except when connected with the verbs *fier*, to trust; *penser*, to think; and the like in a reply: ex.

J'y consens,	I agree *to it*.
Nous y penserons,	We shall think *of it*.
Ne vous y fiez plus,	Trust *them* no more.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I[1] [2]never[5] (will[4] consent) (to[3] it,) and[1]
ne jamais,adv. *consentirai*,v.
I[1] [2]neither[4] will[3] speak[6] nor[7] write[9] to
ne ni *veux*,v. *parler*,v. *ni*,c. *écrire*,v.
[8]*him*[8]. - - Believe me, go and see them, do
Croyez,v. *allez*,v.

[1]not[5] [4]confide[2] (in[3] it.) - - We[1] have[4] forced[5]
fiez vous,v. *avons*,v. *forcé*,p.p.
them[2] to it[3]. - - - - I (will carry[2]) my[3] brother[4] thither[1]
mènerai,v.
myself[5]. - - He[1] (will carry[5]) them[3] to you[2] thither[4] him-
portera,v. *y*
self. - - Did you think of what you had
Avez,v. *pensé*,p.p. *à ce que*,pro. *aviez*,v.
promised me ? - - - No, but[1] I[2] will think[4]
promis,p.p. *Non*,adv. *penserai*,v.
(of it[3].) - - (It is) a good book, we[1] read[3] excellent[4]
y *C'est*,v. *on*,pro. *lit*,v.
things[5] in it.[2] - - Our orchards are very fruit-
chose,f. *Nos*,pro. *verger*,m. *fer-*
ful, we see all sorts of fruits in
tile,adj. *on*,pro. *voit*,v. *sorte*,f. *fruit*
them. - - Since those people have deceived
Puisque,c. *ces*,pro. *gens*,pl. *trompé*,p.p.
you, do not trust them (any more.) - - Often when a
fiez,v. *plus*,adv. *Souvent*,adv.
friend is dead we[1] think[4] of him[3] [2]no
mort,adj. *on*,pro. *pense*,v.
(longer[5].)
plus,adv.

Le which in English is either not expressed, or most commonly rendered by *so*, likewise prevents the repetition of one or more words, and supplies the place of the same. It is indeclinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one adjective or more, a verb, or a whole member of a sentence : ex.

Vous m'avez cru belle, mais je ne le *suis pas*,	You have thought me handsome, but I am not (*so.*)
Nous étions embarrassés, et nous le *sommes encore*,	We were embarrassed, and are *so* yet.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brothers were ill yesterday
Mes,pro. *etoient* *malade*,adj. *hier*,adv.

and are so still to-day. - - - - I am
encore,adv. *aujourd'hui*,adv.
satisfied with my fate, but my sister is not.
content,adj. *de* *sort*,m. *ma*,pro.
I had heard that your sister was married,
avois,v. *ouï dire*,p.p. *que* *étoit*,v. *marié*,p.p.
but my cousin tells me that she is not. - - -
mon,pro. *dit*,v.
Our master rewards us when we deserve
Notre,pro. *récompense*,v. *méritons*,v.
it. - - - Children (ought to) apply to their
doivent,v. *s'appliquer*,v. *leurs*,pro.
studies as much as they can. - - - - I thought
autant,adv. *peuvent*,v. *croyois*,v.
your brother was diligent, but I mistook,
étoit,v. *me suis trompé*,p.p.
for he is not, and [1]never[4] (will be[3]) so[2].
ne jamais,adv. *sera*,v.

On the contrary, *le* is declinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one substantive or more; then *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural: ex.

*Etes-vous le fils de mon ami M. D** ? Oui, je* le *suis*,	Are you my friend Mr. D's son? Yes, I am, (*him.*)
Etes-vous la mère de ce bel enfant ? Oui, je la *suis*,	Are you the mother of that fine child? Yes, I am, (*her.*)
Etes-vous les tantes de M. Brown ? Oui, nous les *sommes*,	Are you Mr. Brown's aunts? Yes, we are, (*them.*)
Est-ce là votre livre ? Oui, ce l'*est*,	Is this your book? Yes, it is, (*it.*)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

(It is said) that you are the son of my neighbour
On dit,v. *que* *voisin*,m.
Mr. Peter, *Pierre*,m. are you so? Yes, Sir, I
Monsieur,

am. - - - Are you the sister of Mrs. Adams ? Yes,
Mme
I am. - - She is very amiable, [1]and so[3] are[4] you[2] also[5]. - -
aimable,adj. *aussi*.
Are you the ladies whom my mother expects ?
dame,f. *que* *attend*,v.
Yes, we are. - - [4]Are [1]these [2]young [3]people the
(*Sont-ils*) *ces*,pro. *jeune*,adj. *gens*,pl.
scholars whom you have taught ? Yes, madam,
écolier,m. *enseignés*,p.p.
they are. - - (Is that) the horse which you bought
Est-ce là *cheval*,m. *que* *avez acheté*
from my brother ? Yes, it is. - - - - (Are these) the
Sont-ce là
houses which you built ? Yes, they are.
avez fait bâtir,v. *sont*.

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, and *les*, can never be used after a preposition; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le*, *avec la*, I was with *him*, with *her*; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *lui*, *elle*, and *eux*, or *elles*, and say, *j'étois avec* lui, *avec* elle, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The nosegay which I gathered in our
bouquet,m. *que* *ai cueilli*,p.p.
garden is for her, and not for him. - - He
pour,p. *non pas*,adv.
was with me when we received a letter from
étoit,v. *reçûmes*,v.
them. - - If he do not come soon we (will set
vient,v. *bientôt*,adv. *parti-*
out) without him. - - - Your sisters have dis-
rons,v. *sans*,p. *Vos*,pro. *mécon-*
pleased me, I am very angry with them.
tenté,p.p. *suis* *fâché*,adj. *contre*,p.
- - Your brothers have broken these windows, I
ont *cassé*,p.p. ces,pro.

am sure of it, for I was behind them, and
sûr,adj. *car*,c. *etois derrière*,p.
John was with me.
Jean, *etoit*

Y and *en* always go last in a sentence, except the pronoun of the first person *moi*, which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en*: ex.

Il vous y en *enverra*,	He will send *some* to you *thither*.
Apportez-y en moi,	Bring *me some hither*.

N. B. The above pronouns, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated, in French, before every governing verb; though most generally expressed but once in English, and after the last verb: ex.

Votre fils vous *aime et* vous *craint*,	Your son loves and fears *you*.
Je le *plains et* l'*encourage*,	I pity and encourage *him*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have very fine roses in your garden: when
avez,v.
I am in the country, pray send me some hither.
serai,v. *à* *de grâce envoyez*,v.
- - May God bless and reward her! said
Que *Dieu* *bénisse*,v. *récompense*,v. *dit*,v.
the prince. - - I [1]neither[3] will[2] sell[6] nor[7] give[10]
ne ni *veux*,v. *vendre* *donner*,v.
[5]them[9] (to [4]you[8]). - - Our master rewards and punishes
punit,v.
us when we deserve it. - - - Often beauty seduces
séduit,v.
and deceives us. - - - That child has good parents, he
trompe,v. *Cet*
cherishes, honours and respects them.
chérit,v. *honore*,v. respecte,v.

N. B. Bear constantly in mind the place of these words in a sentence, first the preposition, next the negation *ne*, then the pronouns in the order above mentioned: ex.

Faites-moi souvenir de ne lui en point *donner*,	Remind me *not to* give *him any*.

OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called, because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor as in English) in *gender*, *number*, and *case*:—They are,

Singular. Masc.	Fem.			Plural. Both Genders.
Mon,	*Ma*, or *Mon*,	before a vowel, or h mute, as	*mon âme*,	*Mes*, my.
Ton,	*Ta*, or *Ton*,		*ton âme*,	*Tes*, thy.
Son,	*Sa*, or *Son*,		*son âme*,	*Ses*, his, her, *or* its.

Both Genders.

Notre,	*Nos*, our.
Votre,	*Vos*, your.
Leur,	*Leurs*, their.

They are declined with the article indefinite *de*, *à*: ex.

Singular.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père*, my father.
Gen. Abl. *de mon père*, of or from my father.
Dat. *à mon père*, to my father.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère*, my mother.
Gen. Abl. *de ma mère*, of *or* from my mother.
Dat. *à ma mère*, to my mother.

142301

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères*, my brothers.
Gen. Abl. *de mes frères*, of *or* from my brothers.
Dat. *à mes frères*, to my brothers.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs*, my sisters.
Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs*, of *or* from my sisters.
Dat. *à mes sœurs*, to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though but once expressed in English; they must agree in gender and number with the noun before which they are placed, that is, with *the thing possessed* and not *the possessor*; they must also be used in French, when speaking to any of our relations or friends, though they be suppressed in English: ex.

J'ai perdu mon *chapeau et* mes *gants*,	I lost *my* hat and gloves.
Bon jour, mon *père*,	Good day, father.
Etes-vous là, ma *sœur?*	Are you there, sister?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Give me my dictionary and grammar. - - She
dictionnaire,m. *grammaire*,f.
had lost her gloves and fan. - - - - Have
avoit,v. *perdu*,p.p. *éventail*,m. *Avez*,v.
you found your pen? - - - - - His daughter is
trouvé,p.p. *plume*,f. *fille*,f.
older than my son, but her son (is not)
plus âgée *fils*,m. *n'est pas*,v.
so tall as my nephew. - - - Her brother says
grand,adj. *neveu*,m. *dit*,v.
that he will[3] [not[4] refuse[3] you[2] what you ask
refuse[fa],v. *ce que* *demandez*,v.
of him. - - Dear father, pray forgive me. - - My
de grâce
ambition is the only cause of my impru-
ambition,f. *seul*,adj. *cause*,f. *impru-*
dence. - - - *I* have seen your father, mother, bro-
dence,f. *ai*,v. *vu*,p.p.

thers, and sisters. - - - Her affection for me is
affection,f. *pour*,p.
false. - - - Good night, cousin, I hope that you
faux,adj. *soir*,m. . *espère*,v. *que*
(will come) soon to see my country-
viendrez,v. *bientôt*,adv. *voir*,v.
house and gardens. - - - Your horses and carriage
cheval,m. *carrosse*,m.
are very beautiful, but the queen's horses and carriages
beau,adj.
are much more so.
beaucoup,adv.

When, in English, these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French, but the preposition *in* and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite; the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine in French the possession: ex.

J'ai mal aux *yeux*, I have a pain *in my* eyes.
and not *dans mes yeux*,
Il se *cassa* le *bras*, He broke *his* arm.
and not *son bras*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My mother has (a pain) in her head. - - - I have
a,v. *mal* *à*,p. *tête*,f.
(a pain) in my ear, and she has (a pain) in her
oreille,f.
teeth. - - - When I eat meat, I have always
dent,f. *mange*,v. *toujours*,adv.
a pain in my stomach. - - The man who fell from
estomac,m. *tomba*,v.
the roof of our house, disjointed his wrist,
toit,m. *se démit*,v. *poignet*,m.
broke his right leg, sprained
droit,adj. *jambe*,f. *se donna une entorse*
his left foot, dislocated his shoulders,
au gauche,adj. *pied*,m. *se disloqua*,v. *épaule*,f.
and hurt his head. - - - When I run fast,
se blessa,v. cours,v. vîte,adv.

I (am afraid) of falling and breaking my
crains,v. *tomber*,v. *de me casser*,v.
arm or neck.

Its, *their*, having a reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence from that wherein the object referred to is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, &c. but by the pronoun *en* placed before the verb, and the articles *le*, *la*, *les*: ex.

Paris est une grande ville, mais les *rues* en *sont trop étroites*,	Paris is a large city, but *its* streets are too narrow, (that is, *the* streets *of it*.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Windsor is a fine town, I admire its
ville,f. *admire*,v.
situation, walks, and streets. - - This
situation,f. *promenade*,f. *rue*,f. *Cette*,pro.
house is well situate, but its architecture
situé,adj. *architecture*,f.
does not please me much. - - - - His coach is
plait,v. *beaucoup*,adv. *carrosse*,m.
beautiful, (every body) admires its painting
tout le monde,m. *admire*,v. *peinture*,f.
and ornaments. - - - The shops of London are
(very fine,) foreigners especially see their
superbe,adj. *étranger*,m. *sur-tout*,adv.
riches and cleanliness with pleasure and astonishment. - - - The walks of your (country-seat) are well
allée,f. *château*,m.
kept, I like their regularity.
tenu,p.p. *régularité*,f.

The *relatives* are never joined to any substantive; for the substantive to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

Masculine.		Feminine.		
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	
Le mien,	*les miens*,	*la mienne*,	*les miennes*,	mine.
Le tien,	*les tiens*,	*la tienne*,	les tiennes,	thine.
Le sien,	*les siens*,	*la sienne*,	les siennes,	his or hers.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
Sing.	Plural.	Sing.	Plural.
Le nôtre,	*les nôtres,*	*la nôtre,*	*les nôtres,* ours.
Le vôtre,	*les vôtres,*	*la vôtre,*	*les vôtres,* yours.
Le leur,	*les leurs,*	*la leur,*	*les leurs,* theirs.

They are declined with the article definite; ex.

Singular.

Masculine.		Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	*Le mien,*	*la mienne,* mine.
Gen. Abl.	*Du mien,*	*de la mienne,* of *or* from mine.
Dat.	*Au mien,*	*à la mienne,* to mine.

Plural.

Masculine.		Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	*Les miens,*	*les miennes,* mine.
Gen. Abl.	*Des miens,*	*des miennes,* of *or* from mine.
Dat.	*Aux miens,*	*aux miennes,* to mine.

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying *to belong to*, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative; and when joined to a noun substantive, it ought to be rendered by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive must be put in the genitive plural: ex.

Ce livre est à moi,	This book is *mine*, (that is, *belongs to me.*)
C'est un de mes *amis*,	He is a friend *of mine*, (that is, *one of my friends.*)

Exercise upon this rule.

Your daughter is handsomer than mine, but *beau*,adj.
mine has more wit than yours. - - - Her house is *esprit*
more convenient than ours, but yours is not so *commode*,adj.
well situate as theirs. - - - - This hat is mine and

not yours, but this sword is yours and
non pas *cette*,pro.
not his. - - - - I lost a book of mine, and a friend
ai perdu,p.p.
of yours found it. - - - - He sold me a knife,
a trouvé,p.p. *couteau*,m.
but this knife was not his, it was a friend of his
étoit *c'étoit*
who had lent it to him.
avoit *prêté*,v.

OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the persons or things to which they are applied. They are,

SINGULAR.

Masculine.	Feminine.
*Ce, cet,**	*cette*, this, that.
Celui, he, that,	*celle*, she, that.
Celui-ci,	*celle-ci*, this.
Celui-là,	*celle-là*, that.

PLURAL.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Ces,	*ces*, these, those.
Ceux,	*celles*, they, these, those.
Ceux-ci,	*celles-ci*, these.
Ceux-là,	*celles-là*, those.

Ce qui, ce que, what.
Ceci, this ; *cela*, that.†

The last two are always of the musculine gender, and of the singular number.

* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, or H mute: ex. *cet oiseau*, this bird ; *cet honneur*, this honour.

† The word *that*, coming between two verbs, and followed by a noun or pronoun, is then a conjunction, and must be rendered into French by *que*, even when implied in English : ex.

Je sais que *votre frère est marié*, I know *that* your brother is married, or, I know your brother is married.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de*, *à* : ex.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *ce livre*, this *or* that book.
Gen. Abl. *de ce livre*, of *or* from this book.
Dat. *à ce livre*, to this book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces livres*, these books.
Gen. Abl. *de ces livres*, of *or* from these books.
Dat. *à ces livres*, to these books.

SINGULAR.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *cette plume*, this *or* that pen.
Gen. Abl. *de cette plume*, of *or* from this pen.
Dat. *à cette plume*, to this pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces plumes*, these pens.
Gen. Abl. *de ces plumes*, of *or* from these pens.
Dat. *à ces plumes*, to these pens.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *celui*, he, him, that.
Gen. Abl. *de celui*, of *or* from him.
Dat. *à celui*, to him.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *celle*, she, her, that.
Gen. Abl. *de celle*, of *or* from her.
Dat. *à celle*, to her.

PLURAL.

	Masc.	Fem.
N. Acc.	*ceux*,	*celles*, they, them, those, such as.
G. Abl.	*de ceux*,	*de celles*, of *or* from those.
Dat.	*à ceux*,	*à celles*, to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom*, or *that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying *any person, one* or *any body*, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle*, &c. but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle*, &c.

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such as, such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who, they who:* ex.

Celui *ou* celle qui *pratique la vertu vit heureux,*	*He* or *she who* practices virtue lives happy.
Ceux qui *méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix,*	*Such as* despise learning do not know its value, (*the value of it.*)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He who supports idleness makes himself
encourage,v. *se rend*,v.
despicable. - - - - She whom you saw at my
méprisable,adj. *que*,pro. *vîtes*,v. *chez*,p.
brother's is not yet married. - - - - - You
encore,adv. *marié*.p.p.
punish him who is not guilty. - - - Men com-
punissez,v. *coupable*,adj. *ordi-*
monly[2] hate[1] him whom they fear. - - - - -
nairement,adv. *haïssent*,v. *que*,pro. *craignent*,v.
She whom you hate is my best friend. - - - You
haïssez,v. *amie*,f.
have punished him who did not deserve it,
puni,p.p. *méritoit*,v.
and rewarded her who was guilty. - - - We
récompensé,p.p.
(ought to) pray for them who persecute
devons,v. *qui*,pro. *persécutent*,v.
us. - - - Of all virtues, that which most[2] dis-
qui,pro. *le plus*,adv. *dis-*
tinguishes[1] a Christian is charity. - - - This book and
tingue,v.

hat which I lent you are the two best. - - - -
que,pro. *ai prêté*,p.p.
Such as seem (to be) happy, are not
qui,pro. *paroissent*,v. *être*,v.
always so.
toujours,adv.*

Ce, cette, ces, this, that, these, those, must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are *never* joined to any noun; for the noun to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun: ex.

J'ai vu le portrait du père et celui *du fils*, I have seen the father's picture, and *that* of the son.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

She who dines with us, is my brother's wife. - - -
dine,v. *avec*,p. *femme*,f.
She brought her picture, and that of her
a apporté,p.p. *portrait*,m.
husband. - - - - I have seen the king's palace, and
mari,m. *palais*,m.
that of the queen. - - - - That gold watch, which
montre,f. *que*,pro.
you showed me, is not yours, it is that of
avez montrée,p.p. *c'est*,v.
your brother. - - - I have lost my buckles and
perdu.p.p.
those of your cousin. - - - - Your books and those of
cousin,m.
your little sister are torn. - - - - I know this
petit,adj. *déchirés*,p.p. *connois*,v.
cap, it is that of your mother.
bonnet,m. *c'est*,v.

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English, and supplied by

* See the Rule, page 95.

an apostrophe and an *s*, thus (*'s*), at the end of the noun substantive as above, but it must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui, celle*, and according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

Il a pris mon chapeau et celui *de mon père,* — He has taken my hat and my father's, (*that is*, and *that* of my father.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have torn my gown, and my sister's. - - -
déchiré,p.p. *robe*,f.
I have found my hat and my brother's in the
trouvé,p.p.
room. - - - - The thieves came by night
chambre,f. *voleur*,m. *entrèrent*,v. *de nuit*,adv.
into my father's house, they (broke open) my room
dans *forcèrent*,v.
and my mother's, and stole my watch and
volèrent,v.
my sister's. - - - You may, if you please, take
pouvez,v. *voulez*,v. *prendre*,v.
your grammar and your brother's, but leave
laissez,v.
mine and my friend's. - - - - Our oranges and Mr.
orange,f.
Savage's are the best that you can
Savage, *on*,pro. *puisse*,v.
find.
trouver,v.

Sometimes the particles *ci, là*, here, there, are also joined to the substantive following the pronouns, *ce, cette, ces*, to distinguish with more precision the objects to which they are applied: ex.

Ce chapeau-ci, this hat; *cette ville-là*, that town, &c.

N. B. The two following expressions, *the former, celui-là*,m. *celle-là*,f. *ceux-là*,m. *celles-là*,f. *; the latter, celui-ci*,m. *celle-ci*,f. *ceux-ci*,m. *celles-ci*,f. referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are

elegantly used in French, and agree with the nouns, instead of *le premier, le second*, the repetition of which they avoid: ex.

Un François et un Ecossois se battirent hier à l'épée, celui-là, *fut blessé à l'épaule, et* celui-ci *au bras*,	A Frenchman and a Scotchman fought yesterday with swords, *the former* was wounded in the shoulder and *the latter* in the arm.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Learn this lesson, it is not so difficult as that. - - - I prefer this way to that road. - - -
Apprenez,v. *difficile*,adj. *préfère*,v. *chemin*,m. *route*,f.

This room is much larger than that parlour. - -
grand,adj. *salon*,m.

These candles are better than those. - - -
chandelle,f.

(There was) a great battle between George and Stephen; the former had a broken[2] nose[1], the latter lost a tooth. - - - In the engagements which took place between the Austrians and the French, the former lost two thousand men, and the latter fifteen hundred. - - -
Il y eut,v. *combat*,m. *entre*,p. *Etienne*, *eut*,v. *le cassé*,p.p. *nez*,m. *perdit*,v. *bataille*,f. *qui*,pro. *eurent*,v. *lieu*,m. *Autrichien*,m. *François*,m. *perdirent*,v. *homme*,

Among the peaches which you sent[2] me[1] at two different times, I observed that the former were better than the latter.
Parmi,p. *pêche*,f. *que*,pro. *avez envoyées à différent*,adj. *fois*,f. *ai remarqué*,v. *étoient*,v.

Ce qui, in the nominative case, *ce que*, in the accusative, what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun; it always may be turned into *that which*, or the *thing*

which; and *ceci*, *cela*, this, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood: ex.

Je sais ce qui *est arrivé*,	I know *what* has happened.
Savez-vous ce que *je pense ?*	Do you know *what* I think?
Ceci *me plait*,	*This* pleases me; *i. e. this thing*, &c.
Cela *me fait peur*,	*That* frightens me; *i. e. that thing*, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

May I know what causes your grief
Puis,v. *savoir*,v. *cause*,v. *chagrin*,m.
and sadness? - - - Your father has (a good deal)
tristesse,f. *beaucoup*,adv.
of friendship for you; for, he [1]never[4]
car,c. *ne jamais*,adv.
refuses[3] you[2] what you ask of him. - - - -
refuse,v. *demandez*,v. ∽ *lui*.
You seem much dejected, tell me what
paroissez,v. *bien*,adv. *abattu*,adj. *dites-moi*
vexes you. - - - Go and tell my father what
fâche,v. *Allez*,v. ∽ *dire à*,v.
has passed here and do not forget what you
s'est passé,v. *ici*,adv. ∽ *oubliez*,v.
have seen, and what you have heard. - - - - Give
entendu,p.p.
me this, and take that. - - - I prefer this to
prenez,v. *préfère*,v.
that.

OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse, either expressed or implied. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR *and* PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom.	*qui*,	who, which, that.
Gen.	*de qui*, or *dont*,	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	*à qui*,	to whom, to which.
Acc.	*que*, *qui*,†	whom, which, that.
Abl.	*de qui*, *dont*,	from whom, from which.
Acc.	*quoi*, *que*,	what.
Gen. Abl.	*de quoi*, or *dont*,	of *or* from what.
Dat.	*à quoi*,	to what.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	*lequel*,	*laquelle*, which.
Gen. Abl.	*duquel*, or *dont*,	*de laquelle*, of *or* from, &c.
Dat.	*auquel*,	*à laquelle*, to which.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	*lesquels*,	*lesquelles*, which.
Gen. Abl.	*desquels*, or *dont*,	*desquelles*, of *or* from, &c.
Dat.	*auxquels*,	*auxquelles*, to which.

The noun, or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called the *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number: ex.

Je connois un homme qui *doit aller voir le camp*, — I know a man *who* is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say, *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

J'ai lu la lettre que *vous m'avez envoyée*, — I have read the letter (*that*) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said, *laquelle lettre*, which letter, &c.

* *Whose*, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*: ex.

A qui est ce livre ? — Whose book is this ?

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions: ex.

Avec qui, With whom. — *Pour qui*, For whom.

or when it signifies *what person*: ex.

Amenez qui vous voudrez, — Bring whom you please.

that is, *what person* you please

The relative *que*, whom, which, or that, is sometimes understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French: ex.

La dame que *vous connoissez* The lady (*that*) you know
est arrivée, is arrived.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The man who sold me these pens is very
a vendu,v.
cunning. - - - The lady of whom you speak
rusé,adj. *dame*,f. *parlez*,v.
is not handsome. - - - Miss D***, whom you love
Mlle *aimez*,v.
so much, is very ill. - - - The person to
tant,adv. *malade*,adj. *personne*,f.
whom I wrote last year has answered
ai écrit,v. *passé*,p.p. *année*,f. *répondu*,p.p.
me this morning. - - He who was with you, related
matin,m. *étoit*,v. *a raconté*,v.
to me (every thing) that had passed. - - -
tout *ce qui s'étoit*,v. *passé*,p.p.
She will not hear of the lady whom
veut,v. *entendre parler*,v.
he (is going to) marry. - - - Shun vice, and
va,v. *épouser*,v. *Evitez*,v. *vice*,m.
love what is good. - - - Who was with
aimez,v. *bon*,adj. *étoit*,v. *avec*,p.
you? - - - It was a gentleman, whose[1] name[6] I[2]
Ce *monsieur*,m. *nom*,m.
know[4] [3]not[5]. - - Men generally[2] love[1] him
sais,v. *généralement*,adv.
who flatters them. - - The man I sent you was
flatte,v. *ai envoyé*,p.p.
honest. - - Whose[1] sword[4] is[2] this[3]? - - You speak
parlez,v.
of the lady whose husband has been so ill.
mari,m. *été*,p.p.

These pronouns, like the personal and conjunctive, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated (in French) before each governing verb, though most

commonly expressed but once in English, and before the first verb : ex.

Le Dieu que *nous aimons* et que *nous adorons*, — The God *whom* we love and worship.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The man who caresses and flatters you is[1] the[3] *caresse*,v.
most[4] dangerous[5] being[2] I know. - - - - - A man
plus,adv. *être*,m. *connoisse*,v.
whose manners are innocent, and behaviour
mœurs,f.pl. *innocent*,adj. *conduite*,f.
is blameless, is the man whom we (ought to) che-
irréprochable,adj. *devons*,v. *ché-*
rish and honour. - - - - The letters which you have
rir,v. *respecter*,v.
written, and showed me, were tole-
écrites,p.p. *montrées*,p.p. *étoient*,v. *passa-*
rably well. - - - The woman to whom I have
blement,adv. *femme*,f.
lent so much money, and spoken so often,
prêté,p.p. *parlé*,p.p.
is dead. - - - Servants are men or wo-
mort,adj. *Domestique*,m.et f. *ou*,c.
men whom we keep and reward
nourrissons,v. *récompensons*,v.
for the services which they do us.
pour,p. *rendent*,v.

When the words *to which*, *to what*, *at which*, *at what*, *in which*, *in what*, have a reference to inanimate things, and when they can be expressed by *where*, *whereto*, *whereat*, or *wherein*, they are to be rendered in French by the adverb of place, *où* : ex.

Je vous montrerai la maison où *il demeure*, — I will show you the house *in which* he lives ; (that is, *where* he lives.)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The state of misery to which he was reduced
étoit *réduit*,p.p.

has touched me to the quick. - - The town to
touché,p.p. *vif*,m. *ville*,f.
which he is gone is precisely the same
allé,p.p. *précisément*,adv. *même*,adj.
place through which we went in (coming up)
place,f. *par*,p. *où* *passâmes*,v. *en*,p. *venant*,p.act.
to London. - - (This is) the door through which
Voici,adv.
the thieves went into the house. - - The pri-
voleur,m. *entrèrent*,v.
son in which they used to shut up
l'on,pro. *avoit coutume*,v. *de renfermer*,v.
the prisoners, has been demolished.
prisonnier,m. *détruite*,p.p.

Quoi, what, and sometimes *that* or *which*, is never used in the nominative case: in the other cases it is generally used in an indeterminate signification, and is never expressed except in speaking of inanimate things, and especially when it has for its antecedent, *ce* or *rien*: ex.

C'est à quoi *je vous conseille de penser*,	It is *what* I advise you to think of.
Il n'y a rien à quoi *il ne soit disposé*,	There is nothing for *which* he is not disposed.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Of what does your sister complain? - - - What!
se plaint-elle,v.
you dare answer me thus! - - For what do
osez,v. *répondre*,v. *ainsi*,adv. *Pour*,p.
you[3] call[2] me[1]? - - Why did you
appellez,v. *Pourquoi*,adv. *avez*,v.
bring that man before me? what is he
amené,p.p. *devant*,p.
guilty of? - - What is your brother sorry
coupable,adj. *fâché*,adj.
for? - - At what were[1] you[2] playing[1], when I came
de *à* *jouiez*,v. *suis*

in? - - To what shall[2] we[1] apply[2] ourselves - -
entré,v. *appliquerons*,v. *nous*,pro.
(There[3] is[4]) [2]nothing[5] for which he is[2] not
Il y a,v. *ne rien*,adv. *à* *soit*,v. *ne*
fit. - - - - In what do you intend to spend
propre,adj. *à* *proposez-vous*,v. *de passer*,v.
your holidays ?
vacance,f.pl.

When we speak of irrational beings or inanimate things in the genitive, dative, or ablative cases, we make use of *lequel, laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui ;* also after a preposition, and when who, whom, or which, refer to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed : ex.

Le cheval auquel *vous donnez à boire*,	The horse *to which* you give some drink.
La fenêtre sur laquelle *vous vous appuyez*,	The window upon *which* you lean.
Apportez lequel *vous voudrez*,	Bring *which* you please.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The trade to which you apply,
commerce,m. *vous vous appliquez*,v.
and the profession to which you are devoted,
profession,f. *dévoué*,p.p.
are very honourable. - - - (Is that) the horse for
Est-ce là,v.
which you gave a hundred guineas ? - - Lying
avez donné,p.p. *Mensonge*,m.
is a vice for which young people (ought to)
gens,pl. *doivent*,v.
have the greatest horror. - - - The table upon
horreur,f. *table*,f. *sur*, p.
which you write, is broken. - - - The reasons
écrivez,v. *cassée*,p.p.
upon which you ground your system are
appuyez,v. *système*,m.

satisfactory. - - - (There are) four drawings, which
satisfaisant,adj. *Voilà*,adv. *dessein*,m.
do you choose? - - - (Here are) two pears, which
⌒ *choisissez*,v. *Voici*,adv. *poire*,f.
will you have? - - They are two sisters, which
voulez,v. ⌒ *sont*,v.
do you like the best?
⌒ *aimez*,v. *le mieux*,adv.

OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative*, because they are used only in asking questions, and have no antecedent: they are declined with the article indefinite.

SINGULAR *and* PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom. Acc. *qui*, who, whom.
Gen. Abl. *de qui*, of *or* from whom.
Dat. *à qui*, to whom, whose.

Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what;*
Or, *qu'est-ce qui*, *qu'est-ce que*.
Gen. Abl. *de quoi*, of *or* from what.
Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	
N.A.	*quel*, or *lequel*,	*quelle*, or *laquelle*,	what, which.
G.A.	*de quel*, *duquel*,	*de quelle*, *de laquelle*,	of *or* from, &c.
Dat.	*à quel*, *auquel*,	*à quelle*, *à laquelle*,	to what, which.

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	
N.A.	*quels*, or *lesquels*,	*quelles*, or *lesquelles*,	what, which.
G.A.	*de quels*, *desquels*,	*de quelles*, *desquelles*,	of *or* from, &c.
Dat.	*à quels*, *auxquels*,	*à quelles*, *auxquelles*,	to what, which.

* When *what*, in English, signifies *How much*, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

Qui, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons, and never to things; and it may be expressed by *quelle personne?* what person? *Quoi* and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose?* what thing? According to the French idiom, *quoi*, can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *que*: ex.

Qui est-là?	Who is there?
De quoi parlez-vous?	What are you speaking of?
Que voulez-vous? or, *qu'est-ce que vous voulez?*	What do you want? (*that is, What is it that you wish?*)

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who was the first king of France? - - - Who can
fut,v. *peut*,v.
give credit to a young man who does not speak
ajouter,v. *foi* ∽ *dit*,v.
the truth? - - - Of whom were[1] you[2] speaking[1], when
vérité,f. *parliez*,v.
I came? - - - To whom did you lend my
vins,v. *avez*,v. *prêté*,p.p.
slate? - - - Whom do you seek? - - - - Who told
ardoise,f. ∽ *cherchez*,v. *a dit*,v.
it to you? - - - From whom do you know it? - - - What[1]
∽ *savez*,v.
are[2] you[3] doing[2]? - - - What do you say? - - - What
faites,v. *dites*,v.
do you ask of me? - - Who is the man
demandez,v. ∽
who can boast of being without defect? - -
peut,v. *se vanter*,v. *de être*,v. *sans*,p. *défaut?*
What is the name of your father? - - - - What is his
nom,m.
occupation? - - What are his amusements? - - - What
occupation,f. *sont*,v. *plaisir*,m.
is his business? - - In what city does he[2] live[1]? - - -
sont,v. *affaires*,f.pl. *ville*,f. ∽ *demeure*, v.

What is the country in which he was born?
pays,m. *a pris naissance.*

In the last instances it may easily be seen, that *quel*, or *quelle*, what, is always joined to some substantive with which it must agree in gender and number.

In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which are elegantly used as substantives for *quel*, or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined; and then *lequel* must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood: ex.

Une de mes sœurs est mariée,	One of my sisters is married.
Laquelle *est-ce?* that is, laquelle *de vos sœurs est-ce?*	*Which* is it? *that is*, *which* of your sisters is it?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

One of your cousins is arrived from the
cousin,m. *arrivé*,p.p.
continent; which is it? --- An aunt of yours was
continent,m. *étoit*,v.
ill last week; which was
malade,adj. *dernière*,adj. *semaine*,f.
it? --- I have heard that two horses of yours
ouï dire,v.
were lost: tell me which. -- My brother
étoient,v. *perdu*,p.p. *dites*,v.
wrote to me, that two of your sisters (are going)
écrivit,v. *vont*,v.
to learn French: which are they? --
apprendre,v. *François*,m. *sont*,v.
They (were speaking) of a relation of his, and
parloient,v. *parent*.m.
of one of my friends; which were they?
amie,f.

OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite* or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

Aucun,m. *aucune*,f.	None, not any, any one.
Autre,	Other, any other.
Autrui,	Others, other people.
Chacun,m. *chacune*,f.	Each, every one, every body.
Chaque,	Every, each.
L'un l'autre,sing.m.	One another, each other.
Les uns——les autres,	Some——others. Some——some.
L'un et l'autre,sing.m.	Both.
L'un ou l'autre,sing.m.	Either.
Ni l'un ni l'autre,sing.m.	Neither.
Nul,m. *nulle*,f.	No one.
Pas un,m. *pas une*,f.	Not one.
Personne,	Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.
La plûpart de, des,	Most.
Plusieurs,	Many, several.
Quelconque,	Whatever, whatsoever.
Quelque,	Some, any.
Quelque chose,	Something, any thing.
Quelque—que,	Whosoever, whatsoever, whatever, however, howsoever, though, &c.
Quel—que,sing.m.	
Quelle—que,sing.f.	
Quelque chose qui or *que*,	Whatever, whatsoever.
Quoi que,	
Quoi que ce soit que,	
Tout ce qui, or *que*,	
Quelqu'un,m. *quelqu'une*,f.	Some, some one, somebody, any body.

Quiconque,	Whoever, whosoever.
Qui que ce soit, or *fût,*	Whoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, or be who he may, &c.
Quoi que ce soit, or *fût,*	Whatever, nothing in the world, nothing whatever.
Rien,	Nothing, any thing.
Tel, telle, tels, telles,	Such a one, such.
Tel qui, tels qui,	Such as he, she, they, who, that, &c.
Telle qui, telles qui,	
Tout,	Every, every thing.
Tout le monde,	Every body, any body.
Tout——que,	As—as, for all, although, however, &c.

OBSERVATIONS *on some of the above* PRONOUNS.

Aucun, aucune, is never used but in the singular, and always requires *ne* before the verb; it relates to a person or thing mentioned before; but in interrogative sentences, and when it expresses a doubt, it is used without a negation: ex.

Aucun ne *s'est encore avisé de vous contredire,*	*None* has yet thought of contradicting you.
Y a-t-il aucun (*ou* aucune) *de vous qui le souffrît?*	Is there *any* of you who would suffer it?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

None of the books which you saw me
avez vu,p.p.
buying, pleases me. - - - Of all the apples
acheter,v. *plait*,v. *pomme*,f.
which you gave me, none is yet
avez données,p.p. *encore*,adv.
fit to eat. - - - - Is there any of you who
bon,adj. *à manger*,v. *Y a-t-il*,

applies to study as much as he can? - - - Among
s'applique,v. *étude*,f. *le peut*,v.
all the ladies you know, is there any one who
dame,f. *connoissez*,v.
(would have) married him? - - Philip is cer-
eût voulu,p.p. *épouser*,v. *Philippe cer-*
tainly a very wicked man, for none
tainement,adv. *méchant*,adj. *car*,c.
of his friends speak well of him. - - - - Do you
parle,v.
know any news? No, sir, I know
savez,v. *nouvelle*, *monsieur*, *sais*,v.
none. - - I was in trouble, and none of
étois,v. *dans*,p. *embarras*,m.
my friends have relieved me.
a,v. *secouru*,p.p.

Nul, pas un, are always accompanied by a negation, and can only be used as a nominative to the verb: *Personne* is likewise attended with a negation, except in sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: ex.

Nul ne *peut se flatter d'être agréable à Dieu*,	*No one* can flatter himself to be agreeable to God.
Pas un ne *le croit*,	*Not one* believes it.
Personne *s'est-il jamais exprimé avec plus de grâce que Sheridan?*	Did ever *any body* express himself with more grace than Sheridan?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

No one in this world is free from
en,p. *monde*,m. *exempt*,adj.
fault. - - - No one can pretend to be per-
défaut,m. *prétendre*,v. *être*,v. *par-*
fectly happy in this land of mi-
faitement,adv. *dans*,p. *terre*,f.
sery. - - All the sailors perished at sea,
matelot,m. *ont péri*,v. *sur*,p. *mer*,

not one escaped. - - - - The soldiers are all re-
a echappé,p.p. *soldat*,m. *re-*
turned, not one has remained behind. - - -
venu,p.p. *est*,v. *resté*,p.p. *derrière*,adv.
Nobody can boast of being without im-
se vanter,v. *être*,v. *sans*,p.
perfections. - - As nobody speaks to you,
Comme,adv. *parle*,v.
you ought not to speak to any body. - - - Did
devez,v. *parler*,v. *A-t-il*
ever any body know in what happiness
jamais *connu*,p.p. *en*,p. *bonheur*,m.
consists ?
consiste,v.

Autre refers to persons and things, and is an adjective that precedes its substantive, unless used as a noun; but *autrui* refers to persons only, and is invariable, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case : ex.

Cette plume n'est pas bonne, donnez-lui en une autre,	This pen is not good, give him *another.*
*Ne prenez pas le bien d'*autrui,	Do not take *other people's* goods.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your brother has lost his books, shall I
perdu,p.p.
give him others ? - - - As you broke my
donnerai,v. *avez cassé*,pp.
penknife, you will give me another. - - Other peo-
canif,m. *donnerez*,v.
ple's opinions are not the rule of mine. - - - -
sentiment,m. *règle*,f.
Do not speak ill of other people, if you
parlez,v. *mal*,adv.
will have nobody speak ill of you. - - -
voulez,v. *que*,c. *parle*,v.
Always[2] remember[1] that principle of na-
souvenez-vous *de* *ce* *principe*,m. *na-*

tural law, do not to others what you
turel,adj. *loi*,f. *faites*,v.
would not wish that (they should do) to you. - -
voudriez,v. *on fît*,v.
What are other people's troubles, if (they be com-
peine,f. *si*,c. *on les com-*
pared) with ours.
pare,v. *aux*

Chaque and *chacun* are not used indifferently ; *chaque always* requires a substantive after it, and *chacun* represents a noun not expressed in the sentence, both relating to persons or things : ex.

Chaque *langue a ses idiomes particuliers*,	*Each* language has its peculiar idioms.
Chacun *à son tour*,	*Every one* in his turn.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Every thing in its time. - - Every virtue has
chose *dans*,p. *tems*,m.
its reward, and each vice has its punishment. - -
récompense,f. *châtiment*,m.
Let every soldier keep his post to
Que *se tienne*,v. *à* *poste*,m. *pour*,p.
avoid any surprise from the enemy. - -
éviter,v. *tout*,adj. *surprise*,f. *de la part de l'ennemi.*
Every one thinks and acts for himself. - - Do not
pense,v. *agit*,v. *soi.*
speak all at once, but each in your turn. - - -
à la fois,adv. *à*
England expects (*that*) every man (will do) his duty
attend,v. *fera*,v. *devoir*,m.
in case of danger. - - Trees bear their fruits
en *Arbre*,m. *portent*,v.
each in its season. - - - (Let us give) to every
dans,p. *rendons*,v.
one what belongs to him. - - - Let every one
appartient,v. *Que*
meddle with his own business.
se mêle,v. *de* *propre*,adj. *affaires*,pl.

L'un l'autre are susceptible of gender and number, and express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things; and if there be a preposition in English, it must be placed between them: ex.

Ils se *haïssent* l'un l'autre,	They hate *each other.*
Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre,	They speak ill *of one another.*
Les voleurs se défient les uns des autres,	Thieves mistrust *one another.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Fire and water destroy one another. - - My
se détruisent,v.
sisters can not bear each other. - -
peuvent,v. *se souffrir*,v.
Love one another, said our Lord
Aimez-vous,v. *dit*,v. *Seigneur*,m.
to his disciples. - - - The seasons follow each
disciple,m. *saison*,f. *se suivent*,v.
other without interruption. - - - - Honest men
sans,p. *gens*
(ought to) esteem one another. - - - They
devroient *s'estimer*
do justice to one another. - - - It is rare
se rendent,v. *rare*,adj.
to hear two authors speak well of one
de entendre,v. *auteur*,m. *dire*,v. *du bien*,m.
another. - - Multiplication teaches to multiply
Multiplication,f. *enseigne*,v. *à multiplier*,v.
two numbers by each other. - - The columns
nombre,m. *par*,p. *colonne*,f.
were close against one another.
étoient,v. *serré*,adj. *contre*,p.

L'un et l'autre always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things: *ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb, and in the plural, if it come after it; but in both cases the verb must be preceded by the negation *ne*: ex.

L'un et l'autre *ont raison*,	*Both* are in the right.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne *répond*, or *ils* ne *répondent* ni l'un ni l'autre,	*Neither of them* answer.

When the preposition relates to *both*, it must be placed before *l'un* and *l'autre*, and repeated; and *both* is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: ex.

Il reçoit de l'argent de l'un et de l'autre,	He receives money *from both*.
Son frère et sa sœur sont morts,	*Both* his brother and sister are dead.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Both serve to the same purpose. - - - I
servent,v. *même*,adj. *usage*,m.
called on your cousins, and I heard
ai passé, p.p. *chez* *cousine*,f. *ai appris*,p.p.
that both had been married a week be-
que *avoient*,v. *marié*,p.p. *semaine*,f. *au-*
fore. - - - - Honour your father and mother
paravant,adv. *Respectez*,v.
and endeavour to please both. - - Do you speak
tâchez,v. *de plaire*,v. *à* *parlez*,v.
of my brother or sister? I speak of both. - - Apples
parle,v. *Pomme*,f.
and pears are good fruits, but peaches are pre-
poire,f. *pêche*,f. *pré-*
ferable to both. - - I wrote to both, but neither of
férable,adj. *ai écrit*,v.
them answered my letters. - Yesterday I expected
a répondu,p.p. *à* *attendois*,v.
my two best friends, but neither of them came. - - I
vint,v.
will give it to neither of them. - - - Both religion
donnerai,v.
and virtue are the bonds of civil society.
lien,m.

Quelque—que. *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que*, expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quelques *fautes* que *vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera,*	*Whatever* faults you may have committed, they will forgive you.
Quelque *grandes* que *soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera,*	*However* great your faults be, they will forgive you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever efforts people make to hide
effort,m. *on*,pro. *fasse*,v. *pour*,p. *voiler*,v.
truth, it (is discovered) sooner or later. - - What-
se découvre,v. *tôt*,adv. *tard*,adv.
ever services you (may have) done to your
service,m. *ayez*,v. *rendus*,p.p.
country, it will reward you for them. - - What*
patrie,f. *récompensera*,v.
ever capacity a man may have, he ought not to
puisse,v. *doit*,v. *se*
boast. - - However equitable your[2] offers[3] be[1],
vanter,v. *offre*,f. *soient*,v.
I do not believe they will be accepted. - - [1]Though[3]
crois,v. *soient*,v. *acceptée*,p.p.
kings[5] be[4] (ever so) powerful[2] they die
soient,v. *puissant*,adj. *meurent*,v.
as well as the meanest of their subjects. - - However
bas,adj. *sujet*,m,
learned those ladies may be, they sometimes[3]
savant,adj. *quelquefois*,adv.
mistake[1].
se trompent,v.

Quel que, quelle que must be thus divided, when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

* See the Rule, page 92.

Quelle que *soit votre faute*, *on vous pardonnera*,
Whatever your fault may be, they will forgive you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever the enemy[ennemi,m.] be, whose malice[malice,f.][2] you[1] dread,[2] you ought[devez,v.] to rely[vous reposer,v.] on your[sur,p.] innocence. - - Laws condemn[condamnent,v.] all criminals,[criminel,m.] whoever they may[puissent,v.] be. - - Whatever your intentions[intention,f.] (may be)[soient] I think that you (are in the wrong).[avez tort.] Whatever the reasons[raison,f.] be which you (may allege,)[alléguiez,v.] they are not sufficient. - - - Whatever these books[suffisant,adj.] be, send them to me. - - Whatever her fortune[livre,m.] be,[fortune,f.] he says he [1]never[4] (will marry[3]) her[2].
[dit,v.] [épousera,v.]

Quelque chose qui or *que*, *quoi que*, *quoi que ce soit que*, *tout ce qui* or *que*, always relate to things, and never to persons; with this difference, that, in French, we generally begin the sentence with either *quelque chose que* or *qui*, *quoi que*, or *quoi que ce soit que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quelque chose qu'*on vous dise*, *ne le croyez pas*,
Whatever may be said to you, do not believe it.
Quoi que ce soit qu'*on vous dise*, *ne le croyez pas*,
Whatever they may say to you, do not believe it.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever may happen[puisse,v. arriver,v.] to you in this world,[monde,m.] [1]never[3] murmur[2][murmurez,v.] against[contre,p.] divine providence, for[car,c.]

whatever we may suffer, we deserve it. - - What-
souffrions,v. *méritons*,v.
ever I (may do,) you always blame me. - - Who is
fusse,v. *blâmez*,v.
the man who has stolen his money? I know not;
volé,p.p. *sais*,v.
but whoever he (may be,) and whatever he may say,
soit, *dise*,v.
if my father catch him, he shall be punished. - -
attrappe,v. *puni*,p.p.
In whatever your master employs you, do it
à *emploie*,v. *faites*,v.
heartily. - - - - Whatever you may say, your
de bon cœur,adv. *disiez*,v.
brothers shall be punished, if they deserve it.
seront,v. * *méritent*,v.

On the contrary, we always make use of *tout ce qui* or *que*, when *whatever* can be turned into *all that which*, or *every thing which*; and may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situation in English, with the following verb in the indicative mood: ex.

Il fera toujours tout ce qu'*il vous plaira*, He will always do *whatever*, or *every thing*, you please.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

In whatever you do, be guided by ho-
faites,v. *guidé*,p.p. *hon-*
nesty and probity; and in whatever you say,
nêteté,f. *dites*,v.
never deviate from the path of truth. - -
vous écartez,v. *sentier*,m.
Whatever is pleasing is not always useful. - - -
agréable,adj. *utile*,adj.
Tell me whatever you think of me, and I will
Dites,v. *pensez*,v. *di-*
tell you whatever I think of you. - - Never speak
rai,v.

* *Si* always loses the i before il, he; ils, they.

of whatever has passed between us both. - - She is
s'est passé,v. *entre*,p. *deux*.
so curious, that she will know whatever I
curieux,adj. *veut*,v. *savoir*,v.
do. - - Whatever glitters is not gold. - - I will pay
fais,v. *luit*,v. *or*. *paierai*,v.
you to-morrow whatever I owe you.
dois,v.

Quelque always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number; and *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, make *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*, in the plural: ex.

Quelque *homme*,	*Some* man.
Quelque *femme*,	*Some* woman.
Quelqu'un *m'a dit*,	*Some one* has told me, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When he comes to see us, he has
Quand,adv. *vient*,v. ∽ *voir*,v.
always some tale to tell us. - - He promised
conte,m. *à faire*,v. *a promis*,p. p.
to bring me some filberts and chesnuts. - - - Have
de aveline châtaigne.
you heard any news? - - Somebody knocks
appris,p.p. *nouvelle?* *frappe*,v.
at the door, go and open it. - - Is there
allez,v. ∽ *ouvrir*,v. *Y a-t-il*,v.
any of these ladies who has found my colour-box?
dame,f. *ait*,v. *trouvé* *couleur*,
- - Have you any (raspberry trees) in your garden? I
framboisier,m.
have some. - - Has he any vines? Yes, he has some.
A-t-il, *vigne*,f. *Oui*,adv.

Qui que ce soit, speaking *of* persons only, may be Englished different ways; but when by *whoever*, *what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il*, *elle* or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb or preposition: ex.

Qui que ce soit qui *me* *Whoever* deceives me, shall
trompe, *il sera puni*, be punished.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whoever despises the poor, is himself des-
mépriser,v. *lui-même* *mé-*
picable. - - Whoever speaks to you, do not answer. - -
prisable,adj. *parler* *répondez*,v.
Whoever (may presume to) ask you any question
osera,v. *question*
concerning that affair, pretend not[2] to[1] know[5] (any[4]
touchant,p. *feignez*,v. *de savoir*,v.
thing) (about it[3]). - - Of whomsoever you speak,
parliez,v.
always speak the truth. - - - To whomsoever you
dites,v. *vous*
apply every body (will tell) you the
vous adressiez,v. *tout le monde*,m. *dira*,v.
same thing. - - - With whomsoever you be,
chose,f. *Avec*,p. *soyez*,v.
always[2] behave[1] well[3].
comportez-vous,v.

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody in the world, no man living*, &c.; it must be attended with the negation *ne* before the verb; and when speaking in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used: ex.

Je n'*en parle à* qui que ce soit,	I mention it to *no man living*, to *no one*.
César ne *vouloit se fier à* qui que ce fût,	Cæsar would trust to *nobody whatever*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Charity bids us to (speak ill) of nobody what-
ordonne,v. *de médire*,v.
ever, and to do harm to no man living. - - I
de faire,v. *du mal*,m.
spoke to nobody whatever; for I saw neither
ai parlé,p.p. *ai vu*,v.
father, mother, nor children. - - Never speak to any
parlez,v.

body whatever of what I told you. - - He acquainted
ai dit *fit part à*,v.
nobody in the world with his projects. - - My brother
de *projet*,m.
was so honest, that he mistrusted nobody at all. - -
étoit,v. *se défioit de*,v.
Cromwell would trust his life to nobody whatever.
voulut,v. *confier*,v. *vie*,f.

The above observation is to be made with respect to *quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, only used in speaking of inanimate objects. *Quiconque* is indeclinable, always used in the singular, and said only of persons : ex.

Je ne me plains de quoi que ce soit, — I do not complain of *any thing whatever.*
Quiconque *vous a dit cela*, &c. — *Whoever* told you that, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother enjoys so[2] good[3] a[1] health[4], that
jouit de,v. *si*
(for these) three years he never complained of
depuis,p. *s'est plaint*,p.p.
any thing whatever. - - - - He is so lazy, that
he applies to nothing whatever. - - - - You
s'applique,v.
may go and take a walk in the garden,
pouvez,v. *aller*,v. *vous promener*,v.
but do not touch any thing whatever. - - Who-
touchez à,v.
ever believes every thing which (he is told,) is
croit,v. *on lui dit*,v.
often deceived. - - - He (is ordered) to stop
trompé,p.p. *a ordre*,v. *de arrêter*,v.
every one that shall go that way.
passera,v. *par-là.*

It must be observed, that the numeral adjective *one*, used in English as a pronoun indefinite, and admitting of a plural termination, is not to be expressed in French, when it immediately follows an adjective of colour, or any other expressing the shape or size of the object

which it implies; but the adjective must be put in the same number and gender as the substantive which is understood in English: ex.

Quel habit achèterez-vous ? un bleu ou un vert ?	What coat shall you buy ? a blue *one* or a green *one* ?
J'ai trouvé deux nids d'oiseaux ; dans l'un il y avoit des œufs, et des petits dans l'autre,	I have found two birds nests ; there were eggs in one, and young *ones* in the other.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What kind of a hat will you have ? a black
espèce,f. ∽ ∽ *un noir*,adj.
one, or a white one ? a round one, or a
blanc,adj. *rond*,adj.
cocked one ? - - - My father has sold
retroussé,adj. *vendu*,p.p.
one of his horses ; which is it ? the black one or
un *ce*
the grey one ? - - Were there many flowers in
gris,adj. *Y avoit-il*
his garden ? Yes, (there were) very fine ones,
il y en avoit *très*,adv. *beau*,adj.
which my father had sent him from Hol-
envoyé,p.p.
land. - - (Here are) several pair of shoes, which
Voici,adv. *soulier*,m.
will you have ? the red ones, or the white
∽ *rouge*,adj.
ones ? I prefer the black ones.
préfère,v.

Tout—que. *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately followed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine, before nouns beginning with a consonant, and must be repeated before every noun in the sentence: ex.

Tout *savant* qu'*il est*, *il se trompe quelquefois*,	*As* learned *as* he is, he sometimes mistakes.

Toute *savante* qu'*elle est*, *elle se trompe quelquefois*, *For all* she is learned, she sometimes mistakes.

Observe well the above construction.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

For all my sister is ugly she gets friends
laid,adj. *se fait*,v.
every-where. - - - As amiable as she is, she
par-tout,adv. *aimable*,adj.
does not please me at all. - - - For all they are
plait,v. *du tout*,adv.
rich, they give[2] [1]nothing[3] to the poor. - - - -
donnent,v. *pauvre*,adj.pl.
Your mother, although, (or for all) she is young. appears
paroît,v.
old. - - - As generous as he is, he has not given
âgé,adj. *a*,v. *donné*,p.p.
me one farthing. - - His aunt, for all she is angry
liard,m. *tante*,f. *fâché*,adj.
with him, will forgive him his faults, as great
contre,p. *pardonnera*,v. *lui* *faute*,f.
as they are. - - - As young, amiable, handsome,
beau,adj.
and rich, as my friend's sisters are, they were
étoient,v.
not yet married the last time I saw
encore,adv. *marié*,p.p. *fois*,f. *vis*,v.
them.

N. B. This will be seen again among the conjunctions.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner:

Je ne sais qui,	I know not who, whom.
Je ne sais quoi,	I know not what.
Je ne sais quel, *quelle*, &c.	I know not which or what.

Je ne sais qui is only said of persons, and signifies a person we do not know. *Je ne sais quoi* is only said of

things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named or defined : *Je ne sais quel* is placed before substantives, both of persons and things ; lastly, we sometimes put *un* before *Je ne sais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *Je ne sais quoi :* ex.

Je ne sais qui *me parle*,	*I know not who* speaks to me.
Il parle de je ne sais quoi,	He speaks of *I know not what.*
Je vis je ne sais quel *homme*,	I saw I know not *what* man.
*Il parle d'*un *je ne sais qui*,	He speaks of I know not whom.
J'ai lu une comédie intitulée, le je ne sais quoi,	I have read a play which has for its title, *I know not what.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When I paid a visit to my friend, I addressed
rendis,v. *m'adressai*,v.
myself to I know not whom. - - He (keeps company
fréquente,v.
with) I know not whom, and that displeases her. - -
déplait,v. *lui*.
Whilst she (was speaking) to him, she was
Pendant que,c. *parloit*,v. *fut*
accosted by I know not whom. - - There is
abordé,p.p. *par*,p. *Il y a*,v.
I know not what mean in that behaviour. - - -
de bas,adj. *conduite*,f.
He complains of I know not what. - - - When I
se plaint,v.
went in, I saw I know not what man, what wo-
entrai,v.
man, what pictures, what figures. - - She speaks
portrait,m. *figure*,f.
to I know not whom. - - - There is in that I
là-dedans,adv.
know not what that pleases me.
plait,v.

RECAPITULATORY *or promiscuous* EXERCISES *upon all the* PRONOUNS.

Review well your rules and examples before you write.

I speak French. - - You speak English. - -
parle,v. *parlez*,v.
We do not understand what they say to us. - -
∽ *comprenons*,v. *disent*,v.
She speaks to you, and robs you (at the same)
parle,v. *vole*,v. *en même*
time. - - We have not seen them. - - Your
temps,m. *avons*,v. *vus*,p.p.
mother came to see me yesterday, and I
vint,v. ∽ *voir*,v. *hier*,adv.
(will go to) see her to-morrow. - - Is there any body
irai,v. *demain*,adv. *Est-il*,
that esteems her more than I do? - - Attention,
estime,v. ∽
cares, credit, money, I have put[2] (every[1] thing)
soin, *mis*,p.p. *tout*
in use. - - They are happy, but we are
en,p. *usage*. *heureux*,adj.
not so. - - Every body thinks I am the mother of
* *croit*,v.
that child; I assure you I am not. - - - - Ladies,
* *Mmes*,
are you the companions of Miss le Noir? Yes,
êtes,v. *compagne*,f.
we are. - - - My uncle gave me a sword and
* *a donné*,p.p.
I owe my life to it. - - - Whatever (may be)
dois la *soient*,v.
your troubles, you (ought to) write to me more
peine,f. *devriez*,v. *écrire*,v.
frequently. - - I will lend you the book which she
souvent,adv. *prêterai*,v.
has sent me. - - Believe me, he is very
envoyé,p.p. *Croyez*,v.
ill. - - - - I shall be very glad to go
malade,adj. *serai*,v. *aise*,adj. *de aller*, v.

* Look at page 96.

there with you ; for I have something to tell
avec,p. *car*,c. *à dire*,
him. - - I love your sister, and I owe her r
aime,v. r
spect. - - Give me my hat and cloak. - -
*pect.*m. *chapeau*,m. *mantelet*,n
I have dined with your father and mother. -
diné,p.p.
They[1] often[4] procure[3] me[2] that pl
souvent,adv. *procurent*,v.
sure. - - If it be not an indiscretion on my par
ce est,v. f. *de par*
pray tell me what passed between y
de grâce, *dites* *s'est passé*,p.p. *entre*,p.
and them. - - They have sent you good apples
pomme
Yes, there were some good ones and some bad
Il y avoit,v. *mauvais*,a
ones. - - Write to me, do not write to her. - -
Ecrivez,v.
Carry some to your sister. - - I will do whatev
Portez,v. *ferai*,v.
you please. - - - The Thames is a very fine
voudrez,v. *Tamise*,f. *beau*,a
river ; it divides London into two parts. - -
rivière,f. *divise*,v. *en*,p. *partie*.
London is the capital of England, as Paris is th
capitale,f.
of France ; it is a fine city, but some of its stre
* *rue*,
are very inconvenient and narrow. - - - Br
incommode,adj. *étroit*,adj.
is a fine sea - port,† in France, but its entran
mer, *port*,m. * *entrée*,
is difficult and dangerous. - - Brother, th
difficile,adj.
books are mine, and not yours. - - - Yo
non pas,adv.
exercise is better than mine, but it is not
thème,m.

* See page 102. † See the rule page 44.

well written as your sister's. - - Do you think of
écrit,p.p. ∽ *pensez*,v. *à*
me? Yes, I do.* - - You do not know what vexes
pense,v. ∽ *fâche*,v.
me. - - I will not accept of any of the
veux,v. *accepter*,v.
terms which they offer me. - - Whom ought
condition,f. *offrent*,v. *devons*,v.
we to worship? God, who is the father of
∽ *adorer*,v. *Dieu*,
them that love him, and the protector of those
aiment,v.
that fear him. - - Of all those who contend
craignent,v. *disputent*,v.
against religion, some do it because it per-
contre,p. f. *les uns font*,v. *parceque*,c. *em-*
plexes them; others, because they wish to
barrasse,v. *les autres* *veulent*,v. ∽
have the glory of perplexing its defenders. - -
embarrasser,v. *défenseur*,m.
Those trees are well exposed to the sun,
arbre,m. *exposé*,p.p. *soleil*,m.
nevertheless their fruits are not good. - - I believe
cependant,adv. *crois*,v.
your uncle is arrived. - - His ability is not so
oncle,m. *arrivé*,p.p. *habileté*,f.
great as yours. - - Two rivals are generally
grand,adj. *rival*,m.
enemies of one another. - - Sister, who gave you
a donné,p.p.
that letter? Our uncle's servant. - - - What does
lettre,f. *domestique*,m. ∽
he write to you? That his library is at our
écrit,v. *bibliothèque*,f. *à*
service; and I assure you that he has a very good
très,adv.
one. - - His letters please me so much, that I †
plaisent,v.
wish to increase their number. Both my
veux,v. ∽ *augmenter*,v.

* Look at page 94. † See the ex: p. 93.

father and aunt are now at Rome; the fori
à présent
writes once a week, the latter wr
écrit,v. *une fois*,f.
to me twice a year. - - - He that wants
deux fois *manque d*
virtue, wants (all things). - - - That lady ple
tout. *dame*,f. *pla*
you, for you[1] are[3] always[4] speaking[3] of her[2]. -
car,c. *parlez*,v.
The beauty of the mind creates adm
beauté,f. *esprit*,m. *donne*,v.
tion; that of the soul gains esteem, and t
âme,f. *donne*,v. *estime*,f.
of the body love. - - - - Most friends are m
corps,m. *amour*,m.
attached to our fortune, [1]than[3] [2]they
attaché,p.p. *que ne*,c.
to our person. - - - Whoever is without vir
sans,p.
seldom[2] values[1] men; and whoever
rarement,adv. *estime*,v.
too good, values them (too much). - -
trop,adv. *trop*,adv.
is she who told me that this house is
a dit,p.p. *maison*,f.
yours. - - You believe that Mrs. D. is in your inter
* *croyez*,v. *intéré*
and I believe nothing of it. - - - Ambi
crois,v. *ne rien*,adv.
(tramples upon) wisdom, honour, probity, and o
foule aux pieds *su*
their ruins, it lays the foundation of its gr
ruine,f. *élève*,v. *fondement*,m. *g*
ness. - - Whatever her intention (may be,) J
deur,f. *soit*,v.
[3]not[6] love[5] her[3] the less[7] for it[4]. - - I assure you
aime,v.
I have answered both her letter and her brother's.
Nobody in the world has complained of your
s'est,v. *plaint*,p.p.

* Look at page 85 and 86.

duct. - - When you read the history of the Roman
Quand,c. *lirez*,v. *histoire*,f. *Romain*, adj.
emperors, you will find one (of them) whose name
empereur,m. *trouverez*,v.
was Nero. - - - The study of geography is absolute-
Néron. *géographie*,f. *absolu-*
ly necessary to him who has a taste for his-
ment,adv. *du goût*,m.
tory. - - He that sold us this clock did not
a vendu,p.p. *pendule*,f. *a*,v.
cheat us. - - What do you think of it? - - -
trompés,p.p. *pensez*,v.
Whoever cheats me shall repent (*of* it). - - -
trompe,v. *se repentira*,v. *en*
Every body thinks* we shall have peace. - - When I
croit,v. *aurons*,v. *paix*,f.
went in, the members of the assembly were
entrai,v. *étoient*,v.
seated every one in his place. - - - I, who did not
assis,p.p. *à*
know that they were reconciled, was much
savois,v. *que*,c. *réconciliés*,p.p. *fus*,v. *fort*,adv.
surprised to see them together. - - - England owes
étonné de voir,v. *ensemble*,adv. *doit*,v.
her riches to her naval strength and the encourage-
forces,f.pl.
ment she gives to her commerce. - - We speak
donne,v. *parlons*,v.
of what has happened to him. - - Well! if he
est,v. *arrivé*,p.p. *Eh bien*,int.
spend other people's money, he does not spend
dépense,v.
yours. - - This illness is much hid; nevertheless
maladie,f. *fort cachée*,p.p. *cependant*,adv.
I know its origin and effects. - - - - She who
connois,v. †
(was speaking) to you is not yet mar-
parloit,v. *encore*,adv.
ried. - - Her father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles,
oncle,m.

* See *the note at the bottom of* page 104. † See p. 102.

and aunts, in short, all her relations, are dead,
tante,f. *enfin*,c. *parent*,m.
and have left her a considerable fortune. - - -
ont,v. *laissé*,p.p.
Those gentlemen have fine horses, but mine are
messieurs *cheval*,m.
finer than theirs. - - Do you know any of
connoissez,v.
those ladies? Yes, I know some of them. - - - -
connois,v.
For all they are young and handsome, they have (a
ont,v.
great deal) of modesty and virtue. - - - That German
Allemand
nobleman is both poor and proud. - - - - Desire
gentilhome *orgueilleux*,adj. *Priez*,v.
him to bring them here. - - - Is that the gown
de amener,v. *Est-ce* *robe*,f.
for which you gave five guineas? - - If I
pour,p. *avez donné*,p.p.
had been in your place, I (would have)
eusse,v. *été*,p.p. *à* *aurois*,v.
preferred the white one to the black one. - - - -
préféré,p.p.
How many books are there in that library? There
y a-t-il *bibliothèque*,f.
are three thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven
in the library, fifty-two upon the table, and nineteen
in my room. - - Whose house is this? It belongs
appartient,v.
to I know not whom. - - There is I know not what
Il y a,v.
in the colour, which pleases much. - - To what
dans,p. *plait*,v.
(does he apply himself)? - - - This apple, and that he
s'applique-t-il,v. *
gave you, are very good. - - Give me either
donna,v. *Donnez*,v.
of them. - - I will send you some thither. - - -
enverrai,v.

* See the rule page 112.

I cannot sell it to you for so small a
ne peux pas,v. *vendre*,v. *pour*,p.
sum. - - I prefer the beauty of the mind to that
somme,f. *préfère*,v.
of the body. - - Some like music and some dancing.
Les uns aiment,v. *danse*,f.
- - She says she hates that man; many think she
dit,v. *hait*,v. *croient*
loves him. - - He whom nobody pleases, is more
aime,v. *à* *plait*,v.
unhappy than he who pleases nobody. - - I
malheureux,adj. *à*
was near your sister when that happened
étois,v. *auprès de*,p. *quand*,c. *arriva*,v.
to her. - - Both his father and mother died
moururent,v.
on the same day. - - - - - - As covetous as he is, he
avare,adj.
gave me a guinea. - - - There are many people
a donné,p.p. *Il y a*
whom we esteem, because we do not know them. - -
parceque,c. *connoissons*
Whatever has happened to you, I am very sorry
soit,v. *arrivé*,p.p. *fâché*,adj.
for it. - - He would do it in spite of any
voulut,v. *faire*,v. *en*,p. *dépit*,m.
body whatever. - - Learning is preferable to riches
Science,f.
and virtue to both. - - - Some philosophers have
philosophe,m. *ont*,v.
thought that the fixed stars were so many
cru,p.p. *fixe*,adj. *étoile*,f. *étoient*,v. *autant*
suns. - - See with what care, attention, and per-
Voyez,v.
severance, every animal (rears up) its (young ones.)
élève,v. *petit*,adj.
- - (Here are) two grammars, which do you pre-
Voici,adv.
fer? I prefer this to that. - - - - Both are very
good. - - - He believes nothing of what you
croit,v. *ne rien*,adv.

told him. - - - You blame him who does
avez dit,p.p. *blâmez*,v.
not deserve it. - - - Friend, to whom did you
mérite,v. *avez*,v.
speak ? I spoke to nobody ; for I saw
parlé,p.p. *ai parlé*,v. *car*,c. *ai vu*,p.p.
neither of them. - - Each country has its peculiar
particulier,adj.
customs ; in France, they* eat with the fork, in England,
coutume,f. *on*,pro.
we eat with the knife ; in France, they eat the meat
on,pro.
well done ; in England, we eat it half raw.
cuite,p.p. *à moitié crue*,adj.

SECT. IV.

OF VERBS AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

1. *Les verbes auxiliaires*,	auxiliary.
2. *Les verbes actifs*,	active.
3. *Les verbes passifs*,	passive.
4. *Les verbes neutres*,	neuter.
5. *Les verbes réfléchis*,	reflective.
6. *Les verbes personnels*,	personal.
7. *Les verbes impersonnels*,	impersonal.

Some of them are *regular*, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong ; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*.—In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object : ex.

Le maître punit les écoliers paresseux, The master *punishes the lazy scholars*.

The active verb sometimes governs two cases : one

* See page 84.

to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case;* the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and it is called the *indirect* or *relative case:* ex.

Votre sœur a écrit *une longue lettre* à mon frère,	Your sister *wrote* a long letter *to my brother.*

A long letter is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother*, the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote.* The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative.*

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject: ex.

Les écoliers paresseux *seront punis*,	*Lazy scholars* shall be punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent: ex.

Je dors,	I sleep.	*Vous voyagez*,	You travel.
Nous étudions,	We study.	*Elle soupire*,	She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it: ex.

Il se *repent*,	He repents *himself.*
Elle se *loue*,	She praises *herself.*

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have *only* the third person of the singular number.

N. B. There is a kind of verbs which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action: ex.

Recommencer,	To begin *again.*
Refaire,	To do *again*, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be

rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and NOT by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided without losing its meaning: as,

Appeler,	To call;	*Voir*,	To see;
Bâtir,	To build;	*Prendre*,	To take;
Mentir,	To lie;	*Vivre*,	To live;

which would mean nothing, if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables: as,

R*appeler*,	To *re*call.	Pré*voir*,	To *fore*see.
Re*bâtir*,	To *re*build.	Entre*prendre*,	To *under*take.
Dé*mentir*,	To *be*lie.	Sur*vivre*,	To *out*live, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them *part* or *the whole* of a preposition.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods*, *tenses*, *persons* and *numbers*.

MOODS.

Mood or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflections.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflections, or by some other difference. They are:

L'infinitif,	The infinitive.
L'indicatif,	The indicative.
L'impératif,	The imperative.
Le subjonctif, ou *conjonctif*,	The subjunctive, *or* conjunctive.

Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation,

and without any relation as to time, number, or person: ex.

Parler,	To speak.
Chanter,	To sing.
Danser,	To dance.

Of the Indicative Mood.

This mood is thus called, because it not only *indicates* the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person; without being preceded or governed by either a conjunction or verb:

J'écris une lettre,	I write a letter.
Il chante une chanson,	He sings a song.

Ecris and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

Of the Imperative Mood.

The name which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies to *command*; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding*, *entreating*, *praying*, *exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding*: ex.

Ne méprisez *pas les avis que je vous donne*,	*Do* not *despise* the advice which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

Je vous exhorte, je vous prie, de ne pas mépriser mes avis,	I exhort, I entreat you, not to despise my advice.

This mood has no first person in the singular, because

* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive: this will be explained hereafter.

it is impossible for a man to command himself; and if it have the first person plural, it is because we speak as much to others as to ourselves; as when we say,

Evitons *tout ce qui pourroit offenser les autres*, — *Let us avoid* every thing that might offend others.

The second person *singular* and the first and second *plural* admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

Of the Subjunctive, *or* Conjunctive.

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms; it is always preceded by, or subject to some conjunction; and if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used only to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

Je travaille afin que vous vous reposiez, — I work that *you may rest yourself.*

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I propose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

Je désire que vous fassiez *votre devoir*, — I wish that *you may do* your duty;

I affirm that I wish; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say that you do, that you have done, that you will do your duty; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses* in the verbs: viz.

Le passé,	The past.
Le présent,	The present.
Le futur,	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. *five* in the infinitive mood; *three* of them are *simple*, the *two* others *compound*.

In the *simple* tenses, the verb is expressed in one word: ex.

Parler,	To speak.
Chantant,	Singing.
Dansé,	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive: ex.

Avoir parlé,	To have spoken.
Ayant chanté,	Having sung.
Etre aimé,	To be loved.
Etant aimé,	Being loved.

Simple Tenses.

Le présent,	The present.
Le participe actif,	The participle active.
Le participe passif,	The participle passive.

Compound.

Le prétérit,	The preterite.
Le participe passé ou composé,	The participle past or compound.

There are ten tenses in the *indicative* mood, viz. *five simple* and *five compound*: they are,

Simple.

Le présent,	The present.
L'imparfait,	The imperfect.
Le prétérit,	The preterite.

Le futur,	The future.
Le conditionnel,	The conditional.

COMPOUND OF

Le présent,	The present.
L'imparfait,	The imperfect.
Le prétérit,	The preterite.
Le futur,	The future.
Le conditionnel,	The conditional.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The *subjunctive* mood has four tenses; *two simple* and *two compound.*

SIMPLE.

Le présent,	The present.
Le prétérit,	The preterite.

COMPOUND OF

Le présent,	The present.
Le prétérit,	The preterite.

Before we proceed any further on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, the precision of which partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learner.

TENSES *of the* INDICATIVE MOOD.

SIMPLE.

PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or im-

pression, mentioned by the verb, *is existing, doing*, or *happening*, at the very time we are speaking: ex.

Je me porte *bien*,	I *am* well.
Votre sœur est *malade*,	Your sister *is* ill.
Nous nous promenons,	We *are walking*.
Vous écrivez,	You *are writing*.
Ils jouent,	They *are playing*, &c.

The present is also used,

1. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually* do, *are accustomed* to do, or *can* do: ex.

Nous dinons *toujours à deux heures*,	We always *dine* at two o'clock.
Elle étudie *l'histoire*.	She *studies* history.
Vous parlez *François*,	You *speak* French.
Lit-*il l'Anglois?*	*Does* he *read* English?

2. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

Je pars *ce soir pour la campagne*,	I *set out* this evening for the country.
Que faites-*vous demain?*	What *do* you *do* to-morrow?

Instead of

Je partirai *ce soir pour la campagne*,	I *shall set out* this evening for the country.
Que ferez-*vous demain?*	What *will* you *do* to-morrow?

3. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite and compound of the *preterite*, especially in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

Imperfect.

This tense has two uses; *in the first*, which probably is the origin of its name, it expresses an action *present* or *doing* at the time of an action *that is past*: as when

Mon frère apprenoit *sa leçon quand vous* arrivâtes,	My brother *was learning* his lesson when you *arrived.*

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

In the second, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated* at a time which is not *defined:* ex.

*Quand j'*étois *à Londres, j'*allois *souvent voir mes amis,*	When I *was in* London, I often *went* to see my friends;

that is, I often *used* to go, or I frequently *went*, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the *character*, or some *inherent* and *distinctive quality*, of persons or things no longer existing; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would:* ex.

Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, étoit *le plus fin politique de son temps,*	Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, *was* the deepest politician of his time.
César avoit *je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physionomie,*	Cæsar *had* I know not what of great in his physiognomy.
Carthage faisoit* *un prodigieux commerce par le moyen de ses vaisseaux, qui* alloient *jusqu'aux Indes,*	Carthage *carried on* a prodigious trade by the means of her ships, which *went* as far as the Indies.
Palmire et Persépolis étoient *de grandes et belles villes,*	Palmyra and Persepolis *were* large and fine cities.
S'il venoit, *je le paierois,*	*If* he *would come*, or *came*, I would pay him.

* See Faire, page 290.

George II. étoit *d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne; il* avoit *les yeux très-saillans, le nez grand, et une belle complexion; il* étoit *doux, modéré et humain; sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre: il* se plaisoit *dans la pompe et dans l'appareil militaire, et* étoit *naturellement brave; il* aimoit *la guerre comme soldat, l'*étudioit *comme une science, et* avoit, *sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produits.*

George II. *was*, in his per son, rather lower tha the middle size; he *ha* remarkable prominen eyes, a high nose, and fair complexion; he *wa* mild, moderate and hu mane; in his way of liv ing, sober and regular he *delighted* in militar pomp and parade, an *was* naturally brave he *loved* war as a sol dier, *studied* it as science, and *had*, on thi account, a settled cor respondence with som of the greatest general that Germany has pro duced.

From the above instances it might confidently b believed, that every difficulty attending the use of thi tense will be entirely removed; I shall however add, a a farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which i English is in the preterite, can be rendered by the pas tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed int the participle active, or when that preterite can b turned into the verb in the infinitive mood preceded b *I, thou, he, &c. used to*, that past tense must be made i French by the imperfect: ex.

Je lisois, I used to read; or I was reading.

Preterite.

This tense is so called because it always expresses a action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirel elapsed, that nothing more remains of the time whe that action was doing: ex.

Je fus malade hier *pendant deux heures,* I *was* ill *yester* for t hours.

La dernière fois *que nous* allâmes *le voir, nous* eûmes *un accueil favorable,*	The *last time* we *went* to see him, we *had* a kind reception.
Vous écrivîtes *à votre frère* il y a huit jours,	You *wrote* to your brother *eight days ago.*
Ils essuyèrent *de grandes pertes* l'année passée,	They *underwent* great losses *last year.*

FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come: ex.

Je vous verrai demain *à Londres,*	I *shall see* you *to-morrow* in London.
Mon frère vous écrira la semaine prochaine,	My brother *will write* to you *next week.*

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly, by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, to go, immediately followed by an infinitive: ex.

Je vais, or *je m'*en vais écrire *à ma tante,*	I *am going to write* to my aunt.
Je vais or *je m'*en vais partir,	I *am going to set out.*
Which signify,	
Je lui écrirai tout présentement,	I *will write* to her *immediately.*
Je partirai *dans l'instant,*	I *will set out* instantly.

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the verb *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply *obligation, necessity, &c.*: ex.

Le roi doit partir *pour Cheltenham vers le milieu du mois de Juillet, et ne* doit revenir *qu'à la fin du mois d'Août,*	The king *is to set out* for Cheltenham about the middle of July, and *is not to return* till the latter end of August.

That is,

On suppose que le roi partira, &c. *et qu'il ne* reviendra qu'à, &c.	It is supposed that the king *will set out*, &c. and *will not return till*, &c.

Conditional.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it; in fact, it is always used to express some *condition* or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present: ex.

Je lirois, *si j'avois des livres*,	I *should read*, if I had books.
Vous auriez *la fièvre, si vous mangiez de ce fruit*,	You *would have* a fever if you ate of that fruit.
Je serois *mortifié, s'il perdoit son procès*,	I *should be* mortified, if he should lose his law-suit.

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que:* ex.

Il a promis qu'*il* viendroit,	He has promised *to come*, or *that* he *would come*.

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it; and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it is very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Compound of the Present.

The compound of the present is employed in two different manners,

1. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate

time but not very far distant from the time we speak: thus we must say,

J'ai vu mademoiselle votre sœur et lui ai parlé,	I *have seen* your sister, and *spoken* to her.
Le roi de Prusse a conquis *la Silésie*,	The king of Prussia *has conquered* Silesia.
Cela s'est passé *avantageusement pour votre cousin*,	That *has passed* advantageously for your cousin.

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it passed is neither determined nor specified.

2. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse: ex.

Les fruits ont *très-bien* réussi *cette année*,	Fruits *have* very well *succeeded* this year.
*Nous n'*avons *pas* eu *beaucoup de neige cet hiver*,	We *have* not *had* much snow this winter.
Il a plu *toute cette semaine, tout ce mois*,	It *has rained* all this week, all this month.
Nous avons vu *d'étranges choses dans ce siècle*,	We *have seen* strange things in this century.

In the above sentences, *this year*, *this week*, *this winter*, &c. are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

Je viens de *le* voir passer,	I *have just seen* him *go by*.
Le roi vient d'arriver,	The king *is but just arrived*.
Elle vient d'expirer,	She *is but just dead*.

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne* and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de*: ex.

Il ne fait que d'*arriver*,	He *is but just* arrived.
Je ne fais que de *sortir*,	I *have but just* gone out.

B. This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, ut it, the expression would have quite another and would express a continuation or a frequent ation in the action : ex.

ne faites que *sortir*,	You *do nothing but* go out.
ne fait que *jouer et*	She *does nothing but* play
ıser,	and dance.

Compound of the Imperfect.

is tense expresses an action past before another ı is past also; but with this difference, that the ı expressed by this tense is the principal object of erson who speaks, and the following sentence is ·dinate to that expressed by the compound of the rfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate nce be defined, that of the principal sentence is not :ss indeterminate, because the former has no influon the latter. As when we say,

avions dîné *lorsqu'il*	We *had dined* when he
·iva,	arrived,

›rincipal object is to express the action of dining st, without determining at what time, but only be- an action which is past also, without, however, atter being a consequence of the former; for, we ot mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we lined, to arrive.

Compound of the Preterite.

›is tense also expresses an action past or done ·e another which is likewise past; and it is deterd by the following sentence, which is the principal :t of the attention. Thus when we say,

ıd ils eurent achevé	When they *had done* play-
jouer, ils se mirent à	ing they began singing.
anter,	

We mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and that it was not till they *had done playing:* in which case, the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions

Aussitôt que,	As soon as;	*Après que,*	After;
D'abord que,		*Lorsque,*	
Dès que,		*Quand,*	When;

which *never* precede a compound of the imperfect, unless the verb express *a custom* or *habit.*

Lastly, we must use the compound of the preterite when the adverb *bientôt* soon, precedes or follows the verb *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished: ex.

L'affaire fut bientôt *faite,*	The business *was soon* over.
J'eus bientôt *fini de manger,*	I *had soon* done eating.

Compound of the Future.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction: what is meant by it is, not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action, shall happen, or even before it happens: ex.

Je serai parti *quand vous reviendrez,*	I *shall be gone* when you (*shall*) come back.
Quand vous aurez fini *vos affaires, vous viendrez me trouver,*	When you (*shall*) *have done* your business, you shall come to find me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone* which is a *future time* with respect to the present we speak

in, will be a past time by the time you *will* or *purpose* to arrive, &c.

Compound *of the* Conditional.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional is accomplished and consequently in a past time: ex.

Je vous aurois écrit *il y a un mois, si j'*eusse su *votre adresse,*	I *would have written* to you a month ago, if I *had known* your direction.

The *indicative* mood has another tense, formed by the compound of the present of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses, on account of its being seldom used: ex.

*Quand j'*ai eu dîné, *je suis parti,*	When I (*have*) *had dined*, I set out.

But it is more elegant and natural to say,

Après avoir dîné, je suis parti,	After I had dined, I set out.

TENSES *of the* SUBJUNCTIVE *or* CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive or conjunctive has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense: ex.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	I do not think he *will come.*

Add the following observations to the latter:

1. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action passed in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood: ex.

Je souhaite *que vous* réussissiez *dans votre entreprise,*	I *wish* you *may succeed* in your undertaking.
*J'*attendrai *qu'il* vienne,	I *will wait* till he *come.*

2. When the verb which is before the conjunction is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to designate by the second verb a past time more distant than that of the first verb, we must put this second verb in the preterite of the subjunctive:

Alexandre ordonna *que tous ses sujets l'*adorassent *comme un dieu,*	Alexander *ordered*, that all his subjects *should worship* him like a god.
Je voulois *que vous* écrivissiez *à votre sœur,*	I *wished* you to *write* to your sister.
Il souhaiteroit *que vous* prissiez *des mesures plus convenables,*	He *would wish* you *to take* more becoming measures.

3. The compound of the present of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is generally the present, compound of the present, or future of the indicative: ex.

Je doute *qu'aucun philosophe* ait *jamais bien* connu *l'union de l'âme avec le corps,*	I *doubt* whether any philosopher *have* ever well *understood* the union of the soul with the body.
Il a fallu *que j'*aie consulté *tous les médecins,*	I *was obliged to consult* all the physicians.
Je n'aurai garde d'*y aller, que je n'*aie reçu *quelque assurance d'être bien accueilli,*	I *shall by no means* go thither, till I *have received* some assurance of being welcome.

4. After the imperfect, preterite, compound of the imperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive mood; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense: ex.

*J'*ignorois *que vous* eussiez embrassé *cette profession-là,*	I *did not know* you *had embraced* that profession.

*Vous n'*avez *pas* cru *que je* fusse arrivée *avant vous*,	You *did* not *believe* I *should have arrived* before you.
Nous aurions été *fâchés que vous vous* fussiez adressé *à d'autres qu'à nous*,	We *should have been* sorry if you *had applied* to any others but us.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons, has already been observed under the personal pronouns; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person: ex.

Je fais, I do.	*Nous faisons*, We do.
Tu fais, Thou dost.	*Vous faites*, You *or* ye do.
Il fait, He does.	*Ils font*, They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular: ex.

Vous êtes marié, and not *mariés*,	You are *married.*
Vous étiez général *de l'armée*, and not *généraux*,	You were *general* of the army.

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to many.

When *the verb* has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominatives, it must be put *in the plural*, though all these nominatives be in the singular; because *two* or *more* nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives and participles passive: ex.

Mon frère et ma sœur sont *partis*,	My brother and sister *are* gone.

This has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the fi
son and the other of the second, or one is of the
and the other of the third, the verb must agree
first in preference to the second, and with the
in preference to the third; observing that, in
the person spoken to, must be named first; and
son speaking is to be mentioned the last: v
therefore say,

C'est vous et moi qui avons *découvert tout ce complot,*	It is you and I w discovered all t
Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur qui avez *ouvert la porte,*	It is neither you sister who *have* the door.
Vous, mon père, et moi, partirons *demain,*	You, my father, ar *set out* to-morrov

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the l
tences, always takes place of the first or second
and only agrees with the others in number; it is
reason we must say,

C'est moi *qui* suis *cause de ce malheur,*	It is *I* who *am* th of that misfortur
C'est vous *qui* avez *révélé ce secret,*	It is *you* who *have* ed that secret.
Ce n'est ni lui *ni* moi *qui* l'avons *fait,*	It is neither *he* no *have* done it.

There are four conjugations in the French la
Each is distinguished by the termination of the
the infinitive mood.

The first makes	*er,*	as donn*er*, to give.
The second	*ir,*	as pun*ir*, to punish
The third	*evoir,*	as rec*evoir*, to rece
The fourth	*re,*	as rend*re*, to rende

N. B. It is necessary that the learner sh
well acquainted with the manner of conjugat
two following verbs, because of the frequency
occurrence in sentences, and in forming the co
tenses of all other verbs.

CONJUGATION *of the* AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the present.
Avoir, to have.	*Avoir eu*, to have had.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
Ayant, having.	*Ayant eu*, having had.
Participle passive.	
**Eu*, had.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.	Plural.
J'ai, I have.	*Nous avons*, we have.
Tu as, thou hast.	*Vous avez*, you *or* ye have.
Il a, he has.	*Ils ont*, } they have.
Elle a, she has.	*Elles ont*, }

Imperfect. Sing.	Plural.
J'avois, I had.	*Nous avions*, we had.
Tu avois, thou hadst.	*Vous aviez*, you had.
Il avoit, he had.	*Ils avoient*, they had.

Preterite. Sing.	Plural.
J'eus, I had.	*Nous eûmes*, we had.
Tu eus, thou hadst.	*Vous eûtes*, you had.
Il eut, he had.	*Ils eurent*, they had.

Future. Singular.

J'aurai, I shall *or* will have.
Tu auras, thou wilt, *&c.* have.
Il aura, he will, *&c.* have.

Plural.

Nous aurons, we shall, *&c.* have.
Vous aurez, you will, *&c.* have.
Ils auront, they will, *&c.* have.

Conditional. Singular.

J'aurois, I should, could, would, *or* might have.
Tu aurois, thou wouldst, *&c.* have.
Il auroit, he would, *&c.* have.

* Pronounce *eu* like the French letter *u*, throughout this verb.

Plural.

Nous aurions, we should, *&c.* have.
Vous auriez, you would, *&c.* have.
Ils auroient, they would, *&c.* have.

Compound Tenses.

They are formed by adding the participle pass had, to the preceding:

Compound of the Present.
J'ai eu, &c. I have had, *&c.*

Compound of the Imperfect.
J'avois eu, &c. I had had, *&c.*

Compound of the Preterite.
J'eus eu, &c. I had had, *&c.*

Compound of the Future.
J'aurai eu, &c. I will *or* shall have had, *&c.*

Compound of the Conditional.
J'aurois eu, &c. I would, should, could, *or* migh had, *&c.*

Imperative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Aie, have thou.
Qu'il ait, let him have.
Qu'elle ait, let her have.

Plural.

Ayons, let us have.
Ayez, have ye *or* you.
Qu'ils or *elles aient*, let them have.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present. Singular.

Que j'aie, that I have, *or* may have.
tu aies, thou mayest have.
il ait, he may have.

Plural.

Que nous ayons, that we may have.
vous ayez, you may have.
ils aient, they may have.

Preterite. Singular.

Que j'eusse, that I might have *or* had.
tu eusses, thou mightest have.
il eût, he might have.

Plural.

Que nous eussions, that we might have.
vous eussiez, you might have.
ils eussent, they might have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive *eu*, had, to the two preceding: ex.

Compound of the Present.
Que j'aie eu, &c. that I may have had.

Compound of the Preterite.
Que j'eusse eu, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation: ex.

Je n'*ai* pas, I have *not*;
Nous n'*avons* pas, We have *not*;

always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

CONJUGATION *of the* AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.
Etre, to be.

Participle active.
Etant, being.

Participle passive.
Eté, been.

Compound of the Present.
Avoir été, to have been.

Compound of the past.
Ayant été, having been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.	Plural.
Je suis, I am.	*Nous sommes*, we are.
Tu es, thou art.	*Vous êtes*, you are.
Il est, he is.	*Ils sont*, they are.
Imperfect. Sing.	**Plural.**
J'étois, I was.	*Nous étions*, we were.
Tu étois, thou wast.	*Vous étiez*, you were.
Il étoit, he was.	*Ils étoient*, they were.
Pret. Sing.	**Plural.**
Je fus, I was.	*Nous fûmes*, we were.
Tu fus, thou wast.	*Vous fûtes*, you were.
Il fut, he was.	*Ils furent*, they were.

Future. Singular.
Je serai, I shall *or* will be.
Tu seras, thou wilt, *&c.* be.
Il sera, he will, *&c.* be.

Plural.
Nous serons, we shall, *&c.* be.
Vous serez, you will, *&c.* be.
Ils seront, they will, *&c.* be.

Conditional. Singular.
Je serois, I would, could, should, *or* might be.
Tu serois, thou wouldst, *&c.* be.
Il seroit, he would, *&c.* be.

Plural.
Nous serions, we should, *&c.* be.
Vous seriez, you would, *&c.* be.
Ils seroient, they would, *&c.* be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Compound of the Present.
J'ai été, &c. I have been, *&c.*
Compound of the Imperfect.
J'avois été, &c. I had been, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus été, &c. I had been, *&c.*

Compound of the Future.

J'aurai été, &c. I shall *or* will have been, *&c.*

Compound of the Conditional.

J'aurois été, &c. I should, could, would, *or* might have been, *&c.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Sois, be thou.
Qu'il soit, let him be.

Plural.

Soyons, let us be.
Soyez, be ye.
Qu'ils soient, let them be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je sois, that I be, *or* may be.
tu sois, thou mayest be.
il soit, he may be.

Plural.

Que nous soyons, that we may be.
vous soyez, you may be.
ils soient, they may be.

Preterite. Singular.

Que je fusse, that I might be, *or* were.
tu fusses, thou mightest be.
il fût, he might be.

Plural.

Que nous fussions, that we might be.
vous fussiez, you might be.
ils fussent, they might be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Compound of the Present.

Que j'aie été, that I may have been, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

Que j'eusse été, &c. that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation: ex.

Je ne *suis* pas, I am *not.*
Nous ne *sommes* pas, We are *not.*

N. B. Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive verb;* that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one* which signifies *to possess.*

EXERCISES *on the two* AUXILIARY VERBS.

GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number;* but after collective nouns, such as *amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plûpart*, &c. followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in number: ex.

La plûpart de ses amis *l'ont abandonné,* Most of his *friends have* forsaken him.

In order to ease the learner, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being *seldom* or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book. - - - I am happy. - - - He has *heureux*,adj.
a hat which is too *trop*,adv. big. - - - - We have no *grand*,adj.
money. - - - - We are not ambitious. - - - - You have *argent.* *ambitieux*,adj.

a sword. -- You are very proud. - - - - Those girls
orgueilleux,adj.
have modesty ; they are virtuous.
modestie,f. *vertueux*,adj.

Imp. I had a friend. - - - I was grateful. - - - - - My
reconnoissant,adj.
sister had no work, she was lazy. - - - - We had
ouvrage, *paresseux*,adj.
a holiday, we were very glad of it. - - - You had
congé, *aise*,adj.
company, but you were not ready. - Your brothers
compagnie,f. *mais*,c. *prêt*,adj.
had learning, they were loved by every body.
savoir,m. *aimé*,p.p. *de*

Pret. (As soon as) I had a fine horse, I was
Dès que,c.
merry. - - - - - - My cousin had a little garden, he
de bonne humeur. *cousin*,m.
was ingenious. - - As soon as we had bread we
étoit adroit,adj. *pain*,m.
were satisfied. - - You had fine weather, you were
rassasié,p.p. *temps*
pleased. - - - - Your friends had beautiful flowers ;
content,adj.
they were very careful of them.
soigneux,adj.

Fut. I shall have discretion ; I shall be prudent.
discrétion,f.
- - Miss White shall have a bird which will be very
oiseau,m.
tame. - - - - We shall have no books, we shall not
apprivoisé,adj.
be learned. - - You shall have pens and paper ; you
savant,adj.
will be busy. - - - - - - The English will have a good
occupé,adj.
admiral ; they will be victorious.
amiral,m. *victorieux*,adj.

Cond. I could have a pretty dog. - - - I would
joli,adj. *chien*,m.

not be troublesome. - - - - Mr. Thomas would have
importun,adj.
good wine: it would be a delicious thing. - - We
ce *délicieux*,adj. *chose*,f.
would have a dictionary: we would not be negligent.
- - - - You would have good officers; you would be
invincible. - - - - These ladies would have a better
invincible,adj.
reception; they would be thankful.
accueil,m. *reconnoissant*,adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent.* - - - Let her have a
gown; let her be happy. - - Let us have at least
au moins, adv.
some gratitude; let us be diligent. - - - Let them
reconnoissance,f.
have partridges; let them be merry.
perdrix,f. *joyeux*,adj.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. - - - That I may
be charitable. - - - - That he may have scholars. - - - -
That he may be attentive. - - - - That we may have a
attentif,adj.
good house. - - - That we may be well lodged. - - -
bien,adv. *logé*,p.p.
That you may have your money; that you may
argent,m.
be paid. - - - - That they may have apples: that
payé,p.p.
they may be ripe.
mûr,adj.

PRET. That I might have generosity. - - - - That I
générosité,f.
might not be poor. - - - - - That he might have no
pauvre,adj.
pleasure. - - - That he might be uneasy. - - - - That
plaisir. *inquiet*,adj.
we might have our share. - - - That we might not
part,f.

* *Remember* the last observation, page 166, that the second *person plural must* be used throughout the imperative moods.

be deceived. - - - That you might have a couple
trompés.p.p. *couple*,f.
of fowls. - - - That you might be pleased. - - - That
content,adj.
they might have no pension. - - - That they might not be rewarded.
récompensés,p.p. —

Promiscuous EXERCISES *upon the* COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble; I have not
bien *peine*,f.
been rewarded. - - - Your brother would have had
leave, if he had been diligent. - - - If you had
permission,
married him, you would have had a tyrant
épousé,p.p. *tyran*,m.
instead of a husband; you never could have been
au lieu,p. *mari*,m. *ne jamais*
happy. - - - - If we had fought, we could not
combattu,p.p.
have been conquered. - - - Thomas has had two
vaincus,p.p.
holidays, because he has been very active. - - -
congé, *parceque*.c. *actif*,adj.
Your friend could have had a better watch, he
montre,f.
would not have been cheated. - - - Your uncle and
trompé,p.p.
my brother have been wet. - - - You could have
mouillés.p.p.
killed a hare, if you had had a gun.
tué,p.p. *lièvre*,m. *fusil*,m.

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative; *ex.*

SINGULAR.

Affirmatively.

Ai-je ?	have I ?	*Suis-je ?*	am I ?
A-t-il ?	has he ?	*Est-il ?*	is he ?
Mon frère a-t-il ?		has my brother ?	
Sa fille est-elle ?		is her daughter ?	

Negatively.

N'ai-je pas ?	have I not ?	*Ne suis-je pas ?*	am I not
N'a-t-il pas ?	has he not ?	*N'est-il pas ?*	is he not
Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?		has not my sister ?	
Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?		is not your cousin ?	

PLURAL.

Affirmatively

Avons-nous ?	have we ?	*Sommes-nous ?*	are we ?
Avez-vous ?	have you ?	*Etes-vous ?*	are you ?
Ont-ils ?	have they ?	*Sont-ils ?*	are they ?
Vos frères ont-ils ?		have your brothers ? &c.	
Ses filles sont-elles ?		are his daughters ? &c.	

Negatively.

N'avons-nous pas ?	have we not ?
N'avez-vous pas ?	have you not ?
N'ont-ils pas ?	have they not ?
Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?	have not his children ?
Ne sommes-nous pas ?	are we not ?
N'êtes-vous pas ?	are you not ?
Ne sont-ils pas ?	are they not ?
Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?	are not my sisters ? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed that when there is *a noun* standing as a nominative t the verb, the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elle* though not expressed in English, must be expressed i French immediately after the verb, according to th person and number ; and when the verb terminate with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added in the third perso

singular between the verb and the pronoun, to avoid the *hiatus*, the noun beginning the phrase: ex.

Votre oncle *a*-t-il *des enfans ?*	Has *your uncle* any children ?

that is, Your uncle, *has he* any children ?

Mon cousin *aura*-t-il *congé* ?	Will *my cousin* have a holiday ?

that is, My cousin, *will he have* a holiday ?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs: ex.

Votre frère *joue*-t-il *du violon ?*	Does *your brother* play on the violin ?
Sa sœur *dinera*-t-elle *ici aujourd'hui ?*	Will *her sister* dine here to-day ?

But if the sentence begin with *que* interrogative, or an *adverb* followed by a noun, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and that *noun* is to be put after the verb: ex.

Que *fait votre sœur ?*	*What* is your sister doing ?
Comment *se porte Monsieur votre frère ?*	*How* does your brother ?

When, in French, we make a general interrogation concerning a sudden *pain*, *misfortune*, *accident*, &c. we say,

Qu'est-ce que c'est ?	What is the matter ?

But if speaking *to* or *of* a person, we must use the verb *avoir*, and follow the above rule: ex.

Qu'avez-vous ?	What *is the matter with you ?*
Qu'a-t-il ?	What *is the matter with him ?*
Qu'aviez-vous ?	What *was the matter with you ?*
Qu'avoit *votre sœur ce matin ?*	What *was the matter with* your sister this morning ?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood; and as

for the compounds, it needs only to be *remembered*, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have: ex.

Ai-je eu? have I *had?*
N'ai-je pas eu? have I not *had?* &c.
Ai-je été? have I *been?*
N'ai-je pas été? have I not *been?* &c.

Promiscuous EXERCISES *on the preceding* RULES.

Have I my books? - - Am I not unhappy to
malheureux,adj. *de*
have lost his friendship? - - Has he no money?
perdu,p.p. *amitié*,f.
Is my sister arrived? - - Has not your father a great
arrivée,p.p.
deal of friendship for you? - - - What is the matter with you? - - Have not your parents sent you
envoyé,p.p.
all the money which you wanted? - - - - Have we
dont *aviez*,v. *besoin.*
not a garden? - - - Are we not very happy? - - - -
Have you a good gun? - - - Are you dexterous? - -
adroit,adj.
Have not my brother and sister a beautiful coach? - -
Are not Paul and Thomas two pretty children? - -
joli,adj.
Are your brothers arrived? - - - Are you not glad to see them? - - What is the matter with him?
de voir,v.
Have they not spoken to him? - - Had you not a
parlé,p.p.
little dog? - - Was not your paper very good? - - Are not the English ladies generally handsomer than
généralement,adv.
the French? - - Shall you have occasion for your dic-
besoin,m. *de*
tionary? - - - - Shall I not have the pleasure to see
de

you to-morrow? - - - Were you not in the room? - - -
demain,adv. *chambre*,f.
Shall we not have leave? - - - - - Will they not be angry? - - - Could you not have had a better watch?
fâché,adj.
- - - - If France were as rich as England, would
Si,c *étoit*
it not be the best* country in the world? - - -
ce,pro.
Will you not be ashamed? - - - - - Has not your
honteux,adj.
friend had bad weather? - - - What was the
mauvais,adj. *temps?*
matter with him this morning? - - - - Had not our admiral better seamen than yours? - - Has he been
matelot
victorious? - - Would not your hat be too big? - - - -
victorieux,adj. *grand*,adj.
Is not your sister older than mine? - - Are you
âgé,adj.
not happier than if you were married? - - - - Shall
marié,p.p.
not John have a holiday, if he be diligent - - Has not
Jean *est*
your cousin more money than you? - - Was not your wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it is to know these two verbs perfectly well; because, independently of being constantly used, the compound tenses of all the others are formed with them. When he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have to add the participle passive to any of their tenses: ex.

J'ai aimé, I have loved, *or* did love.
Je n'ai pas chanté, I have not sung, *or* did not sing.
Ai-je parlé? have I spoken? *or* did I speak?

* See the Degrees of Comparison, p. 60, &c.

N'ai-je pas étudié? have I not studied? *or* did I no study.
Avez-vous dansé? have you danced? or did you dance
N'avez-vous pas écrit? have you not written? or did yo not write?
Je suis puni, I am punished.
Je ne suis pas attendu, I am not expected.
Suis-je aimé? am I loved?
Ne suis-je pas perdu? am I not undone?
Etes-vous marié? are you married?
N'êtes-vous pas convaincu? are you not convinced?

REMARK *on the Verb ETRE*, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precede any noun, signifying *old*, *hungry*, *thirsty*, *cold*, *hot*, o *afraid*, it should be rendered in French by *avoir*, t have, and the adjective must be changed into its sub stantive: ex.

Quel âge avez-*vous?*	How *old* are you?
*J'*ai *sept ans*,	I *am* seven years old.
Avez-*vous* faim?	*Are* you *hungry*.
*Non, mais j'*ai soif,	No, but I *am thirsty*, *&c.*

EXERCISES.

How old is your daughter? She is sever
Quel,pro. *fille*,f.
years old. - - - My son will be eleven years old
an,m. *fils*,m.
(in the) month of April. - - - - - I was very
au mois,m. *Avril*. *grand*,adj.
hungry when I arrived. - - - - Were you not
quand,c. *suis arrivé*,p.p.
very thirsty? - - He is not afraid. - - You will
grand,adj. *peur*.
soon be warm. - - - - Are you not cold? - - - -
bientôt,adv. *chaud*. *froid*.
How old are these two young children? The
enfant,m.

one is three years old, and the other is not yet
encore,adv.
four. - - - - Was not my sister more than ten years old
when she died ?
quand,adv. *mourut*,v.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	Parl-*er*, to speak.
Participle active.	**ant*, speaking.
Participle passive.	*é*,m. *ée*,f. spoken.

Compound Tenses.

Present.	*Avoir parlé*, to have spoken.
Past.	*Ayant parlé*, having spoken.

Indicative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Je parl-*e*, I speak, *or* I do speak, *or* I am speaking.†
Tu *es*, thou speakest.
Il *e*, he speaks.

Plural.

Nous **ons*, we speak.
Vous *ez*, you speak.
Ils *ent*, they speak.

* Verbs in this conjugation, the root of which terminates in G or C, immediately succeeded by A or O, require, for the softening of their sound, that an E be added to the G, and a cedilla to the Ç. Stars are placed where these alterations are required.

† When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of the action, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed:

Je parle, I *am* speaking;	*Je priois*, I *was* desiring;
Vous parlez, you *are* speaking;	*Nous chantions*, we *were* singing;
Nous danserons, we *shall be* dancing;	*Ils écriroient*, they *would be* writing;

and not *Je* suis *parlant*, *vous* êtes *parlant*, j'étois *priant*, &c. *nous* serons *dansant*, *ils* seroient *écrivant*, &c.

Imperfect. Singular.

*Je parl-*ois*, I was speaking, spoke, *or* did speak.
Tu **ois*, thou wast speaking, &c.
Il **oit*, he was speaking, &c.

Plural.

Nous *ions*, we were speaking, &c.
Vous *iez*, you were speaking, &c.
Ils **oient*, they were speaking, &c.

Preterite. Singular.

Je parl-**ai*, I spoke, *or* did speak.
Tu **as*, thou spokest.
Il **a*, he spoke.

Plural.

Nous **âmes*, we spoke.
Vous **âtes*, you spoke.
Ils *èrent*, they spoke.

Future. Singular.

Je parl-*erai*, I shall *or* will speak.
Tu *eras*, thou shalt *or* wilt speak.
Il *era*, he shall *or* will speak.

Plural.

Nous *erons*, we shall *or* will speak.
Vous *erez*, you shall *or* will speak.
Ils *eront*, they shall *or* will speak.

Conditional. Singular.

Je parl-*erois*, I should, would, *or* might speak.
Tu *erois*, thou shouldst, *&c.* speak.
Il *eroit*, he should, *&c.* speak.

Plural.

Nous *erions*, we should, *&c.* speak.
Vous *eriez*, you should, *&c.* speak.
Ils *eroient*, they should, *&c.* speak.

Compound Tenses.

Present.	*J'ai parlé*,	I have spoken.
Imperfect.	*J'avois parlé*,	I had spoken.
Preterite.	*J'eus parlé*,	I had spoken.

Future. *J'aurai parlé*, I shall *or* will have spoken.
Conditional. *J'aurois parlé*, I should, would, could, have spoken.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Parl-*e*, speak thou.
Qu'il ..*e*, let him speak.

Plural.

..**ons*, let us speak.
..*ez*, speak ye.
Qu'ils *ent*, let them speak.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je parl-*e*, that I may speak, *or* I speak.
tu *es*, thou mayest speak.
il *e*, he may speak.

Plural.

nous *ions*, that we may speak.
vous *iez*, you may speak.
ils *ent*, they may speak.

Preterite. Singular.

Que je parl-**asse*, that I might speak, *or* I spoke.
tu **asses*, thou mightest speak.
il **ât*, he might speak.

Plural.

nous **assions*, that we might speak.
vous **assiez*, you might speak.
ils **assent*, they might speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.
Preterite. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted: viz.

Aller, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

Envoyer is only irregular in the future and conditional present; as, instead of saying *j'envoyerai*, I will send, *&c. j'envoyerois*, I would send, *&c.* according to this conjugation, we say,

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
J'enverrai, I will send.	*Nous enverrons.*
Tu enverras,	*Vous enverrez.*
Il enverra,	*Ils enverront.*

Conditional.

Singular.	Plural.
J'enverrois, I would send.	*Nous enverrions.*
Tu enverrois,	*Vous enverriez.*
Il enverroit,	*Ils enverroient.*

PUER (*sentir mauvais.*) This verb is only used in the infinitive mood, present tense, imperfect, future of the indicative, and conditional. Formerly this verb was irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood; as *je pus, tu pus, il put;* custom has, however, reformed the abuse, and will have it, *Je pue, tu pues, il pue.*

Verbs ending in AYER and OYER, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to send, change the Y into I wherever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute: ex. *j'essaie, tu essaies, il essaie, j'envoie, tu envoies, il envoie*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb *affirmatively* and *negatively*, ought to conjugate two others, with an *interrogation affirmative* and *negative*, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he attempts the exercises: ex.

Affirmatively.

Manges-tu? dost thou eat?
Mange-t-il? does he eat?
Parlons-nous? do we speak, &c.

Negatively.

Ne parlé-je pas? do I not speak?
Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas? does not my sister sing.

N. B. In many verbs, common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular, present, of

the indicative mood.—Instead of saying, *Mangé-je?* Do I eat? *Punis-je?* Do I punish? &c. we say,

Est-ce que *je mange?* Est-ce que *je punis?* &c.

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute, in the first person singular, present of the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it; as *parlé-je.*

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively: ex.

Affirmatively.

J'ai dansé, I have danced, *or* I did dance.

Negatively.

Je n'ai pas parlé, I have not spoken, *or* I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

Avez-vous chanté? Have you sung, *or* did you sing?

Interrogatively-negatively.

N'a-t-il pas mangé? Has he not eaten, *or* did he not eat? Observe, that we make use of

Mener,	To take, to carry,
Amener,	To bring,
Emmener,	To carry, *or* take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, if they be not deprived of it through illness or accident: in all other cases we make use of

Porter,	To carry, to take,
Apporter,	To bring,
Emporter,	To carry, *or* take away,

and all the compounds of *porter.*

N. B. It must be necessarily observed here, previously to the learner's translating the following exercises, that the *English auxiliary* verbs, *have*, *am*, *do*, *did*, *will*, *shall*, *can*, *let*, *may*, *would*, *could*, *should*, *might*, and often *ought*, are most commonly used, in that language, to

avoid that repetition of a preceding verb, or in answer to a question or foregoing sentence; to avoid the repetition of that verb, and often of one or more pronouns; but in French, the verb, expressed in the first member, or part of the sentence, must always be repeated, as well as the pronouns which it may govern: ex.

Je vous prie de porter demain cette lettre à Monsieur D.	I beg of you to carry that letter to-morrow to Mr. D.
Je la lui porterai avec plaisir,	I will, with pleasure, (*carry it to him,*) understood.
Vous ne pourriez pas apprendre cette leçon en dix jours,	You could not learn that lesson in ten days.
Il me semble que je pourrois l'apprendre,	It seems to me as if I could, (*learn it.*) understood.
Attendez-vous vos sœurs aujourd'hui?	Do you expect your sisters to-day?
Oui, nous les attendons,	Yes, we do, (*expect them,*) understood.
Votre frère écrit-il à M. votre père?	Is your brother writing to your father?
Oui, il lui écrit à présent,	Yes, he is now, (*writing to him,*) understood.
Apprenez-vous le François?	Are you learning French?
Oui, je l'apprends,	Yes, I am, (*learning it,*) understood.
Avez-vous acheté les livres dont vous m'avez parlé?	Have you bought the books which you mentioned to me?
Non, je ne les ai pas encore achetés,	No, I have not yet, (*bought them,*) understood.
Ne devroient-ils pas faire savoir à leur père que leur frère est dans la détresse?	Ought they not to let their father know that their brother is in distress?
Certainement, ils devroient le lui faire savoir,	Certainly, they ought, (*to let him know it,*) understood.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. I play sometimes, but I ne-
jou-er,v. *quelquefois*,adv. *mais*,c. *ne ja-*
r win. - - - - How much does your brother
ais,adv. *gagn-er*,v. *Combien*,adv. ∽
ve for his board? - - We do not command;
nn-er,v. *pension*,f. ∽ *command-er*,v.
e entreat. - - You always borrow; you
pri-er,v. *toujours*,adv. *emprunt-er*,v.
ver lend. - - - You are always speaking when
prêt-er,v. *quand*,adv.
write. - - - - Why do you not grant
écris,v. *Pourquoi*,adv. ∽ *accord-er*,v.
m that favour? - - - What do they ask
grâce,f. *demand-er*,v.
ou?

Imp. I was desiring them to sing a song. - -
pri-er,v. *de chant-er*,v. *chanson*,f.
ne was not speaking to you. - - Were we not jok-
badi-
g? - - Were you not scolding them when I came?
er,v. *grond-er*,v. *vins*,v.
es, I was. - - - They were eating fish.
mang-er,v. *poisson*,m.

Pret. I spoke to them (a long while). - - - Did
long-tems,adv.
t the king forgive them? - - No, he did not.
roi,m. *pardonn-er*,v.
e wept for joy when we found her. - - -
pleur-er,v. *de joie* *trouv-er*,v.
hy did you not play on Friday last? - - - They
∽ *Vendredi* *dernier*,adj.
tened the man to a tree, and then
r,v. *arbre*,m. *ensuite*,adv.
bbed him of his watch, gold ring, and all the
-er,v. ∽ *montre*,f. *bague*,f.
ney he had in his pocket. - - The soldiers first
poche,f. *d'abord*,adv.

pillaged the town, and then slaughtered without
pill-er,v. *puis égorg-er*,v.
pity the old men, women, and children.
pitié *vieillard*,m.

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I
achet-er,v. *fois*,f.
go to London. -- Will not your father send
irai,v. *envoy-er*,v.
you to school this winter? ---- What shall we give
école,f. *hiver*,m.
him? --- Will you not carry the children to the
men-er,v. *enfant*,m.
play? ---- They will empty the bottle if you
comédie,f. *vid-er*,v. *bouteille*,f.
do not take it away.
emport-er,v.

COND. I would lend them money if
prêt-er,v. *leur*
they were not so idle. ----- Would not your
paresseux,adj.
mother despise such[2] a[1] conduct? -- Why should
mépris-er,v. *tel*,adj. *conduite*,f.
we send them thither? --- I am sure you would
sûr,adj.
marry her, if she were rich. --- Would they
épous-er,v. *etoit riche*,adj.
not pay us, if they had money?
pay-er,v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to
Brid-er,v. *cheval*,m. *amen-er*,v.
me. --- Give a chair to that lady. -- Let her not
chaise,f. *dame*,f.
(come up,) for I am engaged. ---- Let us carry those
mont-er,v. *car*,c. *occupé*,p.p.
peaches to Mrs. D***. --- Do not neglect your
pêche,f. *Mme* *néglig-er*,v.

affairs. - - I promise that I will not. - Let them hunt.
affaire,f. *promets*,v. *chasser*,v.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. - - - Though* he
aid-er,v. *Quoique*,c.
do not approve of my plan. - - - - - Provided*
approuv-er,v. *plan*,m. *Pourvu que*,c.
we avoid their company. - - - - That you may
évit-er,v.. *compagnie*,f.
try that gun. - - - That they may not com-
éprouv-er,v.
mand.

PRET. That I might change† my opinion. - -
chang-er, *d' opinion.*
That he might eat† an apple. - - - - -That we might not
pomme,f.
fall into their hands. - - - That you might
tomb-er,v. *dans*,p. *main.*
encourage† the industrious. - - - - That they might
encourag-er,v. *industrieux*,adj.
exercise their talents. - - - That I might pronounce† - -
exerc-er,†v. *talent*,m. *prononc-er*,v.
That we might begin.†
commenc-er,v.

Promiscuous EXERCISES *on the* COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. - - - -
oubli-er,v. *de* *canif*,m.
He has not yet spoken to us. - - Has she brought
encore,adv.
her work with her? Yes, she has. - - Have we not gain-
gagn-
ed our cause? - - Why have you not yet begun
er,v. *commenc-er*,v.
your exercise? - - - You had taken the mustard
thème,m. *emport-er*,v. *moutarde*,f.

* Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood, as will be seen hereafter; See page 420.
† See the notes page 175.

away. - - - - You would have judged more favour-
ably of him. - Stay here till* we have dined. - - - - - Could we not have assisted that family? - - They have broken all the panes of glass in their windows, because they had not illuminated as it had been ordered. - - - I shall have [2]dined [1]soon. - - - - We would have sent† them to prison, if they had resisted. - - - That we may have denied the fact. - - - - Had you not imitated their manners? - - - They had not executed his commands. - - - - - - Had I not lighted the fire? - - - They would have carried him to the concert if I had not hindered† them (from it). - - - We might have accepted of his offers. - - Why did you not?

juger,v. *favorablement*,adv. *Rester*,v. *ici*,adv. *jusqu' à ce que*,c. *dîner*,v.subj. *aider*,v. *famille*,f. *casser*,v. *carreau*,m. *vitre de*,p. *fenêtre*,f. *parceque*,c. *illuminer*,v. *comme*,adv. *ordonner*,v. *bientôt*,adv. *envoyer*,v. *en prison*,f. *résister*,v. *nier*,v. *fait*,m. *imiter*,v. *manière*,f. *exécuter*,v. *commandement*,m. *allumer*,v. *feu*,m. *empêcher*,v. *en* *accepter*,v. *offre*,f.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	Pun-*ir*, to punish.
Participle active.	*issant*, punishing.
Participle passive.	*i*,m. *ie*,f. punished.

Compound Tenses.

Present.	*Avoir puni*, to have punished.
Past.	*Ayant puni*, having punished.

† For the agreement of these, see the rules on participles, p. 346, 348.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je pun-*is*, I punish, I do punish, *or* I am punishing.
Tu *is*,
Il *it*,

Plural.

Nous *issons*, we punish, &c.
Vous *issez*,
Ils *issent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je pun-*issois*, I did punish, *or* I was punishing, &c.
Tu *issois*,
Il *issoit*,

Plural.

Nous *issions*, we did punish, &c.
Vous *issiez*,
Ils *issoient*,

Preterite. Singular.

Je pun-*is*, I punished, *or* I did punish.
Tu *is*,
Il *it*,

Plural.

Nous *îmes*, we punished, &c.
Vous *îtes*,
Ils *irent*,

Future. Singular.

Je pun-*irai*, I shall *or* will punish.
Tu *iras*,
Il *ira*,

Plural.

Nous *irons*, we shall *or* will punish.
Vous *irez*,
Ils *iront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je pun-*irois*, I should, would, could, *or* might punish.
Tu *irois*,
Il *iroit*,

Plural.

Nous *irions*, we should, *&c.* punish.
Vous *iriez*,
Ils *iroient*,

Compound Tenses.

Present. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.
Imperfect. *J'avois puni*, I had punished.
Preterite. *J'eus puni*, I had punished.
Future. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.
Conditional. *J'aurois puni*, I should, &c. have punished.

Imperative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Pun-*is*, punish thou.
Qu'il *isse*, let him punish.

Plural.

issons, let us punish.
issez, punish ye.
Qu'ils *issent*, let them punish.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present. Singular.

Que je pun-*isse*, that I may punish, *or* I punish.
tu *isses*,
il *isse*,

Plural.

nous *issions*, that we may punish.
vous *issiez*,
ils *issent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je pun-*isse*, that I might punish, *or* I punished.
tu *isses*,
il *ît*,

Plural.

nous *issions*, that we might punish.
vous *issiez*,
ils *issent*,

Compound Tenses.

Present. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.
Preterite. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about two hundred regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular:

Acquérir, to acquire.
Assaillir, to assault.
Bouillir, to boil.
Courir, to run.
Cueillir, to gather.
Dormir, to sleep.
Faillir, to fail.
Fuir, to flee, to avoid.
Mentir, to lie.
Mourir, to die.
Offrir, to offer.
Ouvrir, to open.
Partir, to set out.
Se repentir, to repent.
Sentir, to smell.
Servir, to serve.
Sortir, to go out.
Souffrir, to suffer.
Tenir, to hold.
Venir, to come.
Vêtir, to clothe.
And their compounds.

EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. I always finish my work
toujours,adv. *fin-ir*,v. *ouvrage*,m.
before the others. - - - Your friend does not succeed
avant,p. *ami*,m. *réuss-ir*,v.
in his undertaking. - - Do we not furnish arms
dans,p. *entreprise*,f. *fourn-ir*,v. *arme*,f.
against ourselves? - - Why do you hate him? - - -
contre,p. *ha-ïr*,v.

They cure the diseases of the body, and
guér-ir,v. *maladie*,f. *corps*,m.
not those of the mind.

Imp. I was building my house when
bât-ir,v. *maison*,f. *quand*,adv.
you demolished yours. - - - Was he not enjoying
démol-ir,v. *jou-ir de*,v.
a good estate? - - - We hated him, because he did
bien,m. *parceque*,c.
not act kindly towards us. - - - On
ag-ir,v. *honnêtement*,adv. *envers*,p. *Sur*,p.
what were you reflecting? - - The mountains were
réfléch-ir,v. *montagne*,f.
resounding with their cries.
retent-ir,v. *de* *cri*,m.

Pret. I warranted them very good. - - - Did not
garant-ir,v.
your master accomplish his promise? - - We (leap-
accompl-ir,v. *promesse*,f. *fran-*
ed over) the ditch, and seized the guilty. - - - -
chir,v. *fossé*,m. *sais-ir*,v. *coupable*,adj.
Why did you not applaud that pretty act-
applaud-ir,v. *à* *joli*,adj. *ac-*
ress? I did, with all my might. - - - Did not the sol-
trice,f. *de*,p. *forces*,f.pl. *sol-*
diers obey the commands of their gene-
dat,m. *obé-ir*,v. *aux commandement*,m.
ral?

Fut. When shall I banish all these
bann-ir,v. *tout*,adj.
thoughts from my mind? - - This plant will soon
pensée,f. *plante*,f.
blossom, if you water it often. - - - - We shall
fleur-ir,v. *arroser*,v. *souvent*,adv.
warn your relations of it. - - - - Shall you not
avert-ir,v. *parent*,m.
enjoy, as we do, the pure plea-
jouir *comme*,adv. *des pur*,adj.

sures of the country? - - Her children will bless
bén-ir,v.
her for it.

Cond. I would choose this cloth, if I
chois-ir,v. *drap*,m.
were in your place. - - - Would he not blush, if he
à *roug-ir*,v.
acted so? - - - - - We would not punish them, if they
ainsi,adv.
were diligent. - - Would you not act with less
avec,p. *moins*,adv.
severity? - - - - They could furnish us with arms and
sévérité?
troops, if we wanted any. (*write*, if we had need
troupe,f. *avoir besoin*,v.
(of any.)
en.

Imperative Mood.

Do not fill the glasses. - - - - Let him enjoy
rempl-ir,v. *verre*,m.
the fruit of his labours. - - Well! let him, I do not
du *travail*,m. *Eh bien*,int.
hinder him from it. - - - Let us reflect on what we
empêch-er,v. *à*
have to do. - - - Let them define the question.
à faire,v. *défin-ir*,v.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. That I may not perish. - - - I wish
pér-ir,v. *souhait-er*,v.
he may succeed. - - - - That we may not (bear hard-
réuss-ir,v. *pât-ir*,v.
ships). - That you may not hate us. - - - Provided they
do not (grow tall.)
grand-ir,v.

Pret. That I might refresh my memory. - - -
rafraîch-ir,v. *mémoire*,f.

That she might not roast the meat. -- That we might
rôt-ir,v.
(become younger). - - - That you might punish the
rajeun-ir,v.
idle. - - - That they might not (grow old).
vieill ir,v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. - - -
rempl-ir,v. *cave*,f. *de*
Has he not (leaped over) the ditch? -- We had finished
our work. - - - - They would have seized him. - - - - -
ouvrage,m.
We should have perished without any assistance. - -
sans,p. *aucun secours*.
When shall I have built my house? - - I have
bât-ir,v.
(very much) weakened his courage. - - Though
beaucoup,adv. *affoibl-ir*,v. *Quoique*,c.
they have adorned their gardens to dazzle
aient, *embell-ir*,v. *jardin*,m. *pour éblou-ir*,v.
the vulgar, they have not succeeded, because
vulgaire,m. *réuss-ir*,v. *parceque*,c.
they have disobeyed their father and mother.
désobé-ir,v. *à*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Rec-*evoir*, to receive.
Part. active.	*evant*, receiving.
Part. pass.	**u*,m. *ue*,f. received.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	*Avoir reçu*, to have received.
Past.	*Ayant reçu*, having received.

* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in c, require for the softening of their sound, that a cedilla be added to the c, so (ç) whenever it is followed by o or u.

Indicative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Je reç-*ois*, I receive, I do receive, *or* I am receiving.
Tu *ois*,
Il *oit*,

Plural.

Nous *evons*, we receive, *&c.*
Vous *evez*,
Ils *oivent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je rec-*evois*, I did receive, *or* I was receiving.
Tu *evois*,
Il *evoit*,

Plural.

Nous *evions*, we did receive, *&c.*
Vous *eviez*,
Ils *evoient*,

Preterite. Singular.

Je reç-*us*, I received, *or* I did receive.
Tu *us*,
Il *ut*,

Plural.

Nous *ûmes*, we received, *&c.*
Vous *ûtes*,
Ils *urent*,

Future. Singular.

Je rec-*evrai*, I shall *or* will receive.
Tu *evras*,
Il *evra*,

Plural.

Nous *evrons*, we shall *or* will receive.
Vous *evrez*,
Ils *evront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je rec-*evrois*, I should, would, could, *or* might recei
Tu *evrois*,
Il *evroit*,

Plural.

Nous *evrions*, we should, &c. receive.
Vous *evriez*,
Ils *evroient*,

Compound Tenses.

Present. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.
Imperfect. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.
Preterite. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.
Future. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have receive
Conditional. *J'aurois reçu*, I should, &c. have recei

Imperative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Reç-*ois*, receive thou.
Qu'il *oive*, let him receive.

Plural.

evons, let us receive.
evez, receive ye.
Qu'ils *oivent*, let them receive.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present. Singular.

Que je reç-*oive*, that I may receive *or* I receive.
tu *oives*,
il *oive*,

Plural.

nous *evions*, that we may receive.
vous *eviez*,
ils *oivent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que *je* reç-*usse*, that I might receive, *or* I received.
tu *usses*,
il *ût*,

Plural.

nous *ussions*, that we might receive.
vous *ussiez*,
ils *ussent*,

Compound Tenses.

Present. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have received.
Preterite. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received.
Recevoir des nouvelles de quelqu'un, To hear from somebody.

After the same manner are conjugated seven verbs only: the following are excepted, being irregulars:

Asseoir, to sit down.	*Pouvoir*, to be able.
Déchoir, to decay.	*Savoir*, to know.
Falloir, (verb impersonal,) to be needful.	*Valoir*, to be worth.
Mouvoir, to move.	*Voir*, to see.
Pleuvoir, (v. imp.) to rain.	*Vouloir*, to be willing.
	And their compounds.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. I entertain great hopes from his
conc-evoir,v. *espérance*,f.
conduct. - - - I (am to) write to your brother to-
conduite,f. * *écrire*,v.
morrow, to let him know that your father is
pour faire,v. *lui savoir*,v.
arrived. - - - A commander (ought to,) be intrepid
commandant,m. *d-evoir*,v.*

* When the verb *to be to*, is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *d-evoir*, and not by *être*: ex.

Je dois *aller au parc*, I *am to* go to the park.
Nous devions *lui écrire*, We *were to* write to him.

in the midst of dangers. - - - - He (is to) go
au milieu,m. f. *aller*
and breakfast at my uncle's, next Sunda
⌒ *déjeûner*,v. *chez*,p. ⌒
and he (is to) come and sup with us. - - - W
venir,v. ⌒ *souper*,v.
*sometimes entertain a hatred for persons wh
quelquefois,adv. *de la haine*,f.
deserve our friendship. - - - - Do you not pe
mériter,v. *amitié*,f.
ceive a mountain beyond that tree? - - Ye
perc-evoir,v. *derrière*,p.
I do. - - We (are to) remit him the value in
remettre,v. *valeur*,f. *en*,
goods or in money. - - - Are you not to din
marchandises
with my father and mother to-morrow? - - Men com
demain,adv.
monly owe their virtues or their vices to edu
d-evoir,v.
cation (as much as) to nature. - - - - Are these your
autant que,c. f.
ladies to go to the ball? - - - No, they are not. -
aller,v. *bal*,m.
A young man (ought to) love the society of those wh
société,f.
are the most learned and modest.

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when s
guinée
died. - - - Was not your brother to receive that m
mourut,v.
ney last[2] Thursday[1]? - - We received his tiresome
Jeudi,m. *ennuyant*,a
visits, because we were obliged to it. - - - Were y
obliger,v.
not to let[3] them[2] know[4] it[1] sooner? - - They we
faire,v. *savoir*,v.
not to stay above six weeks.
rester,v. *plus de*,adv.

* See note page 32, and remember to place compound adve
after the participles passive.

PRES. I received yesterday, with (a great deal) *bien*,adv.
of pleasure, the books you sent me. - - As soon *envoyer*,v.
as we perceived the danger, we warned him of it.
aperc-evoir *avertir*,v.
- - They heard* yesterday from your brother.

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of *conc-evoir* *mauvais*,adj. f.
you if you do not avoid Mr. R****'s company. - - - *éviter*,v.
We shall owe him [2]nothing [1]more, after this *après*,p.
month. - - - I hope you will receive all my letters dur- *pen-*
ing my absence, and they will hear* from their *ant*,p.
other (in a short time.)
dans peu,adv.

COND. I should answer your brother's † *répondre*,v. *à*
letter, but I have not time. - - - - Ought not *le tems*,m. †
your sister to give your[2] mother[3] (an account[1]) *rendre*,v. *compte à*,p.
of all her actions? - - - She would soon per- *bientôt*,adv.

* See the phrase following the verb *recevoir*.

† When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned into *ought to*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*: ex.

Je devrois *aller le voir*,	I *should*, or *ought to* go and see him.
Vous devriez *le secourir dans sa misère*, &c.	You *should*, or *ought to* help him in his misery, &c.

The word *should*, or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the additional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned to the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

J'aurois dû *l'obliger à rester ici*,	I *should*, or *ought to have* obliged him to stay here.
Nous aurions dû *revenir plutôt*,	We *should*, or *ought to have* come back sooner.

ceive the danger, if she knew the consequence
savoit,v.
of it. - - - - Children should every day learn
apprendre,v.
something by heart. - - - You should not despise
cœur,m. *mépriser*.v.
the advice that he gives you. - - - - Should they
avis,m.
after what they have done, expect t
après,p. *fait*,p.p. *s'attendre*,v.
receive favours? - - - Grammar, geography, history
music, are sciences and arts which ladies should neve
neglect.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of
marque,f.
friendship.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. *and* PRET. Though I perceive ships
Quoique,c. *vaisseau*,m
(afar off.) I cannot distinguish them. - - - H
de loin,adv. *ne saurois*,v.
wrote to us by the first post, so that we mig
écrivit,v. *ordinaire*,m. *afin que*,c.
receive his orders (in proper time.)
à tems,adv.

Mind these COMPOUND TENSES well!

I have not yet received his answer. - -
encore,adv. *réponse*,f.
You should have (been making) your theme th
* *faire*,v.
morning instead of playing. - - He has entertain
matin,m. *au lieu*,p.
the hope of living here all his life. - - - She oug
vivre,v. *ici*,adv. *vie*,f. *
'o have thanked him for the good advice
remercier,v. *de*,p.

* See the note page 195.

are her. - - - When did you hear from your sister? We have not heard from her since her de-
depuis,p. *dé-*
parture. - - - Your uncle should not have obliged
part,m. *oncle*,m. *
him to pay half the expenses. - - - We should
à *moitié*,f. *des frais*,m.
have owed him one hundred livres. - - I beg[2]
livre,f. *demander*,v.
your[1] pardon, I ought not to have made you
vous * *faire*,v.
wait so long. - - - - Ought not we to have
attendre,v. *long-tems*,adv. *
employed our time better than (we did.) - - - -
employer,v. *nous n'avons fait*
You ought to have been less presumptuous.
* *présomptueux*,adj.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	Vend-*re*, to sell.
Part. active.	*ant*, selling.
Part. passive.	*u*,m. *ue*,f. sold.

Indicative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Je vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, *or* am selling.
Tu vend-*s*,
Ils vend,

Plural.

Nous *ons*, we sell, *&c.*
Vous *ez*,
Ils *ent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je vend-*ois*, I did sell, *or* was selling
Tu *ois*,
Il *oit*,

Plural.

Nous vend-*ions*, we did sell, *&c.*
Vous *iez*,
Ils *oient*,

Preterite. Singular.

Je vend-*is*, I sold, *or* did sell.
Tu *is*,
Il *it*,

Plural.

Nous *îmes*, we sold, *&c.*
Vous *îtes*,
Ils *irent*,

Future. Singular.

Je vend-*rai*, I shall, *or* will sell.
Tu *ras*,
Il *ra*,

Plural.

Nous *rons*, we shall, *or* will sell.
Vous *rez*,
Ils *ront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je vend-*rois*, I should, could, would, *or* might sell.
Tu *rois*,
Il *roit*,

Plural.

Nous *rions*, we should, *&c.*
Vous *riez*,
Ils *roient*,

Compound Tenses.

Present.	*J'ai vendu*, I have sold.
Imperfect.	*J'avois vendu*, I had sold.
Preterite.	*J'eus vendu*, I had sold.
Future.	*J'aurai vendu*, I shall, *&c.* have sold.
Conditional.	*J'aurois vendu*, I should, *&c.* have sold

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Vend-*s*, sell thou.
Qu'il *e*, let him sell.

Plural.

ons, let us sell.
ez, sell ye.
Qu'ils *ent*, let them sell.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je vend-*e*, that I may sell, *or* I sell.
tu *es*,
il *e*,

Plural.

nous *ions*, that we may sell.
vous *iez*,
ils *ent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je vend-*isse*, that I might sell, *or* I sold.
tu *isses*,
il *ît*,

Plural.

nous *issions*, that we might sell.
vous *issiez*,
ils *issent*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

resent. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.
reterite. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about forty rbs. The following are excepted as being irregular.

Absoudre, to absolve.	*Boire*, to drink.
Battre, to beat.	*Circoncire*, to circumcise.

Conclure, to conclude.
Conduire, to conduct.
And all the verbs ending in *uire*.
Confire, to preserve.
Connoître, to know.
And all those ending in *oître*.
Coudre, to sew.
Craindre, to fear.
And all those ending in *indre*.
Croire, to believe.
Dire, to tell.
Ecrire, to write.
Faire, to make, to do.
Frire, to fry.
Lire, to read.
Mettre, to put.
Moudre, to grind.
Naître, to be born.
Paître, to graze, to feed
Plaire, to please.
Prendre, to take.
Rire, to laugh.
Suffire, to suffice, to be sufficient.
Suivre, to follow.
Se taire, to hold one's tongue.
Traire, to milk.
Vaincre, to conquer.
Vivre, to live.
And their compounds.

N. B. Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood: ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*: the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. I do not mean *prétend-re*,v. to wrong *faire to* him. - - - Is your mother coming down? - - - *lui*, pro. *descend-re*,v. expect our friend, Mr. A***. - - - Do not *attend-re*,v. forbid her to go there? - - - They *défend-re*,v. *de aller*,v. bad fruit. *mauvais*,adj.

Imp. Did I not interrupt *interromp-re*,v. him, while *pendant q*

he was answering them? - - - She was melting into
répond-re,v. *leur* *fond-re*,v. *en*,p.
tears, when you arrived. - - Were we not losing
larme, *arriver*,v. *perdre*,v.
our time? - - You were not spreading your nets. - -
temps,m. *étend-re*,v. *filet*,m.
Did they corrupt our manners?
corromp-re,v. *mœurs*,f. pl.

Pret. (As soon as) I had received my money, I
Dès que,c.
returned them what they had lent me. - - - Did
rend-re,v. *prêter*,v.
he not hear you? - - - We (waited for) them a
entend-re,v. *attend-re*,v.
month. - - (For how much) did you sell it to them? - -
mois,m. *Combien*,adv.
They spilled all the wine.
répand-re,v.

Fut. I shall shear my flock (in the)
tond-re,v. *troupeau*,m. *au*
month of May. - - - If you do not take care,
Mai. *prenez*,v. *garde*,
the dog will bite you. - - Shall we not lose, if
mord-re,v.
we play? - - You will melt it, if you put
fond-re,v. *mettez*,v.
it into the fire. No, I will not. - - They[1] shall[3] not[2]
dans,p.
hear[5] of[6] me[7] (any[4] more).
entend-re parler,v. *plus*,adv.

Cond. Should I not do him the jus-
rend-re,v.
tice he deserves? - - Would he not interrupt you? - -
mériter,v.
We would defend them if we could. - - Why
défend-re,v. *pouvions*,v.
would you not answer, if I were speaking to
répond-re,v.

money in trifles, instead of buying
en,p. *bagatelle*, *au lieu de*,adv. *acheter*,v.
books.

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven
maison,f.
hundred and seventy-nine. - - Your father yesterday
hier,adv.
received agreeable news. - - She burst into tears
fondre,v. *en*
after your cousin was gone. - - We sent him
après que,c. *parti*,p.p.
(a great deal) of money unknown to your mo-
à l'insu,p. *de*
ther. - - Why did you not finish your work soon-
ouvrage,m.
er? - - (As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran
Dès que,c. *prirent la*
away.)
fuite.

FUT. I will (give in) my accounts (at the) be-
au
ginning of next week. - - - My friend,
prochain, adj. *semaine*,f. *amie*,
Mrs. R. will dine with me next Wednesday. - - We
Mme *Mercredi*,m.
shall seize the first opportunity to thank him
saisir,v. *occasion*,f. *pour remercier*,v.
for his kindness. - - You will soon entertain
de bonté,f. *bientôt*,adv.
a better opinion of him. - - Will not your sister
sœur,f.
(come down stairs) to day?
descendre,v.

COND. I would lay two guineas, that your
gager,v.
uncle is not yet arrived. - - If my father were rich, he
arriver,v. *étoit*

would rebuild his country-house. - - Should we not
rebâtir,v. *Devoir*,v.
express our gratitude toward those who
exprimer,v. *reconnoissance*,f. *envers*,p.
do us good ? - - If you would, you could ren-
font,v. *bien*,m. *vouliez*,v. *ren-*
der great services to your country. - - - I am cer-
dre,v. f. *pays*,m.
tain (that) they would reward you, if you
récompenser,v.
deserved it.
mériter,v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your
Remplir,v. *équité* *devoir*,m.
office. - - - Let him receive the punishment due
charge,f. *punition*,f. *dû*,p.p.
to his crime. - - Let us give [2]God thanks[1] for the
rendre,v. *grâce à de*
good news we received yesterday. - - Imitate the great
hier,adv.
actions of your ancestors. - - Let them enjoy the
ancêtres,m. *jouir*,v.*de*
fruit of their labours.
travail,m.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post,
Ecrivez,v. *ordinaire*,m.
that I may receive your letter before my de-
afin que,c. *avant*,p. *dé-*
parture from London. - - He does not understand you,
part,m. *comprendre*,v.
though he hear what you say. - - -
quoique,c. *entendre*,v.subj. *dites*,v.
She is never pleased, though we obey her in
content,adj. *lui en*,p.
(every thing). - - - - I will tell it to you, pro-
tout *dirai*,v. *pour-*

vided you do not speak of it to your sister. - -
vu que,c.
He will pay them, provided they wait a litt
attendre,v.
longer.
plus long-temps,adv.

PRET. I wrote to your father (some time ag
écrivis,v. *il y a quelque tem*
that he might engage Mr. W. to come a
afin que,c.
spend the holidays with us. - - - That she mig
passer,v. *vacance*,f.
reflect on her own conduct, and not on that
propre,adj.
others. - - He would not come to see us, lest
voulut,v. *de peur que*,
we should perceive his bad designs. - - Your uncle
ne *oncle*,
ordered that you should sell his two horses
ordonner,v.
Mr. B. - I should be very sorry if they fell
que,c. *tomber*,v.sub
into bad hands.
en

Promiscuous EXERCISES *on the* COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has n
yet given me any answer. - - Have I not fait
encore,adv. *de*
fully executed your orders? - - Has your sister su
ceeded in her undertaking? - - Yes, she has, and
have congratulated her (upon it.) - - We have not yet r
féliciter,v. *en*
ceived any remittance from America. - - Mrs. N. to
remise,
me you had already sold the half of yo
déjà,adv. *moitié*,f.

goods. - - - Why did you not pay those poor
marchandises.
people? - - - He would have been punished, if
gens,m. *et*,f.pl.
I had not defended his right. - - - They have sold
droit,m.
him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an exorbitant
mouchoir, *à*
price, but they have warranted them fine and
prix,m. *garantir*,v. *fin*
well worked. - - - We thought you would have
travailler,v. *croyions*,v.
brought your brother with you. - - - Have we not
frère
been obliged to (wait for) Miss A.? - - - If you had
de attendre,v.
trusted them with your goods, they would have
confier,v. *leur* *marchandise*
stolen the greatest part of them. - - It is for
partie,f. *Ce*,pro.
that reason that my father has not (thought fit)
juger,v. *à-propos*
to send them to you. - - - Mr. D. had represented to
him all the danger of it. - - Mrs. F. has gained her
gagner,v.
cause, but she has lost all her wealth. - - Had I
perdre,v. *bien*,m.
not finished my work when she came in? - -
ouvrage,m. *entrer*,v.
You would have received your money (a month ago),
il y a un mois
if the mail had not been robbed. - - Mrs. P. told me
malle,f. *voler*,p.p.
she would have paid you (some time ago,) if she
il y a quelque temps,
had sold her goods.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated; it requi only that the participle passive of the verb, which is be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and perso It is to be observed, that in French the participle p sive varies according to the gender and number of noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to verb: ex.

Infinitive Mood.

être	aim-*é*,	*ée*, to be loved.
être	pun-*i*,	*ie*, to be punished.
étant	aim-*é*,	*ée*, being loved.
étant	pun-*i*,	*ie*, being punished.
avoir été	aim-*é*,	*ée*, to have been loved
avoir été	pun-*i*,	*ie*, to have been punish
ayant été	aim-*é*,	*ée*, having been loved.
ayant été	pun-*i*,	*ie*, having been punish

Indicative Mood.

Singular.	M.	F.
Je suis	aim-*é*	*ée*, &c. I am loved.
Je suis	pun-*i*,	*ie*, &c. I am punished.
	Plural.	
Nous sommes	aim-*és*,	*ées*, &c. we are loved.
Nous sommes	pun-*is*,	*ies*, &c. we are punished.

Compound Tenses.

	M.	F.
J'ai été	pardonn-*é*,	*ée*, I have been forgiven.
J'ai été	pun-*i*,	*ie*, I have been punished.
Nous avons été	aim-*és*,	*ées*, We have been loved, &c.

OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like others, distinguished by their terminations, and con gated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one; because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect case: for instance,

Dormir, to sleep,
Venir, to come,
Voyager, to travel,

are neuter verbs; because we cannot say,

Dormir une maison, to sleep a house.
Venir un livre, to come a book.
Voyager la chambre, to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

Jouir, to enjoy,
Profiter, to profit by, to take advantage of,
Parvenir, to attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case: ex.

Jouir d'*une grande réputation*, To enjoy a great reputation.
Profiter du *tems*, To take advantage *of the* weather.
Parvenir à *son but*, To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter: ex.

Pleurer, to weep, to bewail,
Sortir, to go out,
Monter, to go up, *or* come up,
Plaider, &c. to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case, or accusative: ex.

Elle pleure ses péchés, She bewails her sins.
Sortez ce cheval, Bring out that horse.
Il plaida sa cause lui-même, He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can
have an active signification, and which we are ob
to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish
press an action passing from the subject who acts

Ferai-je bouillir *ou* rôtir *cette viande ?*	Shall I *boil* or *roast* meat ?
Faites-la bouillir,	*Boil* it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their com
tenses with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have ; s
with the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs
gate their compound tenses with the auxiliary
and which are the others that are conjugated wit
verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle pass
the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If this participle be declinable, that is, if it c
applied to a man or a woman, or any other ani
object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated
the verb *être :* ex.

Arriver, to arrive,	*Tomber*, to fall,
Mourir, to die,	*Venir*, to come, *&c.*
Naître, to be born,	

take the auxiliary verb, *être ;* because we can say

Un homme arrivé,	a man (*who is*) arrive
Une femme morte,	a woman dead.
Un enfant né,	a child born.
Un cheval tombé, &c.	a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinabl
is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the
pound tenses of that verb must be conjugated wit
verb *avoir* : ex.

Dormir, to sleep,	*Régner*, to reign,
Languir, to languish, to linger.	*Vivre*, to live, *&c.*

take the auxiliary verb *avoir ;* because we cannot

Un homme dormi,	a man slept, (part. pass.)
Une femme languie,	a woman languished, *or* lin
Un enfant régné,	a child reigned.
Un cheval vécu, &c.	a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in the last class, when it s the rapid motion of the body, moving in a cer rection with all the swiftness of its legs; as we in this sense, say,

Un homme couru,	a man run, (part. pa
Une femme courue,	a woman run,

nor *je suis couru, j'étois couru,* &c. but *j'ai couru, couru,* &c.

When we say in French, *un homme* couru, *un* courue, we mean a man or woman much sough a person or thing we are very eager to see or he

Ce prédicateur est fort couru;
Cette danseuse est fort courue;

that is, people are very eager to hear that prea see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not include neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliar and sometimes the auxiliary *être;* these are,

Monter, to go or come up.	*Demeurer*, to live, t
Descendre, to go or come down.	*Périr*, to perish.
Sortir, to go out.	*Passer*, to pass, to g
Rester, to stay, to remain.	*Echapper*, to escape

Monter and *descendre* often govern an absolu men; in which case they are considered as activ and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir:* ex.

J'ai monté les degrés,	I *have* ascended th *or* gone up the st
Nous avons descendu la montagne,	We *have* come do mountain.

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être:* ex.

Je suis *descendu,*	I *am* down.
Elle est *déjà montée,*	She *is* up already.

Sortir, is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey the idea that we have been from home, and that we are come back again: ex.

Il est *sorti de prison,*	He *is* out of prison.
*J'*ai *sorti ce matin à dix heures,*	I went out this morning at ten o'clock.
Avez-*vous sorti ce matin?*	*Did* you go out this morning?
*Nous n'*avons *pas sorti de tout le jour,*	We *have* not been out all day.
*Le roi n'*a *pas sorti de sa chambre,*	The king *has* not been out of his room.

Demeurer and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place: ex.

*J'*ai *demeuré deux ans à la campagne,*	I lived two years in the country.
Il a *resté vingt ans à Rome,*	He resided twenty years at Rome.

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place: ex.

Il est *demeuré à Londres pour y solliciter un évêché,*	He *has* remained in London to solicit a bishopric.
Nous sommes *restés à York pour y finir nos affaires,*	We *have* tarried at York to conclude our affairs.

Périr indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être:* ex.

Il est *péri deux vaisseaux sur mer*,	Two ships *have* been lost at sea.
Trois hommes ont *péri par cette tempête*,	Three men *have* perished by this storm.
La plûpart des équipages sont *péris dans les ondes, le reste* est *péri de misère*,	Most of the crews perished in the waves, the rest perished through misery.

It seems, however, that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

Passer sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense: ex.

Le roi a *passé par Kensington pour aller à Windsor*,	The king went through Kensington to go to Windsor.
Nous avons *passé devant l'église*,	We went by the church.
Elle a *passé près du parc de St. Jâques*,	She went by St. James' Park.
La couronne de Naples a *passé dans la maison de Bourbon*,	The crown of Naples passed to the house of Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*: ex.

Le roi est *passé, vous ne sauriez le voir*,	The king *is* gone by, you cannot see him.
Le beau tems est *passé*,	The fine weather *is* over.
Vos chagrins sont *passés*,	Your sorrows *are* over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand *has passed into the language*, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

Passer is often a reflected passive verb, then its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

Passer, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case: ex.

Passez cela *sur le feu*,	Pass *that* over the fire.
Les ennemis ont passé la rivière,	The enemies have crossed the *river*.
*Passer l'*épée *au travers du corps*,	To run one through the body.

Echapper has two significations: sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up; in this case it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary: ex.

Vous avez *échappé là à un grand danger*,	You *have* escaped a great danger.
Il a *échappé à la mort*,	He *has* escaped death.
Ils sont *échappés de leur prison*, or,	They *have* escaped from their prison, *or*, made their escape.
Ils se sont *échappés de leur prison*,	
On la tenoit depuis quelques jours, mais elle est *échappée*, or, *elle s'*est *échappée*,	They had her for some days, but she *has* escaped, *or*, made her escape.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular, whenever they occur.

REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing; so that the subject that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action: ex.

I know *myself*,
Thou praisest *thyself*
He wounds *himself*,
uffons, *We* warm *ourselves*,

/erbs, because it is I who know, and who
ou who praisest and who art praised: he
nd who is wounded, &c.

express the relation of the nominative to
its regimen or object, we always make use
ctive pronouns, *me*, *te*, *se*, myself, thyself,
lf, itself, for the singular; *nous*, *vous*, *se*,
rselves, themselves, for the plural. But
ppens, that *in English*, the second pro-
, though it *must* be expressed *in French*:

, I remember.
se *marier*, She will not marry.
gnons, &c. We complain, &c.

ed verbs may be divided in the following

is par la sig- Verbs reflective by signification.
is par l'ex- Verbs reflective by expression.
s directs, Verbs reflective direct.
s indirects, Verbs reflective indirect.
s passifs, Verbs reflective passive.

ected by signification is properly a verb
person or thing that acts, is at the same
t of the action: ex.

ffe, I warm *myself*.
e, She wounds *herself*, &c.

eflective by expression when we add to it
onoun, without the person or thing that
object of the action: such as,

Je me repens,	I repent,
Il s'*en va*,	He is going *away*,
Elle se *meurt*,	She is dying,
Nous nous *apercevons de notre erreur*,	We perceive our error,

which merely signify *Je suis repentant, il va, elle meur nous apercevons notre erreur.*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective cas of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *veri reflective direct;* when the same conjunctive pronoun i the indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case), we call it *reflective indirect*: thus,

Je me *flatte*,	I flatter *myself*,
Tu te *vantes*,	Thou boastest,
Il se *félicite*,	He congratulates *himself* &c.

are verbs *reflective direct.*—On the contrary,

Il se *donne des louanges*,	He gives *himself* praise,
Nous nous *promettons un bon succès*,	We promise *ourselves* good success,
Vous vous *arrachez une dent*,	You draw one of your teeth,

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *Il donne des louanges* à soi, *Nous promettons un bon succès* à nous, *Vous arrachez une dent* à vous, &c.

Verb reflective passive. This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb: ex.

Cela se voit *tous les jours*,	That *is seen* every day.
Cela ne se dit *point*,	That *is* not *said.*
Ce livre se vend *bien*,	That book *sells* well.
Ce bruit se répand,	That rumour *is spread.*
Ces fruits se mangent *en hiver*,	These fruits *are eaten* in winter.

Cet homme s'est trouvé *innocent du crime dont on l'accusoit,*	That man *has been found* innocent of the crime with which he was accused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit*, &c. which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense: if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou, *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten; whereas, I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réciproque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to determine accurately the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other: thus,

Pierre et Jean se *battent*,	Peter and John are fighting, *or* beating *each other*,
Paul et Robert s'aiment,	Paul and Robert love *each other*,
Le feu et l'eau se *détruisent*,	Fire and water destroy *each other*,

are *reciprocal verbs*, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement l'un l'autre.*

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time, that we often

prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the b
express the reciprocity: ex.

Pierre et Jean s'entr'*ai-ment*,	Peter and John l *other.*
Ils s'entre*louent*,	They praise *each*
Elles s'entre*haïssent*,	They hate *each ot*
Le feu et l'eau s'entre*détruisent*, &c.	Fire and water *each other.*

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, wit
ception, are conjugated with the auxiliary ve
hence it may be supposed how much French
are shocked to hear any one, who has learn
language, say,

Je m'ai *acheté un cheval*,	I bought myself a
Je m'avois *blessé*,	I *had* hurt myself;
Il s'a *fait mal*,	He *has* hurt himse
Elle s'avoit *moqué de moi*, &c.	She *had* laughed a

expressions too commonly made use of by many
people, who speak without knowledge of the pr
of the language; whereas we must say,

Je me suis *acheté un cheval*,	
Je m'étois *blessé*,	
Il s'est *fait mal*,	
Elle s'étoit *moquée de moi*,	
Nous nous sommes *informés*,	We *have* inquired.
Ils se sont *promenés*,	They *have* walked.
Il s'est *passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ*,	Strange things *ha* pened since you ture.
Il s'est *passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire*,	Many years *have* since I heard of fair.

It must be owned, that in the compounds
pa.t of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the s
of the verb *avoir;* but it is impossible to use
auxiliary to a verb which has for its objectiv
conjunctive pronoun that relates to the princip

action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary; for, though we say,

Il a voulu se *tuer*, He would kill *himself*;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer*, which is the idiom of the language.

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs, of the four conjugations.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. Se *promener*, to walk.
Part. act. Se *promenant*, walking.
M. Sing. F.
Part. pass. *promen-é*, *ée*, walked.
M. Plural. F.
Part. pass. *promen-és*, *ées*, walked.

Compound Tenses.

Pres. *S'être promené*, to have walked.
Past. *S'étant promené*, having walked.

Indicative Mood.

Present. Singular.

Je me *promène*, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.
Tu te *promènes*,
Il se *promène*,

Plural.

Nous nous *promenons*, we walk, do walk, or are &c.
Vous vous *promenez*,
Ils se *promènent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je me *promenois*, I did walk, *or* walked, *or* was walking.
Tu te *promenois*,
Il se *promenoit*,

Plural.

Nous nous *promenions*, we did walk, walked, or were
Vous vous *promeniez*, walking.
Ils se *promenoient*,

Preterite. Singular.

Je me *promenai*, I did walk, *or* walked.
Tu te *promenas*,
Il se *promena*,

Plural.

Nous nous *promenâmes*, we did walk, or walked.
Vous vous *promenâtes*,
Ils se *promenèrent*,

Future. Singular.

Je me *promènerai*, I shall, *or* will walk.
Tu te *promèneras*,
Il se *promènera*,

Plural.

Nous nous *promènerons*, we shall, *or* will walk.
Vous vous *promènerez*,
Ils se *promèneront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je me *promènerois*, I would, should, *or* could walk.
Tu te *promènerois*,
Il se *promèneroit*,

Plural.

Nous nous *promènerions*, we would, should, *&c.* walk.
Vous vous *promèneriez*,
Ils se *promèneroient*,

Compound Tenses.

Present. *Je* me *suis promen-é, ée*, I have walked.
Imperfect. *Je* m'*étois promen-é, ée*, I had walked.
Preterite. *Je* me *fus promen-é, ée*, I had walked.
Future. *Je* me *serai promen-é, ée*, I shall *or* will have walked.
Conditional. *Je* me *serois promen-é, ée*, I should, *&c.* have walked.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Promène-toi**, walk thou.
Qu'il se *promène*, let him walk.

Plural.

Promenons-nous*, let us walk.
Promenez-vous*, walk ye.
Qu'ils se *promènent*, let them walk.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je me *promène*, that I way walk.
tu te *promènes*,
il se *promène*,

Plural.

nous nous *promenions*, that we may walk.
vous vous *promeniez*,
ils se *promènent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je me *promenasse*, that I might walk.
tu te *promenasses*,
il se *promenât*,

Plural.

nous nous *promenassions*, that we might walk.
vous vous *promenassiez*,
ils se *promenassent*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Present. *Que je* me *sois promen-é, ée*, that I may have walked.

Preterite. *Que je* me *fusse promen-é, ée*, that I might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is

* When the verb is conjugated with a *negation*, these three pronouns are put before the verb; ex. *ne* vous *promenez pas*, do not walk; and *toi* is changed into *te*: *ne* te *promène pas*.

necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation: ex.

Je ne me *promène pas,*	I do not walk.
Vous *promenez-vous?*	Do you walk?
Ne se *promène-t-il pas?*	Does he not walk?

COMPOUND TENSES.

Me *suis-je promené?*	Have I walked? or did I walk?
Ne vous *êtes-vous pas chauffé?*	Have you not warmed *yourself?* or did you not warm *yourself?*
Mon cousin s'est-il informé?	Has my cousin inquired? or did my cousin inquire?
Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti?	Has not your brother repented? or did not your brother repent?
We say in French,	
Se promener à cheval, en carrosse,	To take a ride, an airing on horseback, in a coach.
Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière,	To go upon the water, on the river.

EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked thus * are irregular: see the irregular verbs alphabetically arranged under each conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I rise (early) every
Se lever, v. *de bonne heure*, adv. *tous les*
morning. - - Does not your brother remember
matin, m. pl. *se ressouvenir*, v.*
to have seen me? - - My sister is not well, she
de vu, p. p. *sœur*, f.† *se porter*,

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter*:

Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien, My sister is not well.

applies herself (too much) to study. - - - - We
s'appliquer,v. *trop*,adv.
rejoice at the good news (which) he has brought
se réjouir,v. *de* *nouvelle*,f. *apporté*,p.p.
us. - - When do you intend to go and see
se proposer,v. *de aller*,v. ∽ *voir*,v.
Mrs. H. ? - - Do you not repent what you
se repentir,v.* *de*
have done to her? - - I believe your brothers
fait,p.p. *croire*,v.*
are not well; for I have not seen them this
† *car*,c. *vu*,p.p.
week.
semaine,f.

Imp. I was riding on horseback in the park,
se promener,v. *parc*,m.
when I met him. - - Was he not warm-
quand,c. *recontrer*,v. *se chauf-*
ing himself when you (came in)? - - We did not
fer,v. *entrer*,v.
imagine he would succeed so well. - - You were
s'imaginer,v. *réussir*,v.
boasting (too much) of what you have done for
se vanter,v. *trop* *fait*,p.p.
him. - - They did not expect that they should
s'attendre,v. *à* ∽ ∽
meet us.

Part. I inquired after you yesterday. - - -
s'informer,v. *de* *hier*,adv.
Did not my son behave well in the last
se comporter,v. *dernier*,adj.
war? - - Corn was sold yesterday for twelve shil-
guerre,f. *se vendre*,v. ∽
lings a bushel. - - We saw ourselves surrounded by
se voir,v.* *entouré*,p.p.
more than twenty persons in an instant. - - Did you
en,p.

† See page 346.

not find yourselves obliged to go
se trouver,v. *obligé*,p.p. *de aller*,v.
there? - - They did not stop one minute.
s'arrêter,v.

Fut. I will not complain of you, if you
se plaindre,v.*
promise me to behave better. - - Will your
promettre,v.* *de mieux*,adv.
bird (grow tame)? - - Shall we submit our-
oiseau,m. *s'apprivoiser*,v. *se soumettre*,v.*
selves to his judgment. - - You will ruin your-
jugement,m. *se ruiner*,v.
selves if you continue (gaming). - - Will they not
continuer,v. *de jouer*,v.
perceive it (as soon as) they come into the
s'apercevoir,v. *en dès que*,c. *entrer*,v.fut.
room?

Cond. If I were in your place, I would
étois *à*
not vex myself. - - - - Would she not (make her
se chagriner,v. *s'échap-*
escape)? - - We would embark (this day)
per,v. *s'embarquer*,v. *aujourd'hui*, adv.
if the weather (would permit). - - Would you embark so
temps,m. *le permettoit*,v.
soon? - - Why would you expose yourselves to their
tôt,adv. *s'exposer*,v.
fury? - - They would agree very well,
fureur,f. *s'accorder*,v. *bien*,adv.
if they were not so proud.
orgueilleux,adj.

Imperative Mood.

I give you leave to go out, but
donner,v. *permission* *de sortir*,v. *mais*,c.
do not overheat yourself. - - Let him amuse him-
s'échauffer,v. *s'amuser*,v.

self a little in my garden. - - - Let us remem-
un peu,adv. *jardin*,m. *se ressou-*
ber what we are to do. - - - Endeavour to
venir de,v.* † *faire*,v. *S'efforcer*,v. *de*
please your master, and do not so often mis-
plaire,v. *à maître*,m. *se trom-*
take in the tenses, numbers, and persons of the
per,v. *temps*
verb. - - Let them (fall asleep.)*
s'endormir,v.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. I must apply myself to the
Il faut que† *s'appliquer*,v.
French language. - - I will hide it, lest
langue,f. *cacher*,v. *de peur que*,c.
she should perceive it. - - - Provided
ne s'apercevoir,v. *en*,pro. *Pourvû que*,c.
we remember to ask him how his
de demander,v. *lui comment*,adv.
mother does. - - - - (In order that) you may not
se porter,v. *Afin que*,c.
boast (so much). - - I have told them who you
se vanter,v. *tant*,adv. *dit*,p.p.
are, that they may behave better another time.
afin que,c. *fois*,f.

Pret. That I might not ruin myself. - - -
se ruiner,v.
That he might not meddle with my affairs. - - -
se mêler,v. *de*
That we might excuse ourselves. - - - That you
s'excuser,v.
might not go away. - - - - That they might not
s'en aller, v.*
repent too late.
se repentir,v.* *trop tard*,adv.

* Remember that verbs marked thus are irregular.
† See the note p. 193.
† See *falloir*, imp. v. page 332.

Compound Tenses.

(*Read with attention the remarks*, p. 218.)

I have inquired after you and your sister. - - -
s'informer,v. *de*
He says you have not been well while you
dit,v. *pendant que*,c.
were in the country. - - - - Has not your cousin
à campagne,f. *cousin*,m.
laughed at me? - - Did we not get up at six
se moquer,v. *de* *se lever*,v. *à*
(o'clock?) - - They have perceived the trick, but
heure *du détour*,m.
it was too late. - - Did you remember * me?
ce *se ressouvenir*,v. *de*
I had not applied myself enough. - - - Had
s'appliquer,v. *assez*,adv.
not your sister imagined, that they would have
s'imaginer,v.
found themselves obliged to go to France? - - -
se trouver,v. *obligé*,p.p. *de* †
He has wounded himself in attempting to injure
se blesser,v. *essayer*,v. *de nuire*,v.
me. - - - We had thought ourselves able
se croire,v.* *capable*,adj.
to resist them, but we have (been deceived.)
de résister,v. *leur* *mais*,c. *se tromper*,v.
- - - Did you not hide yourselves (in order)
se cacher,v. *afin*
to surprise them? - - - - When I (shall)
de surprendre,v. *Quand*,adv.
have walked five or six minutes in the gar-
minute *jar-*
den, I will rest myself. - - - - - Why did you
din,m. *se reposer*,v.
exhaust yourself as you have done? - - - - Our
s'épuiser,v. *fait*,p.p.
sailors would have behaved with more reso-
matelot,m.

† See the N. B. p. 41.

lution. - - Would you not have excused yourself. - - -
s'excuser, v.
When they† have repented their faults, I
se repentir, v. * *de*
will forgive them. - - If I had been in your place, I
avois *à*
would not have meddled with their affairs. - - -
se mêler, v. *de*
Your friend would not have complained of you,
se plaindre, v. *
and you never would have (fallen out) for so small
se brouiller, v. *si peu*
a matter.
de chose.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers. The *personal pronouns* must now be supplied in French by the student.

VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER, TO GO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Aller*, to go.
Part. act.	*Allant*, going.
Part. pass.	*Allé, ée*, gone.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Vais,*	*vas,*	*va,*	I go, do go, *or* am going.
Plur.	*Allons,*	*allez,*	*vont,*	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Allois,*	*allois,*	*alloit,*	I did go, *or* was going.
Plur.	*Allions,*	*alliez,*	*alloient,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Allai,*	*allas,*	*alla,*	I went, *or* did go.
Plur.	*Allâmes,*	*allâtes,*	*allèrent,*	

† After *when* and a few other conjunctions *will* and *shall*, signs of the future, are implied in English.

Future.

Sing.	*Irai,*	*iras,*	*ira,*	I shall, *or* will go.
Plur.	*Irons,*	*irez,*	*iront,*	

Conditional.

Sing.	*Irois,*	*irois,*	*iroit,*	I should, could, would, *or*
Plur.	*Irions,*	*iriez,*	*iroient,*	might go.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Va,* go thou;
qu'il aille, let him go.
Plur. *Allons, allez. qu'ils aillent.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que,	*que,*	*que,*	
Sing.	*Aille,*	*ailles,*	*aille,*	that I may go.
Plur.	*Allions,*	*alliez,*	*aillent,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Allasse,*	*allasses,*	*allât,*	that I might go.
Plur.	*Allassions,*	*allassiez,*	*allassent,*	

N. B. The preterite of the verb *être, je fus, tu fus,* &c. has been used by respectable authors and in conversation for *j'allai, tu allas,* but now it is thought unnecessary.

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked, that those which are formed by the participle *allé,* signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows, that the first person of the compound of the present,

Je suis allé, I have gone, &c.
Tu es allé, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse; for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être,* as *j'ai, été, tu as été, j'eus été, j'avois été, j'aurois été,* &c. for when we say,

Il est allé à Londres, He is gone to London.

we give to understand, that he is still in London, or is *on his way,* going to London: on the contrary,

Il a été à Londres, He has been at London,

means, that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one, with the particle *en*: ex.

*S'*en *aller*, to go *away*.
Je m'en *vais*, I go *or* am going *away*.
Tu t'en *vas*, thou goest *or* art going *away*.
Il s'en *va*, he goes *or* is going *away*.
Nous nous en *allons*, we go *or* are going *away*.
Vous vous en *allez*, you go *or* are going *away*.
Ils s'en *vont*, they go *or* are going *away*.

Negatively.

Je ne m'en *vais pas*, I am not going *away*.
Il ne s'en *va pas*, he is not going *away*.
Nous ne nous en *allons pas*, we are not going *away*.
Vous ne vous en *allez pas*, &c. you are not going *away*, &c.

Interrogatively.

*S'*en *va-t-il?* Is he going *away?*
Vous en *allez-vous? &c.* are you going *away?* &c.
Ne s'en *vont-ils-pas? &c.* are they not going *away*, &c.

The imperative mood is thus conjugated:

Singular.

*Va-t'*en, go thou *away*.
Qu'il s'en *aille*, let him go *away*.

Plural.

*Allons-*nous en, let us go *away*.
*Allez-*vous en, go *away*.
Qu'ils s'en *aillent*, let them go *away*.

Its compound tenses are,

Je m'en *suis allé*, I have gone *away*.
Je m'en *étois allé*, I had gone *away*.
Je m'en *fus allé*, I had gone *away*.
Je m'en *serai allé*, I shall have gone away, &c.
Je m'en serois allé, I should have gone away.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUERIR, TO ACQUIRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Acquérir*, to acquire.
Part. act.	*Acquérant*, acquiring.
Part. pass.	*Acquis, se*, acquired.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Acquiers,*	*acquiers,*	*acquiert,* I acquire *or* am a
Plur.	*Acquérons,*	*acquérez,*	*acquièrent,* quirin

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Acquérois,*	*acquérois,*	*acquéroit,* I did acquire
Plur.	*Acquérions,*	*acquériez,*	*acquéroient,* was acquiring

Preterite.

Sing.	*Acquis,*	*acquis,*	*acquit,* I acquired *or* did ac
Plur.	*Acquîmes,*	*acquîtes,*	*acquirent,* quire

Future.

Sing.	*Acquerrai,*	*acquerras,*	*acquerra,* I shall, *or* will ac
Plur.	*Acquerrons,*	*acquerrez,*	*acquerront,* quire

Conditional.

Sing.	*Acquerrois,*	*acquerrois,*	*acquerroit,* I should, would *or* could acquire
Plur.	*Acquerrions,*	*acquerriez,*	*acquerroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Acquiers,*	*acquière,* acquire thou.
Plur.	*Acquérons,*	*acquérez,*	*acquièrent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Acquière,*	*acquières,*	*acquière,* that I may acqui
Plur.	*Acquérions,*	*acquériez,*	*acquièrent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Acquisse,*	*acquisses,*	*acquît,* that I might a
Plur.	*Acquissions,*	acquissiez,	acquissent, qui

QUERIR, TO FETCH.

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in present of the infinitive mood: ex.

Envoyez-moi quérir, Send *for* me.

NQUERIR, TO CONQUER; *REQUERIR*, TO REQUIRE; are conjugated like *ACQUERIR*.

BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present	*Bouillir*, to boil.
Part. act.	*Bouillant*, boiling.
Part. pass.	*Bouilli, ie*, boiled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Bous,	*bous*,	*bout*,	I boil, *or* am boiling.
Bouillons,	*bouillez*,	*bouillent*,	

Imperfect.

Bouillois,	*bouillois*,	*bouilloit*,	I did boil, *or* was
Bouillions,	*bouilliez*,	*bouilloient*,	boiling.

Preterite.

Bouillis,	*bouillis*,	*bouillit*,	I boiled, *or* did boil.
Bouillîmes,	*bouillîtes*,	*bouillirent*,	

Future.

Bouillirai,	*bouilliras*,	*bouillira*,	I shall, *or* will boil.
Bouillirons,	*bouillirez*,	*bouilliront*,	

Conditional.

Bouillirois,	*bouillirois*,	*bouilliroit*,	I should, would, *or*
Bouillirions,	*bouilliriez*,	*bouilliroient*,	could boil.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Bous,	*bouille*,	boil thou.
Bouillons,	*bouillez*,	*bouillent*,	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	que	que
Sing.	*Bouille,*	*bouilles,*	*bouille,* that I may b
Plur.	*Bouillions,*	*bouilliez,*	*bouillent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Bouillisse,*	*bouillisses,*	*bouillît,* that I migh
Plur.	*Bouillissions,*	*bouillissiez,*	*bouillissent,*

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, t again, is but seldom used, except in the *third* singular or plural, and in its *infinitive* mood, whi commonly joined to the verb *Faire* to render it and use it in all persons: ex.

Faites *bouillir cette viande*, Boil that meat.

COURIR, TO RUN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Courir*, to run.
Part. act.	*Courant*, running.
Part. pass.	*Couru, ue*, run.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Cours,*	*cours,*	*court,*	I run, *or* am runnir
Plur.	*Courons,*	*courez,*	*courent,*	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Courois,*	*couroit,*	*couroit,*	I did run, *or* wa
Plur.	*Courions,*	*couriez,*	*couroient,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Courus,*	*courus,*	*courut,*	I ran, *or* did run.
Plur.	*Courûmes,*	*courûtes,*	*coururent,*	

Future.

Sing.	*Courrai,*	*courras,*	*courra,*	I shall *or* will rur
Plur.	*Courrons,*	courrez,	courront,	

Conditional.

Sing.	*Courrois,*	*courrois,*	*courroit,*	I should, would, *or*
Plur.	*Courrions,*	*courriez,*	*courroient,*	could run.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		*Cours,*	*coure,*	run thou.
Plur.	*Courons,*	*courez,*	*courent,*	

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Coure,*	*coures,*	*coure,*	that I may run.
Plur.	*Courions,*	*couriez,*	*courent,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Courusse,*	*courusses,*	*courût,*	that I might run.
Plur.	*Courussions,*	*courussiez,*	*courussent,*	

The compounds of this verb are,

Accourir, to run to.	*Parcourir,* to run over.
Concourir, to concur.	*Recourir,* to have recourse to.
Discourir, to discourse.	*Secourir,* to succour, to assist.
Encourir, to incur.	

COUVRIR, to cover.

See *OUVRIR,* to open.

CUEILLIR, to gather.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	*Cueillir,* to gather.
Part. act.	*Cueillant,* gathering.
Part. pass.	*Cueilli, ie,* gathered.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing.	*Cueille,*	*cueilles,*	*cueille,*	I gather, *or* am gath-
Plur.	*Cueillons,*	*cueillez,*	*cueillent,*	ering.

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Cueillois,*	*cueillois,*	*cueilloit,* I did gather, *or*
Plur.	*Cueillions,*	*cueilliez,*	*cueilloient,* was gathering.

Preterite.

Sing.	*Cueillis,*	*cueillis,*	*cueillit,* I gathered, *or* did
Plur.	*Cueillîmes,*	*cueillîtes,*	*cueillirent,* gather.

Future.

Sing.	*Cueillerai,*	*cueilleras,*	*cueillera,* I shall *or* will
Plur.	*Cueillerons,*	*cueillerez,*	*cueilleront,* gather.

Conditional.

Sing.	*Cueillerois,*	*cueillerois,*	*cueilleroit,* I should, would *or* could gather.
Plur.	*Cueillerions,*	*cueilleriez,*	*cueilleroient,*

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		*Cueille,*	*cueille,* gather thou.
Plur.	*Cueillons,*	*cueillez,*	*cueillent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Cueille,*	*cueilles,*	*cueille,* that I may gather.
Plur.	*Cueillions,*	*cueilliez,*	*cueillent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Cueillisse,*	*cueillisses,*	*cueillit,* that I might
Plur.	*Cueillissions,*	*cueillissiez,*	*cueillissent,* gather.

The compounds of this verb are,

Accueillir, to make welcome.

Recueillir, to gather together.

DORMIR, to sleep.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Dormir,* to sleep.
Part. act. *Dormant,* sleeping.
Part. pass. *Dormi, ie,* slept.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

)ors,	*dors,*	*dort,* I sleep, or am sleeping.
)ormons,	*dormez,*	*dorment,*

Imperfect.

)ormois,	*dormois,*	*dormoit,* I did sleep, *or* was
)ormions,	*dormiez,*	*dormoient,* sleeping.

Preterite.

)ormis,	*dormis,*	*dormit,* I slept, *or* did sleep.
)ormîmes,	*dormîtes,*	*dormirent,*

Future.

)ormirai,	*dormiras,*	*dormira,* I shall *or* will
)ormirons,	*dormirez,*	*dormiront,* sleep.

Conditional.

)ormirois,	*dormirois,*	*dormiroit,* I would, could, *or*
)ormirions,	*dormiriez,*	*dormiroient,* should sleep.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Dors,	*dorme,* sleep thou.
)ormons,	*dormez,*	*dorment,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

ue	*que*	*que*
)orme,	*dormes,*	*dorme,* that I may sleep.
)ormions,	*dormiez,*	*dorment,*

Preterite.

)ormisse,	*dormisses,*	*dormît,* that I might sleep.
)ormissions,	*dormissiez,*	*dormissent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

ıir, to make sleep.	*Se rendormir,* to fall asleep
mir, to fall asleep.	again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

re are you going? - - - I am going to the dv.

ay. - - - I would go with you, if I had time. - - ..
médie,f. *le*
re they going away so soon? - - - Will not your father
e angry, if you go there without him? - - - We were
fâché,adj.
going to Miss D——'s, when we met you
chez,p. ∽ *avons rencontré*,p.p.
- - These men went yesterday from house to house. -
Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. - - Your father
Croire,v. ∽ *voir*,v.
told me (*that*) you will go to France and Italy as soon
dire,v.
as the war (is over.) - - My sister and I, went last
sera finie. *dernier*,adj
Wednesday to Vauxhall. - - If you had gone thithe
an hour sooner you would have heard fine music
plutôt,adv. *entendre*,v.
- - Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.
nom,m.
- - - My father went to pay your[s] uncle[s] a visit
∽ *rendre*,v. ∽
last week, and he did not welcome him (as a) friend.
en,p.
- - - Did he not? I am sorry for it. - - - Mr. Dubois,
the king's silversmith, has brought the watch: it
orfévre
now goes very well. - - - Go and fetch me
maintenant,adv. ∽
the letter I left in my room. - - I have (sent for)
laisser,v. (*envoyé quérir*)
him. - - - - Boil this chicken, and roast that goose.
poulet,m. *rôtir*,v. *oie*,f.
- - - - At last we have conquered. - - - - This
Enfin,adv.
water will soon boil. - - - - Boil that meat
bientôt,adv.
again, it is not done enough. - - - Do not run so
cuit,p.p.
fast, you will be tired. - - - They always run
vite,adv. *fatigué*,p.p.

when they go to see their aunt. - - - Your brother
tante,f.
runs faster that I. - - When he heard that his
apprit,v.
friend was in danger, he ran instantly to him. - - -
étoit *aussitôt*,adv. *à*
Let us not discourse any more on that subject. - - - - I
sujet,m.
would assist him with all my heart, if I could. - - This
pouvois.
gentleman is a great traveller: he has run over all
Monsieur *voyageur*,m.
Europe. - - Let him go away, for I do not wish to
Europe,f. *car*,c. *veux*,v.
speak to him. - - If you do it, you will incur your
faire,v.
father's displeasure. - - That would concur to the pub-
déplaisir,m. *Cela*
lic good. - - When children are guilty, they generally
bien,m. *coupable*,adj.
have recourse to some falsehood. - - For whom are you
quelque mensonge.
gathering those charming flowers? - - I gather them for
fleur,f.
my mother. - - Why do they not gather some roses? - -
rose,f.
Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the gardener
Mme *jardinier*,m.
told her he would gather them himself. - - Of all nations
none has welcomed the poor French clergy better
clergé,m.
than the English nation. - - - Do not make any noise,
faire,v.
for my sister (is asleep.) - - I hope she will sleep better to-
car,c. *ce*
night. - She would sleep much better, if she were in her
soir,m.
bed. - If I do not walk a little, I shall fall asleep.
lit,m. *se promener*,v.
- - My mother, sister, brother, and I, went yesterday to

Medford, to see Miss Keen. - - - Did you go thither
Mlle
on foot? - - - No, my mother and sister went in
à *en*,p.
coach, and my brother and I on horseback.
à cheval,m.

FUIR, TO SHUN, TO AVOID, TO FLEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Fuir*, to flee.
Part. act. *Fuyant*, fleeing.
Part. pass. *Fui, ie*, fled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fuis, fuis, fuit*, I flee.
Plur. *Fuyons, fuyez, fuient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyois, fuyois, fuyoit*, I fled, *or* did flee.
Plur. *Fuyions, fuyiez, fuyoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Fuis, fuis, fuit*,
Plur. *Fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent*, or we may say, *Je pin la fuite*, &c.

Future.

Sing. *Fuirai, fuiras, fuira*, I shall *or* will flee.
Plur. *Fuirons, fuirez, fuiront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Fuirois, fuirois, fuiroit*, I should, would, *or* could
Plur. *Fuirions, fuiriez, fuiroient*, flee.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fuis, fuie*, flee thou.
Plur. *Fuyons, fuyez, fuient*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	que	que	
Sing.	*Fuie,*	*fuies,*	*fuie,*	that I may flee.
Plur.	*Fuyions,*	*fuyiez,*	*fuient,*	

Preterite.

	Que	que	que	
Sing.	*Fuisse,*	*fuisses,*	*fuît,*	that I might flee.
Plur.	*Fuissions,*	*fuissiez,*	*fuissent,*	or

Je prisse *la* fuite, &c. that I might *flee*, &c.

S'enfuir, to run away.

MENTIR, TO LIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mentir*, to lie.
Part. act. *Mentant*, lying.
Part. pass. *Menti, ie*, lied.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Mens,*	*mens,*	*ment,*	I lie.
Plur.	*Mentons,*	*mentez,*	*mentent,*	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Mentois,*	*mentois,*	*mentoit,*	I did lie, *or* was lying.
Plur.	*Mentions,*	*mentiez,*	*mentoient,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Mentis,*	*mentis,*	*mentit,*	I lied, *or* did lie.
Plur.	*Mentîmes,*	*mentîtes,*	*mentirent,*	

Future.

Sing.	*Mentirai,*	*mentiras,*	*mentira,*	I shall, *or* will lie.
Plur.	*Mentirons,*	*mentirez,*	*mentiront,*	

Conditional.

Sing.	*Mentirois,*	*mentirois,*	*mentiroit,*	I would, could, *or*
Plur.	*Mentirions,*	*mentiriez,*	*mentiroient,*	should lie.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Mens,*	*mente,*	lie thou.
Plur.	*Mentons,*	*mentez,*	*mentent,*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	que	que	
Sing.	*Mente*,	*mentes*,	*mente*,	that I may lie.
Plur.	*Mentions*,	*mentiez*,	*mentent*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Mentisse*,	*mentisses*, *mentît*,	that I might lie.
Plur.	*Mentissions*,	*mentissiez*, *mentissent*.	

The compound of this verb is *Démentir*, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradic

---

MOURIR, TO DIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Mourir*,	to die.
Part. act.	*Mourant*,	dying.
Part. past.	*Mort*, *te*,	died, *or* dead.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Meurs*,	*meurs*, *meurt*,	I die, *or* am dyin
Plur.	*Mourons*,	*mourez*, *meurent*,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Mourois*,	*mourois*, *mouroit*,	I was dying.
Plur.	*Mourions*,	*mouriez*, *mouroient*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Mourus*,	*mourus*, *mourut*,	I died.
Plur.	*Mourûmes*,	*mourûtes*, *moururent*,	

Future.

Sing.	*Mourrai*,	*mourras*, *mourra*,	I shall, *or* will
Plur.	*Mourrons*,	*mourrez*, *mourront*,	

Conditional.

Sing.	*Mourrois*,	*mourrois*, *mourroit*,	I should, cou
Plur.	*Mourrions*,	*mourriez*, *mourroient*,	woul

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Meurs,*	*meure,* die thou.
Plur.	*Mourons,*	*mourez,*	*meurent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Meure,*	*meures,*	*meure,* that I may die.
Plur.	*Mourions,*	*mouriez,*	*meurent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Mourusse,*	*mourusses,*	*mourût,* that I might die.
Plur.	*Mourussions,*	*mourussiez,*	*mourussent,*

Se mourir, to be dying.

OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Offrir,* to offer.
Part. act.	*Offrant,* offering.
Part. pass.	*Offert, te,* offered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Offre,*	*offres,*	*offre,* I offer, *or* am offering.
Plur.	*Offrons,*	*offrez,*	*offrent,*

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Offrois,*	*offrois,*	*offroit,* I did offer, *or* was of-
Plur.	*Offrions,*	*offriez,*	*offroient,* fering.

Preterite.

Sing.	*Offris,*	*Offris,*	*offrit,* I offered, *or* did offer.
Plur.	*Offrîmes,*	*offrîtes,*	*offrirent,*

Future.

Sing.	*Offrirai,*	*offriras,*	*offrira,* I shall, *or* will offer.
Plur.	*Offrirons,*	*offrirez,*	*offriront,*

Conditional.

Sing.	*Offrirois,*	*offrirois,*	*offriroit,* I would, could, or
Plur.	*Offririons,*	*offririez,*	*offriroient,* should offer.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Offre,*	*offre,* offer thou.
Plur.	*Offrons,*	*offrez,*	*offrent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Offre,*	*offres,*	*offre,* that I may offer.
Plur.	*Offrions,*	*offriez,*	*offrent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Offrisse,*	*offrisses,*	*offrît,* that I might offer.
Plur.	*Offrissions,*	*offrissiez,*	*offrissent,*

OUIR, TO HEAR.

This verb is never used but in its participle passive, joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir,* to have, preceding the verb *dire,* to say: ex.

*J'*ai ouï dire *que,* I *have heard,* that, *&c.*

In general we make use of *apprendre,* irr, *v.*

OUVRIR, TO OPEN.

This verb, as well as its compounds,

Coüvrir, to cover, *Recouvrir,* to cover again.

Découvrir, {to discover, to uncover,} is conjugated like *OFFRIR.*

PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY;

And its compounds,

Départir, répartir, to distribute, to impart, | *Repartir,* to set out again, to reply;

Se REPENTIR, TO REPENT;
SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,
And its compounds;

Consentir, to consent, to agree, | *Ressentir*, to be sensible of, to resent,
Pressentir, to have a foresight or presentiment,
are conjugated like *Mentir*.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming they ran away.
Aussitôt que *voir*,v. *venir*,v.

- - - Avoid bad company. - - He does not love your
compagnie,f.
sister, because she lies. - - If you forgive me this time,
parce que,c. *fois*,f.
I never will lie any more. - - I cannot believe him;
pouvoir,v.
for he contradicts himself at every instant. - - Tell
car,c. *à tout moment.* *Dire*,v.
me what she has done to you; but above all do not lie.
sur,p.

- If you do not behave better, your mother will
se comporter,v.
die with grief. - - Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh
de chagrin,m. *à*
of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty.
Août,m.

- Misfortune often* seeks those who avoid it, and
Malheur,m. *chercher*,v.
sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. - -
quelquefois,adv. *sembler*,v.
Were I in your place, I would not offer her any money.
Si j'étois à

- Why do you not open the door for your sister?
Pourquoi,adv. *à*

* See note, page 32.

-- Your brother was no sooner arrived in London, than
plutôt,adv. *à*
I offered him my services. - - - Your actions never belie
your words. - - Open the window. - - I had heard you
paroles.
were going to Holland (at the) beginning of next
au commencement,m.
month. -- I hope you will never discover what I have
espérer,v.
told you. - - Cover my hat, and put it upon that
dire,v. *mettre*,v.
chair. - - I will set out to-morrow morning at seven
(o'clock). - - Do not set out without me. - - Let us go and
heures.
see Mrs. D**, I have heard she is dying. - - - Your sister
repents much of having sold her books. - - Gather that
d'avoir
pink, it smells charmingly. - - Her mother says she
œillet,m. *bien bon*,adv.
never will consent to it. - - If you do not take
prendre,v.
care, you will repent (of) your imprudence soon or
garde, *tôt*,adv.
late. - - Let us die for our country, and our death will
tard,adv. *patrie*,f.
be glorious. - - Every citizen (ought to) be disposed to
glorieux,adj. *doit*,v.
sacrifice himself, for the public good; it is at this
bien,m. *ce*,pro. *à*,p.
price only that (a man) acquires a lawful right
on *légitime*,adj. *droit*,m.
to the advantages of civil society. - - - I should die
satisfied, if I knew (that) you were happy. - - -
content,adj. *savoir*,v. (by the subj.)
You soon felt the effect of it. - - My cousin set out
effet,m.
from here yesterday morning at nine o'clock. - - I
ici,adv.
offer you my house, it is at your service. - - - You
may rely upon her, she will never discover
pouvoir,v. *compter*,v.

your secrets. - - I will never offer you my[2] horse[3] any more[1]. - - - He will feel it in his turn, when he à tour,m.
is old.
(by the fut.)

REVETIR, TO INVEST.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Revêtir*, to invest with, to give other clothes.
Part. act. *Revêtant*, investing.
Part. pass. *Revêtu, ue*, invested.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revêts*, *revêt*, I invest.
Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtois*, *revêtois*, *revêtoit*, I did invest.
Plur. *Revêtions*, *revêtiez*, *revêtoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtis*, *revêtis*, *revêtit*, I invested, *or* did in-
Plur. *Revêtîmes*, *revêtîtes*, *revêtirent*, vest.

Future.

Sing. *Revêtirai*, *revêtiras*, *revêtira*, I shall, *or* will in-
Plur. *Revêtirons*, *revêtirez*, *revêtiront*, vest.

Conditional.

Sing. *Revêtirois*, *revêtirois*, *revêtiroit*, I should, would,
Plur. *Revêtirions*, *revêtiriez*, *revêtiroient*, *&c.* invest.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revête*, invest thou.
Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Revête*, *revêtes*, *revête*, that I may invest.
Plur. *Revêtions*, *revêtiez*, *revêtent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtisse, revêtisses, revêtît*, that I might invest.
Plur. *Revêtissions, revêtissiez, revêtissent,*

SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Servir*, to serve.
Part. act. *Servant*, serving.
Part. pass. *Servi, ie*, served.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sers, sers, sert*, I serve, *or* am serving.
Plur. *Servons, servez, servent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Servois, servois, servoit*, I did serve, *or* was
Plur. *Servions, serviez, servoient,* serving.

Preterite.

Sing. *Servis, servis, servit*, I served, *or* did serve.
Plur. *Servîmes, servîtes, servirent,*

Future.

Sing. *Servirai, serviras, servira*, I shall, *or* will serve.
Plur. *Servirons, servirez, serviront,*

Conditional.

Sing. *Servirois, servirois, serviroit*, I would, should, *or*
Plur. *Servirions, serviriez, serviroient,* could serve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Sers, serve*, serve thou.
Plur. *Servons, servez, servent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Serve*,	*serves*,	*serve*, that I may serve.
Plur.	*Servions*,	*serviez*,	*servent*,

Preterite.

Sing.	*Servisse*,	*servisses*,	*servît*, that I might serve.
Plur.	*Servissions*,	*servissiez*,	*servissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Desservir, to do an ill office, to clear a table.
Se servir, to make use, to use.

SORTIR, TO GO OUT,
is conjugated like *MENTIR*.

SOUFFRIR, TO SUFFER,
is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

TENIR, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Tenir*, to hold.
Part. act.	*Tenant*, holding.
Part. pass.	*Tenu*, *ue*, held.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Tiens*,	*tiens*,	*tient*, I hold, *or* am holding.
Plur.	*Tenons*,	*tenez*,	*tiennent*,

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Tenois*,	*tenois*,	*tenoit*, I did hold, *or* was holding.
Plur.	*Tenions*,	*teniez*,	*tenoient*,

Preterite.

Sing.	*Tins*,	*tins*,	*tint*, I held, *or* did hold.
Plur.	*Tinmes*,	*tintes*,	*tinrent*,

Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, *or* will hold.
Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront,*

Conditional.

Sing. *Tiendrois, tiendrois, tiendroit*, I should, could, *or*
Plur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendroient,* would hold.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Tiens, tienne*, hold thou.
Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que que que
Sing. *Tienne, tiennes, tienne*, that I may hold.
Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tiennent,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Tinsse, tinsses, tînt*, that I might hold.
Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

S'abstenir, to abstain.
Appartenir, to belong.
Contenir, to contain.
Détenir, to detain.
Entretenir, to keep, to entertain.
Maintenir, to maintain.
Obtenir, to obtain.
Retenir, to retain, to keep.
Soutenir, to maintain, to hold, to support.

TRESSAILLIR, to start, to leap for.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.
Part. act. *Tressaillant*, starting.
Part. pass. *Tressailli, ie*, started.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Tressaille,	*tressailles,*	*tressaille,* I start.
Tressaillons,	*tressaillez,*	*tressaillent,*

Imperfect.

Tressaillois,	*tressaillois,*	*tressailloit,* I did start.
Tressaillions,	*tressailliez,*	*tressailloient,*

Preterite.

Tressaillis,	*tressaillis,*	*tressaillit,* I started.
Tressaillîmes,	*tressaillîtes,*	*tressaillirent,*

Future.

Tressaillirai,	*tressailliras,*	*tressaillira,* I shall, *or* will start.
Tressaillirons,	*tressaillirez,*	*tressailliront,*

Conditional.

Tressaillirois,	*tressaillirois,*	*tressailliroit,* I should, would, *&c.* start.
Tressaillirions,	*tressailliriez,*	*tressailliroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que	*que*	*que*
Tressaille,	*tressailles,*	*tressaille,* that I may
Tressaillions,	*tressailliez,*	*tressaillent,* start.

Preterite.

Tressaillisse,	*tressaillisses,*	*tressaillît,* that I might
Tressaillissions,	*tressaillissiez,*	*tressaillissent,* start.

AILLIR, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

LLIR, TO JUT, or JUT OUT (term in architecture), ugated like *TRESSAILLIR,* but is only used third person of some tenses and its infinitive

N. B. *SAILLIR*, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquid,) is regular, and conjugated like *PUNIR*.

VENIR, TO COME,

And its compounds,

Convenir de, à, to agree, to become, to fit, to suit,
Contrevenir à, to infringe,
Devenir, to become,*
Disconvenir de, to disagree,
Intervenir à, to intervene,
Parvenir à, to attain to,
Prévenir, to prevent, to prejudice, to anticipate, to prepossess,
Provenir, to proceed,
Revenir, to come back, to return,
Se souvenir de, to remember, to remind,†
Se ressouvenir de, to recollect,
Subvenir à, to relieve, to assist,
Survenir, to befall, to happen unexpectedly, to come to,

are conjugated like *TENIR*.

VETIR, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound *REVETIR*, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, has just been given in lieu of it.

* This verb in English is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing the noun or pronoun: but it must be observed, that, in French, the preposition must be suppressed, and the noun or pronoun become the nominative to the verb *devenir*: ex.

Ne vous informez point de ce que je *deviendrai*,	Do not inquire about what will become *of me*.
Que deviendra votre cousin *si son père l'abandonne ?*	What will become of *your cousin*, if his father forsake him ?
Si cela arrivoit, je ne sais ce que nous *deviendrions*,	Should that happen, I know not what would become *of us*.

† When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex.

Faites-*moi* souvenir *de passer chez votre tante*,	*Remind* me to call upon your aunt.
Oui, je vous en ferai souvenir,	Yes, I will *remind* you of it.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H***, does not serve me well. - - -
ami,m.
Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb,
morceau,m. *agneau*,
or a wing of that chicken? - - - - - We would
aile,f. *poulet*,m.
serve him with all our heart, if we could. - - - I
de *pouvoir*,v.
shall go out in half an hour. - - If we go to-day
aujourd'hui,adv.
to Richmond, we will (make use of) your coach. - - My
se servir de *carrosse*,m.
sister went out *this morning at nine o'clock, and is not
matin,m.
yet returned. - - Nobody knows what we suffered in our
revenir,v. *savoir*,v.
last voyage. - - If I were as ill as you, I would
voyage,m. *malade*,adj.
not go out of my room. - - Why do not you
chambre,f. *Pourquoi*,adv.
serve your friends, since you may do it? - - -
puisque,c. *pouvoir*,v.
Should† they forsake you, what would become of
abandonner,v.
you? - I would make use of your horse, if you (were
cheval,m. *avoir*
so kind as to) lend it to me. - - - - The more we are
la bonté de
above others, the more it becomes us to be
au dessus de,p.
modest and humble. - - My aunt and I came yester-
tante,f.
day to see you, but you were not at home. - - - I
hope you will keep your word, and come
tenir, *parole*,f.
to-morrow. - - - I assure you Mr. R**'s father holds
demain,adv. *assurer*,v.

* See page 154. † *Turn*, If they should, &c.

the first rank * in the town, but the son will never
rang,m.
attain his father's reputation. - - - Men acquire, by
Homme,m.
long labours, knowledge which often becomes
travail, m. *lumière*,f.
fatal to them. - - - I maintain, and will always
funeste,adj.
maintain, that you will not be happy without
heureux,adj. *sans*,p.
virtue. - - We were coming to see you, but you have
anticipated all my designs. - - She leaped for joy when
prévenir,v. *de*
she saw her. - - At last she has agreed to pay her
Enfin,adv. * *de*
an annual pension of twenty pounds. - - Her mother
started up at these words, and became furious. - - -
↩ *à*,p. *parole*,f. *furieux*,adj.
Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. - - - -
↩ *Vendredi*
This house will belong to me after her death. - - -
après,p. *mort*,f.
You will obtain leave to go out another time,
permission *de* *fois*,f.
if you come back soon. - - - This box contains all
bientôt.
my jewels. - - - I agree Miss N. is the prettiest of the
bijoux,m.
family; but she is so proud, that I know not what will
become of her. - - Who knows whether they will re-
savoir,v. *si*,c.
member (of) it or not? - They assaulted the town (in the)
au
middle of the night, and all their officers, even[2]
milieu,m. *même*,adv.
the general[1], agree that they have acquired much
acquérir,v.
glory. - - Remember that, if you infringe the law, you

* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses, page 212.

will incur the punishments decreed by the law. - - -
peine,f. *porté*,p.p.
Your illness proceeds from a great heat. - - - - The
chaleur,f.
irst time (that) you come to see me, I will keep you
(by the fut.)
wo or three days. - - - Mr. B. desired me to tell you,
prier,v. *de*
hat he will not come back to-day. - - - When the
urgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed
irurgien,m.* *sang*,m.
ut with an extraordinary impetuosity. - - - That poor
an will bless you, if you (give[2] him[1] other[3] clothes[2].)
bénir,v. *revêtir*,v.
le is so prepossessed against me, that he will not
contre,p. *vouloir*,v.
gree he (is in the wrong). - - We should certainly
avoir tort. *certainement*,adv.
ave come back yesterday, had we had time. - - You will
hier,adv. *si* *le temps*.
ecome a great man, if you continue to study with
continuer,v. *de*
he same assiduity. - - He would have come to see us
assiduité,f. *être*,v.
st week, if it had not rained. - - The first time
semaine,f. *plu*,p.p. *fois*,f.
go out, remind† me to call on your bro-
y the fut.) *de passer*,v. *chez*,p.
er. - - - That hat would suit you very well, if you
ere a little taller. - - - - Do not go out to-day, you
ill suffer much if you do. - - I should not suffer
beaucoup,adv.
o much) if it were fine weather. - - Why do not
ant,adv. *faisoit*,v.
ou abstain from drinking? - - - The king has invested
boire,v.
at nobleman with all his authority. - - - You may
seigneur,m. *de* *Pouvoir*,v.
t out this morning, but remember to come back

* See observation, p. 156. † See the last note, page 250.

at night. - - - Were I in your place, I would det
ce soir,m. *à* *place*,f.
him here a little longer; for he always ke
long-tems,adv. *car*,c.
himself shut up in his house. - - I do not think t
enferme,p.p. *croire*,v.
colour suits your sister. - - When will she ret
(by the subj.) *Quand*,adv.
from the country? - - She wrote she would come n
campagne,f.
Saturday, if the weather were fine.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Asseoir*, to sit down.
Part. act. *Asseyant*, sitting down.
Part. pass. *Assis, ise*, sat down (or seated.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied*, I sit down.
Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Asseyois, asseyois, asseyoit*, I did sit, *or* was sitti
Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseyoient*, do

Preterite.

Sing. *Assis, assis, assit*, I sat down.
Plur. *Assîmes, assîtes, assirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Assiérai, assiéras, assiéra*, I shall, *or* will sit do
Plur. Assiérons, assiérez, assiéront,

Conditional.

Sing. *Assiérois, assiérois, assiéroit,* I should, would, *or*
Plur. *Assiérions, assiériez, assiéroient,* could sit down.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Assieds, asseie,* sit down.
Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que que que
Sing. *Asseie, asseies, asseie,* that I may sit down.
Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseient,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Assisse, assisses, assît,* that I might sit down.
Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent,*

Asseoir is active, but is most generally conjugated as a reflected verb, which may easily be done, by the learner adding a double pronoun to the different tenses, and forming the compound ones by the verb *être,* as in *se promener,* in page 219: ex.

Je m'*assieds, tu* t'*assieds, il* s'*assied;*
Nous nous *asseyons, vous* vous *asseyez, ils* s'*asseient.*

Compound Tenses.

Je me *suis assis, tu* t'*es assis, il* s'*est assis;*
Nous nous *sommes assis, vous* vous *êtes assis,* &c.

The compound of this verb is,

Se rasseoir, to sit down again.

SEOIR, to fit well, to become, to fit, the primitive of *asseoir,* is never used in the present of its infinitive mood; and in its other tenses is conjugated only as follows:

Part. act. *Séyant,* fitting well, fitting, or becoming.
Part. pass. *Sis,* (never used but in the sense of situate, or lying.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Il sied, ils siéent, it becomes, they become, *&c.*

Imperfect.

Il séyoit, ils séyoient, it was becoming, *&c.*

Preterite wanting.

Future.

Il siéra, ils siéront, it *or* they will become.

Conditional.

Il siéroit, ils siéroient, it *or* they would become.

Subj. Pres.

Qu'il siée, qu'ils siéent, that it may, *&c.*

The other tenses are never used.

SURSEOIR, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compou of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated:

Part. act. *Sursoyant.*
Part. pass. *Sursis, ise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je sursois, &c. *nous sursoyons*, &c.

Imperfect.

Je sursoyois, &c. *nous sursoyions*, &c.

Preterite.

Je sursis, &c. *nous sursîmes*, *&c.*

Future.

Je surseoirai, &c. *nous surseoirons*, *&c.*

Conditional.

Je surseoirois, &c. *nous surseoirions*, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sursois, &c. *sursoyons*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je surseoie, &c. *que nous sursoyions*, &c.

Preterite.

Que je sursisse, &c. que nous sursissions, &c.

DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.
Part. act. wanting.
Part. pass. *Déchu, ue*, decayed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

ıg. *Déchois, déchois, déchoit*, I decay.
ır. *Déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient*,

Imperfect.

g. *Je déchoyois*, &c. Plur. *Nous déchoyions*, &c.

Preterite.

g. *Déchus, déchus, déchut*, I decayed, *or* did de-
r. *Déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent*, cay.

Future.

g. *Décherrai, décherras, décherra*, I shall, *or* will de-
r. *Décherrons, décherrez, décherront*, cay.

Conditional.

g. *Décherrois, décherrois, décherroit*, I should, would, *or* could decay.
r. *Décherrions, décherriez, décherroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
g. *Déchoie, déchoies, déchoie*, that I may decay.
r. *Déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient*,

Preterite.

g. *Déchusse, déchusses, déchût*, that I might decay.
r. *Déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent*,

CHOIR, the primitive of the above verb is obsolete.
ECHOIR, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated like *DECHOIR*. Its part. act. is échéant, échu, p. p.

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.
Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.
Part. pass. *Mû, ue*, moved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Meus*,	*meus*,	*meut*, I move.
Plur.	*Mouvons*,	*mouvez*,	*meuvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Mouvois*,	*mouvois*,	*mouvoit*, I did move.
Plur.	*Mouvions*,	*mouviez*,	*mouvoient*,

Preterite.

Sing.	*Mus*,	*mus*,	*mut*, I moved, *or* did mov
Plur.	*Mûmes*,	*mûtes*,	*murent*,

Future.

Sing.	*Mouvrai*,	*mouvras*,	*mouvra*, I shall *or* will mo
Plur.	*Mouvrons*,	*mouvrez*,	*mouvront*,

Conditional.

Sing.	*Mouvrois*,	*mouvrois*,	*mouvroit*, I should, could
Plur.	*Mouvrions*,	*mouvriez*,	*mouvroient*, would mo

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Meus*,	*meuve*, move thou.
Plur.	*Mouvons*,	*mouvez*,	*meuvent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Meuve*,	*meuves*,	*meuve*, that I may move.
Plur.	*Mouvions*,	*mouviez*,	*meuvent*,

Preterite.

Sing.	*Musse*,	*musses*,	*mût*, that I might move.
Plur.	*Mussions*,	*mussiez*,	*mussent*.

The compound of this verb is,

Emouvoir, to stir up, to move.

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE, TO HAVE IN ONE'S POWER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pouvoir*, to be able.
Part. act. *Pouvant*, being able.
Part. pass. *Pu*, been able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Puis*, or *peux*, *peix*, *peut*, I am able, I can *or* may.
Plur. *Pouvons*, *pouvez*, *peuvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Pouvois*, *pouvois*, *pouvoit*, I was able, *or* I could.
Plur. *Pouvions*, *pouviez*, *pouvoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Pus*, *pus*, *put*, I was able, *or* I could.
Plur. *Pûmes*, *pûtes*, *purent*,

Future.

Sing. *Pourrai*, *pourras*, *pourra*, I shall, *or* will be able.
Plur. *Pourrons*, *pourrez*, *pourront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourrois*, *pourrois*, *pourroit*, I should be able, I
Plur. *Pourrions*, *pourriez*, *pourroient*, could, *or* might.

IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Puisse*, *puisses*, *puisse*, that I may be able, *or*
Plur. *Puissions*, *puissiez*, *puissent*, I may.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pusse*, *pusses*, *pût*, that I might be able, *or*
Plur. *Pussions*, *pussiez*, *pussent*, I might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb: ex.

Je puis *vous vendre un bon cheval, si vous en avez besoin d'un,*	I *can* sell you a good if you want one.
Vous pouvez *aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures,*	You *may* go to th but come back o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered l present tense of the subjunctive: ex.

Puissiez-*vous être heureux!* *May* you be happ

Could is rendered by one of the following tense the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, o ditional present; and *might* by the last tense: ex

Je ne pouvois *pas mieux faire,*	I *could* do no better.
Il ne put *pas venir avec nous la semaine passée,*	He *could* not come v last week.
Vous pourriez *vous tromper aussi bien que lui,*	You *might* mistake as he.

Could or *might*, being joined to the verb *to ha* mediately followed by a participle passive, must b dered by the conditional past of the above verl the participle turned into the present of the inf mood: ex.

*J'*aurois pu *vous le dire hier au soir,*	I *could have* told it last night.
Vous auriez pu *le faire en trois jours,*	You *might have* don three days.

SAVOIR, TO KNOW *something.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Savoir*, to know.
Part. act.	*Sachant*, knowing.
Part. pass.	*Su, ue*, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sais, sais, sait*, I know.
Plur. *Savons, savez, savent,*

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Savois,*	*savois,*	*savoit,* I did know, *or* knew.
Plur.	*Savions,*	*saviez,*	*savoient,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Sus,*	*sus,*	*sut,* I knew, *or* did know.
Plur.	*Sûmes,*	*sûtes,*	*surent,*

Future.

Sing.	*Saurai,*	*sauras,*	*saura,* I shall, *or* will know.
Plur.	*Saurons,*	*saurez,*	*sauront,*

Conditional.

Sing.	*Saurois,**	*saurois,*	*sauroit,* I should, would, *or*
Plur.	*Saurions,*	*sauriez,*	*sauroient,* could know.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.		*Sache,*	*sache,* know thou.
Plur.	*Sachons,*	*sachez,*	*sachent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Sache,†*	*saches,*	*sache,* that I may know.
Plur.	*Sachions,*	*sachiez,*	*sachent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Susse,*	*susses,*	*sût,* that I might know.
Plur.	*Sussions,*	*sussiez,*	*sussent,*

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Valoir,* to be worth.
Part. act.	*Valant,* being worth.
Part. pass.	*Valu,* been worth.

* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot:* ex.

Je ne saurois *vous le dire,* I *cannot* tell it to you.

† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas,* and most commonly in answering a question: ex.

Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie?	Will the king go to the play?
Pas que je sache,	Not that I *know of.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Vaux*,	*vaux*,	*vaut*,	I am worth.
Plur.	*Valons*,	*valez*,	*valent*,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Valois*,	*valois*,	*valoit*,	I was worth.
Plur.	*Valions*,	*valiez*,	*valoient*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Valus*,	*valus*,	*valut*,	I was worth.
Plur.	*Valûmes*,	*valûtes*,	*valurent*,	

Future.

Sing.	*Vaudrai*,	*vaudras*,	*vaudra*,	I shall, *or* will be
Plur.	*Vaudrons*,	*vaudrez*,	*vaudront*,	worth.

Conditional.

Sing.	*Vaudrois*,	*vaudrois*,	*vaudroit*,	I should, *&c.* be
Plur.	*Vaudrions*,	*vaudriez*,	*vaudroient*,	worth.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Vaux*,	*vaille*,	be thou worth.
Plur.	*Valons*,	*valez*,	*vaillent*,	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Vaille*,	*vailles*,	*vaille*,	that I may be worth.
Plur.	*Valions*,	*valiez*,	*vaillent*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Valusse*,	*valusses*,	*valût*,	that I might be worth.
Plur.	*Valussions*,	*valussiez*,	*valussent*,	

The compound of this verb is,

Prévaloir, to prevail, is conjugated as *VALOIR*: but we say in the present tense of the subjunctive,

Que je préval-e, es, e, : ions, iez, ent.

VOIR, TO SEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Voir*, to see.
Part. act. *Voyant*, seeing.
Part. pass. *Vu, ue*, seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Vois,*	*vois,*	*voit,* I see.
Plur.	*Voyons,*	*voyez,*	*voient,*

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Voyois,*	*voyois,*	*voyoit,* I did see.
Plur.	*Voyions,*	*voyiez,*	*voyoient,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Vis,*	*vis,*	*vit,* I saw, *or* did see.
Plur.	*Vîmes,*	*vîtes,*	*virent,*

Future.

Sing.	*Verrai,*	*verras,*	*verra,* I shall, *or* will see.
Plur.	*Verrons,*	*verrez,*	*verront,*

Conditional.

Sing.	*Verrois,*	*verrois,*	*verroit,* I should, *&c.* see.
Plur.	*Verrions,*	*verriez,*	*verroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Vois,*	*voie,* see thou.
Plur.	*Voyons,*	*voyez,*	*voient,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Voie,*	*voies,*	*voie,* that I may see.
Plur.	*Voyions,*	*voyiez,*	*voient,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Visse,*	*visses,*	*vît,* that I might see.
Plur.	*Vissions,*	*vissiez,*	*vissent,*

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of. *Prévoir*, to foresee.
Revoir, to see again. Pourvoir, to provide.

PREVOIR differs from *VOIR* in the future: ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira.*
Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoirez, prévoiront;* An

Conditional. Present.

Sing. *Prévoirois, prévoirois, prévoiroit.*
Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiroient.*

POURVOIR makes in the Preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut.*
Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira.*
Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourvoirois, pourvoirois, pourvoiroit.*
Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiroient.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût.*
Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.*

VOULOIR, to be willing.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Vouloir*, to be willing.
Part. act. *Voulant*, being willing.
Part. pass. *Voulu, ue*, been willing.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing. *Veux, veux, veut*, I am willing, or I will.
Plur. *Voulons, voulez, veulent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulois, voulois, vouloit*, I was willing, or I wou
Plur. Voulions, vouliez, vouloient,

Preterite.

g. *Voulus*, *voulus*, *voulut*, I was willing, *or* I
r. *Voulûmes*, *voulûtes*, *voulurent*, would.

Future.

g. *Voudrai*, *voudras*, *voudra*, I shall be willing, *or*
r. *Voudrons*, *voudrez*, *voudront*, I will.

Conditional.

g. *Voudrois*, *voudrois*, *voudroit*, I should be wil-
r. *Voudrions*, *voudriez*, *voudroient*, ling, *or* I would.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

However, we say,
Veuillez bien, be willing to.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
g. *Veuille*, *veuilles*, *veuille*, that I may be wil-
r. *Voulions*, *vouliez*, *veuillent*, ling.

Preterite.

g. *Voulusse*, *voulusses*, *voulût*, that I might be wil-
r. *Voulussions*, *voulussiez*, *voulussent*, ling.

When the words *will* or *would* signify a will, choice, deliberation in the agent, and can be expressed by *use* or *chose*, *will* is rendered in French by the present the indicative mood, or future of this verb: ex.

veux y aller, et lui par- I *will*, or *choose to*, go
er moi-même, there, and speak to him myself:

ie veut pas manger, He *will* not eat, or does not *choose* to eat:

I *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the Imfect, Preterite, Conditional, or Compound of the sent.

Si je voulois, *je vous dirois, où elle demeure,*	If I *would*, or *chose*, I could tell you where she lives.
Il voulut *absolument partir hier,*	He *would*, absolutely, or absolutely *chose* to, set out yesterday.
Que voudriez-*vous que je fisse ?*	What *would* you have me do?

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have* immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the compound of the imperfect or compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*Si j'*avois voulu *lui parler,*	If I *would have* spoken to him, or *had* I *chosen* to speak to him.
*Vous n'*auriez *pas* voulu *prendre les armes, si,* &c.	You *would* not *have* taken up arms, if, *&c.*
Nous aurions pu l'arrêter, si nous eussions voulu,	We could have stopped him, if we *had been willing*, or *had chosen.*

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir? - - You
Pourquoi,adv.
come to see me very seldom. - - Let us sit down upon
rarement,adv.
the grass. - - Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot
herbe,f. *faire*,v. *tant*,adv.
learn my lesson. - - Do you know what has hap-
apprendre,v. *est arri-*
pened to her? - - No, I do not. - - As soon as he saw
ver,v. *Aussitôt que*,c.
he could not make her hear reason, he went
entendre,v. *s'en*
away. - - We went there ourselves, and soon knew
aller,v. *bientôt*,adv.

what she asked. - - See the letter she wrote me. - - We
écrire,v.
will not sit down till you have determined to
que ne *se déterminer*,v. subj. *à*
set out. - - The first time I saw your sister, she pleased
fois,f. *plaire*,v.
me. - I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so
damp. - - Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could
humide,adj. *prier*,v. *de dire*,v.
not come to see you this week, but (that) she would cer-
semaine,f. *cer-*
tainly come (at the) beginning of next
tainement,adv. *au commencement*,m.
month. - - Cannot you lend me three or four
mois,m. *prêter*,v.
guineas? - - If I would, I could soon know
guinée *bientôt*,adv.
whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. - -
si,c. *tante*,f. *non.*
The last time I was in the park, I could not distinguish
her on account of the trees that were between
à cause,p.
her and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. - - -
je n'ai fait que ∽
This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but the
drap,m.
colour becomes you very well. - - Do you not see the
defects of it? - - When you know your lesson
défaut,m. (by the fut.)
come and repeat it to me. - - Did you not know that
∽ *répéter*,v.
Mr. A. (was to) marry Miss B.? - - - I knew it, but
épouser,v. *mais*,c.
I was not willing to tell your brother of it. - - - I be-
parler,v.
lieve you could learn your lessons much bet-
apprendre,v. *beaucoup*,adv.
ter, if you would. - - Could you lend me your horse
prêter,v.

for two or three days? - - If your brother come with
jour,m. *avec*,p.
me, will he be able to follow me? - - What will you
suivre,v.
lay that he will not come without his sister? - - This
parier,v.
room can contain about a hundred people. - - Could
environ,p. *personne*.
they see so great an alteration, without being
changement,m. *sans*,p.
vexed (at it)? - - (It is) better to be unfortunate than
fâché,p.p. *en*,pro. *valoir*,v. *malheureux*,adj.
criminal. - - He who cannot command himself, is inca-
se
pable of commanding others. - - His best coat was not
aux *habit*,m.
worth two-pence when he arrived from Germany. - - -
sou, *Allemagne*.
We saw them yesterday. - - They did not foresee
hier,adv.
what would happen to them. - - We ought to
arriver,v. *devoir*,v.
make a judicious choice of those friends, to
faire,v. *judicieux*,adj. *choix*,m.
whom we intend to give our confidence. - - Do you
vouloir,v. *confiance*,f.
know where Miss B. lives? - - Yes, I do (know it),
où,adv. *demeurer*,v.
and I see her every day at her window. - - - Why will
fenêtre,f.
you not tell it me? - - She would marry him in
épouser,v. *en*,p.
spite of all her relations. - - It is for this reason
dépit,m. *parent*,m. *Ce*,pro.
her father says he will never see her again. - - I
dire,v.
have spoken of your wine to two friends of mine:
one has money, but he will not buy; the other would
buy, but he has no money. - - Some told me that
your brother could not pay me, others told me that

he would not; in short, I find that, when people
enfin,adv. *gens*,pl.
will not pay, we have much trouble. - - We regularly
pay all that we owe, but he says, that he will pay
nobody. - - All the finest talents united are not
réunir,v.
worth one virtue. - - Virtue is a quality which we can-
on,pro.
not (too much) praise. - - Severity and rigour may
trop,adv. *louer*,v. *Sévérité*,f. *rigueur*,f.
excite fear, but not love. - - You saw with what
crainte,f. *amour*,m.
goodness she received him. - - I would not tell her
bonté,f. *recevoir*,v.
what I think about it, for fear of giving her the least
de,p. *inf.*
subject of complaint. - - If you foresee the danger,
plainte.
why do you not endeavour to avoid it? - - They were
tâcher,v. *de éviter*,v.
willing to withdraw but your brother hindered
se retirer,v. *empêcher*,v.
them (from it), and desired them to sit down again.
prier,v. *de*
- - You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you
parler,v. *quand*,
please, but I may not take that liberty. - - -
vouloir,v. *prendre*,v.
Why may you not? - - - You know the esteem
estime,f.
and friendship that I have for him: you know
that his father is one of my oldest friends;
ancien,adj.
you know yourself the merit of both. - - He would
not sell me these buckles under four
vendre,v. *boucle*,f. *à moins de*,p.
guineas. - - I will not see (any more) your brother,
plus,adv.
but I will see you again as soon as I can. - - -
(by the fut.)

Every body thinks, that, if they would have pursued
* *poursuivre*,v.
the enemy briskly, they might have ended
vigoureusement,adv. *finir*,v.
the war on that day. - - Should we see ourselves re-
ré-
duced to so great difficulties? - - If I would have be-
duire,v. *
lieved him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy
croire,v. *de*
with him. - - He could have done his work in less
faire,v. *en*,p.
than ten minutes, if he had not amused himself in
s'amuser,v. *à*
reading. - - If you want that book, you may take
lire,v. *avoir besoin de*
it, it is at your service. - - If he sold all his horses now,
à *
the best of them would not be worth ten guineas. - - -
We might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if
jusqu'à,p. *minuit*,
that had not happened. - - Oh! my children, may you
be happy, and never bewail the moment of your
heureux,adj. *pleurer*,v.
birth! - - I spoke to her (a long while), but could
naissance,f. *long-temps*,adv.
not persuade her to come with me. - - - May I go
de
and see him? - - - Yes, you may, but come back,
as soon as you can.
aussitôt que,c. (by the fut.)

* After the conjunction *Si*, always use the imperfect; see p. 150, and 155.

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOUDRE, TO ABSOLVE, TO ACQUIT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Absoudre*, to absolve.
Part. act.	*Absolvant*, absolving.
Part. pass.	*Absous, oute*, absolved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Absous*,	*absous*,	*absout*, I absolve.
Plur.	*Absolvons*,	*absolvez*,	*absolvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Absolvois*,	*absolvois*,	*absolvoit*, I did absolve.
Plur.	*Absolvions*,	*absolviez*,	*absolvoient*,

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing.	*Absoudrai*,	*absoudras*,	*absoudra*,	I shall, *or* will
Plur.	*Absoudrons*,	*absoudrez*,	*absoudront*,	absolve.

Conditional.

Sing.	*Absoudrois*,	*absoudrois*,	*absoudroit*,	I should, &c.
Plur.	*Absoudrions*,	*absoudriez*,	*absoudroient*,	absolve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Absous*,	*absolve*, absolve thou.
Plur.	*Absolvons*,	*absolvez*,	*absolvent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Absolve*,	*absolves*,	*absolve*,	that I may absolve.
Plur.	*Absolvions*,	*absolviez*,	*absolvent*,	

Preterite is wanting.

SOUDRE, TO SOLVE, (the primitive of this verb), is used only in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

Dissoudre, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

Dissoudre has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*

Résoudre has its participle passive, *résolu*: its preterite is,

Sing.	*Résolus*,	*résolus*,	*résolut.*
Plur.	*Résolûmes*,	*résolûtes*,	*résolurent.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

Sing.	*Résolusse*,	*résolusses*,	*résolût.*
Plur.	*Résolussions*,	*résolussiez*,	*résolussent.*

ATTEINDRE, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN, TO OVERTAKE, and

ASTREINDRE, TO OBLIGE;

AVEINDRE, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT, are conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

The two foregoing verbs are growing obsolete.

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Battre*,	to beat.
Part. act.	*Battant*,	beating.
Part. pass.	*Battu, ue*,	beaten.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Bats*,	*bats*,	*bat*,	I beat, *or* am beating
Plur.	*Battons*,	*battez*,	*battent*,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Battois*,	*battois*,	*battoit*,	I did beat, *or* was
Plur.	*Battions*,	battiez,	battoient,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Battis,*	*battis,*	*battit,* I beat, *or* did beat.
Plur.	*Battîmes,*	*battîtes,*	*battirent,*

Future.

Sing.	*Battrai,*	*battras,*	*battra,* I shall, *or* will beat.
Plur.	*Battrons,*	*battrez,*	*battront,*

Conditional.

Sing.	*Battrois,*	*battrois,*	*battroit,* I should, &c. beat.
Plur.	*Battrions,*	*battriez,*	*battroient,*

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		*Bats,*	*batte,* beat thou.
Plur.	*Battons,*	*battez,*	*battent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Batte,*	*battes,*	*batte,* that I may beat.
Plur.	*Battions,*	*battiez,*	*battent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Battisse,*	*battisses,*	*battît,* that I might beat.
Plur.	*Battissions,*	*battissiez,*	*battissent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

Abattre, to pull down, to throw down.
Combattre, to fight.
Débattre, to debate.
Se débattre, to struggle.
Rabattre, to abate, to beat down.
Rebattre, to beat again.

BOIRE, to drink.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	*Boire,* to drink.
Part. act.	*Buvant,* drinking.
Part. pass.	*Bu, ue,* drunk.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Bois,*	*bois,*	*boit,* I drink, *or* am drinki
Plur.	*Buvons,*	*buvez,*	*boivent,*

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Buvois,*	*buvois,*	*buvoit,* I did drink, *or* was d
Plur.	*Buvions,*	*buviez,*	*buvoient,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Bus,*	*bus,*	*but,* I drank, *or* did drink.
Plur.	*Bûmes,*	*bûtes,*	*burent,*

Future.

Sing.	*Boirai,*	*boiras,*	*boira,* I shall, *or* will drinl
Plur.	*Boirons,*	*boirez,*	*boiront,*

Conditional.

Sing.	*Boirois,*	*boirois,*	*boiroit,* I should, &c. drin
Plur.	*Boirions,*	*boiriez,*	*boiroient;*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Bois,*	*boive,* drink thou.
Plur.	*Buvons,*	*buvez,*	*boivent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Boive,*	*boives,*	*boive,* that I may drink.
Plur.	*Buvions,*	*buviez,*	*boivent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Busse,*	*busses,*	*bût,* that I might drink.
Plur.	*Bussions,*	*bussiez,*	*bussent,*

N. B. *Boire* dans *quelque chose,* is, To drink something.

BRAIRE, TO BRAY.

This verb is seldom used, except in the p tense of the infinitive mood, and the third

singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional, of the indicative mood.

Infinitive. *Braire*, to bray.—Present, indicative. *Il brait, ils braient.*—Future. *Il braira, ils brairont.*—Conditional. *Il brairoit, ils brairoient.*—This verb expresses the discordant cry of an ass.

BRUIRE, TO ROAR, TO MAKE A GREAT NOISE.

This verb is used only in the present of the infinitive mood, and in the third person of the imperfect, indicative: *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient.* Its participle active, *bruyant*, is often but a mere adjective.

CEINDRE, TO GIRD,

And its compound. *Enceindre*, to inclose, to encompass, are conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

CIRCONCIRE, TO CIRCUMCISE,

is conjugated like *CONFIRE*,
but has its participle passive ending in *is, ise*, instead of *it.*

CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Conclure*, to conclude.
Part. act.	*Concluant*, concluding.
Part. pass.	*Conclu, ue*, concluded.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Conclus*,	*conclus*,	*conclut*,	I conclude.
Plur.	*Concluons*,	*concluez*,	*concluent*,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Concluois*,	*concluois*,	*concluoit*,	I did conclude.
Plur.	*Concluïons*,	*concluïez*,	*concluoient*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Conclus,*	*conclus,*	*conclut,*	I concluded, *or* did
Plur.	*Conclûmes,*	*conclûtes,*	*conclurent,*	conclude.

Future.

Sing.	*Conclurai,*	*concluras,*	*conclura,*	I shall, *or* will
Plur.	*Conclurons,*	*conclurez,*	*concluront,*	conclude.

Conditional.

Sing.	*Conclurois,*	*conclurois,*	*concluroit,*	I should. &c.
Plur.	*Conclurions;*	*concluriez,*	*concluroient,*	conclude.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		*Conclus,*	*conclue,* conclude thou.
Plur.	*Concluons,*	*concluez,*	*concluent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Conclue,*	*conclues,*	*conclue,*	that I may con-
Plur.	*Concluïons,*	*concluïez,*	*concluent,*	clude.

Preterite.

Sing.	*Conclusse,*	*conclusses,*	*conclût,*	that I might con-
Plur.	*Conclussions,*	*conclussiez,*	*conclussent,*	clude.

CONDUIRE, to conduct, to lead, to carry.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	*Conduire,* to conduct.
Part. act.	*Conduisant,* conducting.
Part. pass.	*Conduit, te,* conducted.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing.	*Conduis,*	*conduis,*	*conduit,*	I lead, &c.
Plur.	*Conduisons,*	*conduisez,*	*conduisent,*	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Conduisois,*	*conduisois,*	*conduisoit,*	I did lead.
Plur.	*Conduisions,*	conduisiez,	conduisoient,	

Preterite.

Conduisis,	*conduisis*,	*conduisit*, I led.
Conduisîmes,	*conduisîtes*,	*conduisirent*,

Future.

Conduirai,	*conduiras*,	*conduira*, I shall, *or*
Conduirons,	*conduirez*,	*conduiront*, will lead.

Conditional.

Conduirois,	*conduirois*,	*conduiroit*, I should, &c.
Conduirions,	*conduiriez*,	*conduiroient*, lead.

Imperative Mood.

	Conduis,	*conduise*, lead thou.
Conduisons,	*conduisez*,	*conduisent*,

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que	*que*	*que*
Conduise,	*conduises*,	*conduise*, that I may
Conduisions,	*conduisiez*,	*conduisent*, lead.

Preterite.

Conduisisse,	*conduisisses*,	*conduisît*, that I might
Conduisissions,	*conduisissiez*,	*conduisissent*, lead.

Its compound is

Reconduire, to lead again.

CONFIRE, to preserve.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	*Confire*, to preserve.
Part. act.	*Confisant*, preserving.
Part. pass.	*Confit, te*, preserved.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Confis,	*confis*,	*confit*, I preserve.
Confisons,	*confisez*,	*confisent*,

Imperfect.

Confisois,	*confisois*,	*confisoit*, I did preserve.
Confisions,	*confisiez*,	confisoient,

Preterite.

Sing. *Confis*, *confis*, *confit*, I preserved.
Plur. *Confîmes*, *confîtes*, *confirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Confirai*, *confiras*, *confira*, I shall, *or* will pre-
Plur. *Confirons*, *confirez*, *confiront*, serve.

Conditional.

Sing. *Confirois*, *confirois*, *confiroit*, I should, &c. pre-
Plur. *Confirions*, *confiriez*, *confiroient*, serve.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Confis*, *confise*, preserve thou.
Plur. *Confisons*, *confisez*, *confisent*,

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Confise*, *confises*, *confise*, that I may preserve.
Plur. *Confisions*, *confisiez*, *confisent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Confisse*, *confisses*, *confît*, that I might preserve.
Plur. *Confissions*, *confissiez*, *confissent*,

CONNOITRE, to know, to be acquainted with, *somebody*.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Connoître*, to know.
Part. act. *Connoissant*, knowing.
Part. pass. *Connu*, *ue*, known.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing. *Connois*, *connois*, *connoît*, I know.
Plur. *Connoissons*, *connoissez*, *connoissent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Connoissois*, *connoissois*, *connoissoit*, I did know.
Plur. *Connoissions*, *connoissiez*, *connoissoient*,

Preterite.

Sing.	*Connus,*	*connus,*	*connut,*	I knew.
Plur.	*Connûmes,*	*connûtes,*	*connurent,*	

Future.

Sing.	*Connoîtrai,*	*connoîtras,*	*connoîtra,*	I shall, &c.
Plur.	*Connoîtrons,*	*connoîtrez,*	*connoîtront,*	know.

Conditional.

Sing.	*Connoîtrois,*	*connoîtrois,*	*connoîtroit,*	I should, &c.
Plur.	*Connoîtrions,*	*connoîtriez,*	*connoîtroient,*	know.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		*Connois,*	*connoisse,*	know thou.
Plur.	*Connoissons,*	*connoissez,*	*connoissent,*	

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Connoisse,*	*connoisses,*	*connoisse,*	that I may
Plur.	*Connoissions,*	*connoissiez,*	*connoissent,*	know.

Preterite.

Sing.	*Connusse,*	*connusses,*	*connût,*	that I might know.
Plur.	*Connussions,*	*connussiez,*	*connussent,*	

The compounds of this verb are,

Méconnoître, to take for another.

Reconnoître, to acknowledge, to know again.

CONSTRUIRE, to construct, to build, is conjugated like *CONDUIRE.*

CONTRAINDRE, to constrain, to compel, to force, is conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

COUDRE, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Coudre*, to sew.
Part. act. *Cousant*, sewing.
Part. pass. *Cousu, ue*, sewed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Couds,*	*couds,*	*coud*, I sew, *or* am sewing.
Plur.	*Cousons,*	*cousez,*	*cousent,*

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Cousois,*	*cousois,*	*cousoit*, I did sew, *or* was sew-
Plur.	*Cousions,*	*cousiez,*	*cousoient,* ing.

Preterite.

Sing.	*Cousis,*	*cousis,*	*cousit*, I sewed.
Plur.	*Cousîmes,*	*cousîtes,*	*cousirent,*

Future.

Sing.	*Coudrai,*	*coudras,*	*coudra*, I shall, *or* will sew.
Plur.	*Coudrons,*	*coudrez,*	*coudront,*

Conditional.

Sing.	*Coudrois,*	*coudrois,*	*coudroit*, I should, &c. sew.
Plur.	*Coudrions,*	*coudriez,*	*coudroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Couds,*	*couse*, sew thou.
Plur.	*Cousons,*	*cousez,*	*cousent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Couse,*	*couses,*	*couse*, that I may sew.
Plur.	*Cousions,*	*cousiez,*	*cousent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Cousisse,*	*cousisses,*	*cousît*, that I might sew.
Plur.	*Cousissions,*	*cousissiez,*	*cousissent,*

Its compounds are,

Découdre, to unsew. *Recoudre*, to sew again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

I know several persons in this country who
plusieurs,adj. *pays*,m.
speak as good French, as if they had been (brought up)
bien,adv. *élevé*,p.p.
in France. - - - - Do you know Mr. A.? - - -
Yes, we know him very well; and, though he is
Oui,adv. *soit*
rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for
it. - - - He has been beaten (soundly). - - If you
comme il faut,
knew the question, you would resolve it in two
question,f. *en*
words. - - I will soon conclude, if you think as
mot,m. *comme*,adv.
your brother does. - - We should beat them, if they
did not fight in their own country. - - Do not
propre,adj.
beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. - - -
faute,f.
We ran for above two hours, but at last
pendant,p. *plus de*,adv. *enfin*,adv.
your brother overtook him, and brought him back. - -
ramener,v.
You would never see him again, if you knew him. - - -
He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged
temps,m.
to (cry for) mercy. - - This mortification has pulled
de demander,v. *grâce*.
down his pride, I assure you: however, the judge
cependant,adv.
has acquitted him of the accusation falsely
faussement,adv.
brought against him. - - Mr. R. told me some time
intenté,p.p. *contre*,p.

ago, that he would build a ship on a new plan. - - -
What will you drink? - - I will drink (nothing but)
ne que
water. - - Do not drink so much. - - If your father
tant,adv.
were here, you would not drink (at all.) - - -
du tout.
Let us fill our glasses, and drink our friend's health. - -
verre,m. *santé*,f.
We beat them because our troops were better dis-
parceque,c. *dis-*
ciplined than theirs. - - Come with us, we shall
cipliné,p.p.
see whether she will know you again or not. - - If you
si,c. *non.*
knew her, I am certain she would please you. - - -
plaire,v.
The English drink as much tea as the Venetians
autant,adv. *thé*, *Vénitien*,m.
drink coffee. - - - After tea we conducted the ladies
café.
to the concert. - - - When they had explained to us
all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the
se passer,v. *avoir*
wrong). - - - Your brother's coat was torn,
tort. *déchirer*,v.
but our tailor sewed it up again so skilfully,
tailleur,m. *adroitement*,adv.
that his father did not perceive it. - - - Unsew
that gown. - - I will sew it to-morrow. - - - The
Jews and the Mahometans circumcise their
Juif,m. *Mahométan*,m.
children a few days after their birth. - - - Why
peu,adv. *naissance*,f.
do not you preserve some fruits this year? - - - He
année,f.
would not know you, if he saw you now. - - - Did
à présent,adv.

you ask him whether he (was acquainted with) any of
si,c.
these ladies? - - I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust
se fier,v.
to him. - - You will force your father to punish you
à
if you do not behave better. - - - The last
se comporter,v.
time we went to Vauxhall, we drank three bottles of
Champaigne-wine. - - The enemy beat us on the
le
eighteenth, but we beat them again two days after.
- - What will you drink, ladies? - - We shall willing-
mesdames,f. *volon-*
ly drink some wine; for we have not drunk
tiers,adv.
any since our departure from France. - - - -
depuis,p. *départ*,m.
Drink, said she to me, (out of) that cup, the
dans *coupe*,f.
only token which your father has left
seul,adj. *marque*,f. *ait laisser*,v.
us of his love. - - - Virtue in indigence is like
affection,f. *dans*,p. *comme*
a traveller whom the wind and rain compel to
pluie,f. *de*
wrap himself up in his cloak. - - I would have
envelopper,v. *de*, *manteau*,m.
preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is too
trop,adv.
dear. - - Thence we concluded you could not come
De là,adv.
to-day. - - I know nobody in this neighbourhood. - - I
voisinage,m.
knew your sister again as soon as I saw her. - - Though
Quand,c.
you should take three dozen of them, I could
douzaine,

not abate a farthing. - - The wind was so great that
liard,m. *vent*,m. *fort*,
it has thrown down one or two trees in our garden.

CRAINDRE, TO FEAR, TO BE AFRAID.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.
Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.
Part. pass. *Craint*, *ainte*, feared.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, *or* am afraid.
Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignois*, *craignois*, *craignoit*, I did fear, *or*
Plur. *Craignions*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*, was afraid.

Preterite.

Sing. *Craignis*, *craignis*, *craignit*, I feared.
Plur. *Craignîmes*, *craignîtes*, *craignirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Craindrai*, *craindras*, *craindra*, I shall, *or* will
Plur. *Craindrons*, *craindrez*, *craindront*, fear.

Conditional.

Sing. *Craindrois*, *craindrois*, *craindroit*, I should, *&c.*
Plur. *Craindrions*, *craindriez*, *craindroient*, fear.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crains*, *craigne*, fear thou.
Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*qne*	
Sing.	*Craigne,*	*craignes,*	*craigne,*	that I may fear.
Plur.	*Craignions,*	*craigniez,*	*craignent,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Craignisse,*	*craignisses,*	*craignît,*	that I might
Plur.	*Craignissions,*	*craignissiez,*	*craignissent,*	fear.

CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Croire,* to believe.
Part. act.	*Croyant,* believing.
Part. pass.	*Cru, ue,* believed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Crois,*	*crois,*	*croit,*	I believe.
Plur.	*Croyons,*	*croyez,*	*croient,*	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Croyois,*	*croyois,*	*croyoit,*	I did believe.
Plur.	*Croyions,*	*croyiez,*	*croyoient,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Crus,*	*crus,*	*crut,*	I believed.
Plur.	*Crûmes,*	*crûtes,*	*crurent,*	

Future.

Sing.	*Croirai,*	*croiras,*	*croira,*	I shall, *or* will believe.
Plur.	*Croirons,*	*croirez,*	*croiront,*	

Conditional.

Sing.	*Croirois,*	*croirois,*	*croiroit,*	I should, &c. believe.
Plur.	*Croirions,*	*croiriez,*	*croiroient,*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		*Crois,*	*croie,* believe thou.
Plur.	*Croyons,*	*croyez,*	*croient,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*què*	*qùe*	
Sing.	*Croie,*	*croies,*	*croie,*	that I may believe.
Plur.	*Croyions,*	*croyiez,*	*croient,*	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Crusse,*	*crusses,*	*crût,*	that I might believe.
Plur.	*Crussions,*	*crussiez,*	*crussent,*	

CROITRE, TO GROW,

And its compounds,

Accroître, to accrue, *Décroître,* to decrease, to grow less, | *Recroître,* to grow again,

are conjugated like *CONNOITRE.*

CUIRE, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, *often Englished by* TO DO,

And its compound *Recuire,* to bake again;

DEDUIRE, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,

and *DETRUIRE,* TO DESTROY;

are conjugated like *CONDUIRE.*

DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Dire,* to say.
Part. act.	*Disant,* saying.
Part. pass.	*Dit, te,* said.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

g.	*Dis,*	*dis,*	*dit,* I say, *or* am saying.
r.	*Disons,*	*dites,**	*disent,*

Imperfect.

g.	*Disois,*	*disois,*	*disoit,* I did say, *or* was saying.
r.	*Disions,*	*disiez,*	*disoient,*

Preterite.

g.	*Dis,*	*dis,*	*dit,* I did say, *or* said.
r.	*Dîmes,*	*dîtes,*	*dirent,*

Future.

g.	*Dirai,*	*diras,*	*dira,* I shall, *or* will say.
r.	*Dirons,*	*direz,*	*diront,*

Conditional.

g.	*Dirois,*	*dirois,*	*diroit,* I should, *&c.* say.
r.	*Dirions,*	*diriez,*	*diroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

g.		*Dis,*	*dise,* say thou.
r.	*Disons,*	*dites,**	*disent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
g.	*Dise,*	*dises,*	*dise,* that I may say.
r.	*Disions,*	*disiez,*	*disent,*

Preterite.

g.	*Disse,*	*disses,*	*dît,* that I might say.
r.	*Dissions,*	*dissiez,*	*dissent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

redire, to contradict.
édire, to unsay, to retract, to recant.
Interdire, to interdict, to forbid.
Prédire, to foretell.

ll the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated ts primitive) make *ites* instead of *ites;* and *Maudire* doubles its ugh the whole verb; ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils issent,* &c.

Médire de, to slander, to speak ill.	*Redire*, to say, or tell again.
Maudire, to curse.	

ECLORE, TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME TO LIFE.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third persons of the following tenses.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Eclore*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.
Part. pass. *Eclos*, *ose*,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Il éclôt.*
Plur. *Ils éclosent.*

Future.

Sing. *Il éclôra.*
Plur. *Ils éclôront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Il éclôroit.*
Plur. *Ils éclôroient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Qu'il éclose.*
Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clore*, to shut, to surround; and another compound, *Enclore*, to shut in, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches.

ECRIRE, TO WRITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.
Part. act. *Ecrivant*, writing.
Part. pass. *Ecrit, ite*, written.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

. *Ecris*, *écris*, *écrit*, I write, *or* am writing.
. *Ecrivons*, *écrivez*, *écrivent*,

Imperfect.

. *Ecrivois*, *écrivois*, *écrivoit*, I did write, *or* was
. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivoient*, writing.

Preterite.

. *Ecrivis*, *écrivis*, *écrivit*, I wrote, *or* did write.
. *Ecrivîmes*, *écrivîtes*, *écrivirent*,

Future.

. *Ecrirai*, *écriras*, *écrira*, I shall, *or* will write.
. *Ecrirons*, *écrirez*, *écriront*,

Conditional.

. *Ecrirois*, *écrirois*, *écriroit*, I should, &c. write.
. *Ecririons*, *écririez*, *écriroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ecris, *écrive*, write thou.
. *Ecrivons*, *écrivez*, *écrivent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *qne*
. *Ecrive*, *écrives*, *écrive*, that I may write.
. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivent*.

Preterite.

. *Ecrivisse*, *écrivisses*, *écrivît*, that I might write.
. *Ecrivissions*, *écrivissiez*, *écrivissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Décrire, to describe.	*Proscrire*, to proscribe, outlaw, to banish.
Inscrire, to inscribe.	*Souscrire*, to subscribe.
Prescrire, to prescribe.	*Transcrire*, to transcribe.
Récrire, to write again.	

ENDUIRE, TO DO OVER,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE.*

ETEINDRE, TO EXTINGUISH,
is conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

EXCLURE, TO EXCLUDE,
is conjugated like *CONCLURE.*
Its participle passive is *exclus.*

FAIRE, TO MAKE, TO DO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Faire*, to make.
Part. act.	*Faisant*,* making.
Part. pass.	*Fait*, *te*, made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Fais*,	*fais*,	*fait*, I make, *or* am making.
Plur.	*Faisons**,	*faites*,	*font*,

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Faisois*,	*faisois*,	*faisoit*, I did make, *or* was mak
Plur.	*Faisions*,	*faisiez*,	*faisoient*,

Preterite.

Sing.	*Fis*,	*fis*,	*fit*, I made, *or* did make.
Plur.	*Fîmes*,	*fîtes*,	*firent*,

* In the whole of the *imperfect* and in the other cases marked with a *, *ai* is silent.

Future.

Ferai, feras, fera, I shall, *or* will make.
Ferons, ferez, feront,

Conditional.

Ferois, ferois, feroit, I should, *&c.* make.
Ferions, feriez, feroient,

Imperative Mood.

Fais, fasse, make thou.
Faisons, faites, fassent,

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que que que
Fasse, fasses, fasse, that I may make.
Fassions, fassiez, fassent,

Preterite.

Fisse, fisses, fît, that I might make.
Fissions, fissiez, fissent,

The compounds of this verb are,

trefaire, to counterfeit, to mimic.
aire, to undo, to defeat.
léfaire, to get rid of, to part with.
Refaire, to do, *or* make up again.
Redéfaire, to undo again.
Satisfaire, to satisfy.
Surfaire, to exact, to ask too much.

FEINDRE, to feign, to dissemble, to pretend,

is conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

FRIRE, TO FRY.

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated: ex.

Faites frire *ce poisson*, *Fry* that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit*, *ite*, fried.

INDUIRE, TO INDUCE,
INSTRUIRE, TO INSTRUCT,
and *INTRODUIRE*, TO INTRODUCE,
are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

JOINDRE, TO JOIN,
and its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,
are conjugated like *CRAINDRE*.

LIRE, TO READ.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Lire*, to read.
Part. act.	*Lisant*, reading.
Part. pass.	*Lu*, *ue*, read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Lis*, *lis*, *lit*, I read, *or* am reading.
Plur. *Lisons*, *lisez*, *lisent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Lisois*, *lisois*, *lisoit*, I did read, *or* was reading.
Plur. *Lisions*, *lisiez*, *lisoient*,

Preterite.

Lus, *lus*, *lut*, I read, *or* did read.
Lûmes, *lûtes*, *lurent*,

Future.

Lirai, *liras*, *lira*, I shall, *or* will read.
Lirons, *lirez*, *liront*,

Conditional.

Lirois, *lirois*, *liroit*, I should, would, *&c.* read.
Lirions, *liriez*, *liroient*,

Imperative Mood.

Lis, *lise*, read thou.
Lisons, *lisez*, *lisent*,

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Lise, *lises*, *lise*, that I may read.
Lisions, *lisiez*, *lisent*,

Preterite.

Lusse, *lusses*, *lût*, that I might read.
Lussions, *lussiez*, *lussent*,

Its compounds are,

lire, to elect. *Relire*, to read again.

LUIRE, to shine.

and its compound *Reluire*, to glitter,
are conjugated like *CONDUIRE;*
take no *t* at the end of their participle passive:
ex. *Lui*, shined.

METTRE,* TO PUT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mettre*, to put.
Part. act. *Mettant*, putting.
Part. pass. *Mis*, *se*, put.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Mets*, *mets*, *met*, I put, *or* am putting.
Plur. *Mettons*, *mettez*, *mettent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mettois*, *mettois*, *mettoit*, I did put, *or* was putting.
Plur. *Mettions*, *mettiez*, *mettoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Mis*, *mis*, *mit*, I did put, *or* put.
Plur. *Mîmes*, *mîtes*, *mirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Mettrai*, *mettras*, *mettra*, I shall, *or* will put.
Plur. *Mettrons*, *mettrez*, *mettront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Mettrois*, *mettrois*, *mettroit*, I should, would, *&c.* put:
Plur. *Mettrions*, *mettriez*, *mettroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mets*, *mette*, put thou.
Plur. *Mettons*, *mettez*, *mettent*,

* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflective verb, expresses the beginning or continuation of an action or application; it is then constantly followed by the particle *à*, and an infinitive mood. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin*: ex.

Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire, Every time he sees her, he *begins laughing*.
Il s'est mis tout de bon à étudier, He *has begun to study* in earn

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Mette*,	*mettes*,	*mette*,	that I may put.
Plur.	*Mettions*,	*mettiez*,	*mettent*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Misse*,	*misses*,	*mît*,	that I might put.
Plur.	*Missions*,	*missiez*,	*missent*,	

The compounds of this verb are,

Admettre, to admit.
Commettre, to commit.
Compromettre, to compromise.
Démettre, to turn out, to remove.
Se démettre de, to resign.
Omettre, to omit.
Permettre, to permit.
Promettre, to promise.*
Remettre, to deliver up, to put back again, to recollect, to put off, to defer.
Soumettre, to submit.
Transmettre, to transmit.

MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Moudre*,	to grind.
Part. act.	*Moulant*,	grinding.
Part. pass.	*Moulu*, *ue*,	ground.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	*Mouds*,	*mouds*,	*moud*,	I grind, *or* am grinding.
Plur.	*Moulons*,	*moulez*,	*moulent*,	

Imperfect.

Sing.	*Moulois*,	*moulois*,	*mouloit*,	I did grind, *or* was grind-
Plur.	*Moulions*,	*mouliez*,	*mouloient*,	ing.

* The participle active of this verb (promising), when used adjectively and expressing the mental qualities of somebody, is rendered in French by *qui promet*, or *promettoit beaucoup*, or *dont il y a*, or *avoit beaucoup à espérer*: ex.

Le Major A. étoit un officier qui promettoit beaucoup, *ou* dont il y avoit beaucoup à espérer,	Major A. was a *very promising officer*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus,*	*moulus,*	*moulut,*	I ground, *or*
Plur. *Moulûmes,*	*moulûtes,*	*moulurent,*	g

Future.

Sing. *Moudrai,*	*moudras,*	*moudra,*	I shall, *or* will g
Plur. *Moudrons,*	*moudrez,*	*moudront,*	

Conditional.

Sing. *Moudrois,*	*moudrois,*	*moudroit,*	I should, w
Plur. *Moudrions,*	*moudriez,*	*moudroient,*	&c. gri

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	*Mouds,*	*moule,* grind thou.
Plur. *Moulons,*	*moulez,*	*moulent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Moule,*	*moules,*	*moule,* that I may gri
Plur.	*Moulions,*	*mouliez,*	*moulent,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulusse,*	*moulusses,*	*moulût,*	that I might gr
Plur. *Moulussions,*	*moulussiez,*	*moulussent,*	

The compounds of this verb are,

Emoudre, to wet. *Remoudre,* to grind agai

EXERCISES on the foregoing VERBS an their COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it
de lui penser, v.
will speak to her to oblige you, but I know
pour, p.
does not fear me. - - Why do you not believe me

They (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers.
être,v.
- We would not believe him, though he should tell
quand,c.
he truth. - - Why would you not? - - - You should not
vérité,f. *devoir*
peak so imprudently before I know not whom,
devant.p.
who slanders every body. - - - These flowers would
fleur,f.
row much better if you watered them oftener. - - -
arroser,v.
Put out the candle, and do not pretend to sleep.
teindre,v. *de*
- - Were I in town, I would tell them all that
en,p.
think (about it). - - - Say nothing to her, believe
penser, *en*,pro. *ne rien*
ne. - - I will tell it to you to-morrow. - - I esteem
estimer,v.
our daughter much, because she told me sin-
erely that she would do neither. - - - They who
ay all they know, will readily say what they
volontiers,adv.*
lo not know. - - Tell the truth with modesty: they
who do not love it, will always respect and fear it. - -
f I see your father, shall I tell him you are afraid of
lui
ot succeeding? - - - Do you think me capable of
réussir
orgetting my friends so soon? No, I do not. - - You
ublier,v.
lways contradict me when I speak. - - - It is pru-
lent and humane not to speak ill of any body;
de

* See the rule, page 128.

but it is a meanness to speak ill of your bene-
ce,pro. *bassesse*,f. *de* *bien-*
factors. - - We often do good to those who
faiteur,m. *souvent*,adv. *bien*,m.
are not worthy of it, and harm to those who
mal,m.
do not deserve it. - - - Will you tell me, after
mériter,v.
this, that I am not your friend? - - I hope she
que,c.
will not tell them what happened to me yester-
leur
day. - - - I was telling it yesterday to several friends of
mine, and every body began crying. - - - I do not
* *pleurer.*
like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every body.
parceque,c.
- - Her father has transmitted her all his fortune, but
lui
not his virtues. - - Sylla proscribed above four
plus de,adv.
thousand Roman citizens. - - Does Mr. R. write to
Romain citoyen,m.
you (now and then) from Paris? - - - Do you
de temps en temps,adv.
know his direction? - - - Would you not write to him
adresse,f.
if you knew it? - - - We were writing while
pendant que,c.
they slept. - - If your brother come here, detain him,
and tell him that I have something to show him.
à faire voir.
- - - The last time they wrote to him, they desired
prier,v.
him to send them the invoice of the goods, and he
de leur facture,f. *marchandises*,
has still omitted it in his letter. - - What are you
encore,adv.

* See the note, page 194.

ng now ? - - - - I am making a cap for your sis-
maintenant,adv.
. - - Do not do that, I will do it myself. - - I would

it with all my heart if I could. - - What would
de
ı have done, if you had been in my place ? - - -
si,c. *à*,p.
ıy do you not fry that fish ? - - - The first time
fois,f.
u come to see me, I will show you some
(by the fut.)
wers in my garden which will surprise you. - - -

- Silk-worms generally hatch at the end of the
Les vers à soie
ring. - - - These rose-trees grow perceptibly,
intemps,m. *rosier*,m. *à vue d'œil*,adv.
d those tulips would soon open, if it were a
faisoit,v.
tle warmer. - - Though they should deduct ten
chaud,adj. *Quand*,c.
r cent, they would get still enough.
ur *gagner*,v. *encore*,adv.
· I never buy (any thing) at Mr. P***'s; for, he
acheter,v. *rien* *chez* *car*,c.
ways (asks too much for) his goods. - - - I will
surfaire,v. *marchandise*,f.
ıdo my gown to-morrow, and do it up again imme-
sur-le-
ately. - - - The first time you mimic any
amp,adv. (by the fut.)
ıe, I will punish you severely. - - I would introduce
présenter,v.
ıur sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her. - - - She would

ınsent to that, if you would promise her to come
vouloir *lui* *de*
ere. - - - They were playing while you instructed
ıem. - - You truly join what is useful to what is
vraiment,adv.

agreeable. - - - Did not our soldiers join dexterity
adresse,f.
to valour ? - - - If you do not take great care of
prendre,v.
your flowers, the frost will destroy them. - - - Mr.
gelée,f.
S. says he will get rid of his horse (at the) begin-
au *commence-*
ning of next month. - - You would put out the fire, &c.
ment,m.
- - - Undo that, make it up again before dinner,
avant,p.
and never defer until to-morrow what you can do to-
à,p.
day. - - - Your daughter joins to the love of study the
desire of surpassing her companions. - - - - Always
compagne,f.
virtuous, still handsome, she makes herself
toujours,adv.
more enemies than friends; but a day will come,
when every body will do her the justice she
que,c. *rendre*,v. *lui*
deserves. - - She reads the History of England every
mériter,v.
day from three o'clock till five. - - I will read
depuis *heure* *jusqu'à*,p.
your letter as soon as I am dressed. - - The
(by the fut.) *habillé*,p.p.
inhabitants of W*** have elected Mr. V. W. for
their representative in parliament. - - I was reading
représentant,m. *au*
Marmontel's Tales when you came in. - - - Mr.
Conte,m. *entrer*,v.
R. wrote to me some time ago, that when he
was in London, the Earl of E*** told him
à *Comte*,m.
we should soon see a great change in the
changement,m.

ministry. - - - He often writes to me, and always con-
ministère,m.
cludes his letters thus: (Be so kind as to) send me
Avoir la bonté de
some news, whatever it may be. - - Put these books in
en
their places again. - - - I believe he did it through
par,p.
spite. - - - Shall I put another trimming to your
dépit. *garniture*,f.
gown? - - I read last year a very good book, but I
cannot remember the author's name. - - - - What
grammar do you read? - - - Whatever merit a master
has, he cannot succeed in teaching young people
réussir à,p.
if he do not join practice to theory. - - - I would put
all your china in that closet if I had
porcelaine,f. *cabinet*,m.
the key of it. - - You could not do it in ten days, if
en
I did not help you. - - We could not permit him
aider,v.
to go out, though they would. - - - Why do not you
de *quand*,c.
abstain from wine, since it hurts you? - - -
puisque,c. *faire mal*,v.
He promised to pay me the tenth of this month,
de
but he has now put me off to the third of Decem-
ber. - - - He submitted to it with the greatest pa-
se soumettre
tience. - - You promise enough, but you seldom
rarement,adv.
keep your word. - - - Mr. D. is a very promising
tenir,v.
young man. - - It is he who told me, that, be-
Ce,pro. * *a-*

* See rule in page 86.

fore the invention of water and wind-mills the an-
vant
cients used to grind their corn in mor-
avoir coutume,v. *de grain*,m. *dans mor-*
tars. - - Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? - -
tier,m.
No, they told me that they would not. - - The Eng-
lish fleets have performed actions worthy to be
faire,v. *de*
transmitted to posterity. - - - Your brother promises
me every day to amend, but, &c. - - Were I
de se corriger,v.
their master, I would not permit them to go out to
leur de
day. - - - - I was writing to you when your servant
brought me your letter.

NAITRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Naître*, to be born.
Part. act. *Naissant*, being born, rising.
Part. pass. *Né*, *ée*, been born.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Nais*, *nais*, *nait*, I am born.
Plur. *Naissons*, *naissez*, *naissent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Naissois*, *naissois*, *naissoit*, I was born.
Plur. *Naissions*, *naissiez*, *naissoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Naquis*, *naquis*, *naquit*, I was born.
Plur. *Naquîmes*, *naquîtes*, *naquirent*,

Future.

Naîtrai,	*naîtras,*	*naîtra,* I shall, *or* will be born.
Naîtrons,	*naîtrez,*	*naîtront,*

Conditional.

Naîtrois,	*naîtrois,*	*naîtroit,* I should, *&c.* be born.
Naîtrions,	*naîtriez,*	*naîtroient,*

Imperative Mood.

	Nais,	*naisse,* be thou born.
Naissons,	*naissez,*	*naissent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que	*que*	*que*
Naisse,	*naisses,*	*naisse,* that I may be born.
Naissions,	*naissiez,*	*naissent,*

Preterite.

Naquisse,	*naquisses,*	*naquît,* that I might be born.
Naquissions,	*naquissiez,*	*naquissent,*

The compound of this verb is,

Renaître, to be born again, to revive.

NUIRE, to hurt,

conjugated like *CONDUIRE,* but makes, in its participle passive, *nui.*

OINDRE, to anoint.

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

PAITRE, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,
PAROITRE, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,
and its compounds,

Comparoître, to appear, to make one's evidence, | *Disparoître*, to disap

are conjugated like *CONNOITRE.*

PEINDRE, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,
PLAINDRE, TO PITY,
and *Se Plaindre*, to complain,
are conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Plaire*, to please.
Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.
Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Plais*, *plais*, *plait*, I please.
Plur. *Plaisons*, *plaisez*, *plaisent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plaisois*, *plaisois*, *plaisoit*, I did please, *or*
Plur. *Plaisions*, *plaisiez*, *plaisoient*, plea

Preterite.

Sing. *Plus*, *plus*, *plut*, I pleased, *or* did please
Plur. *Plûmes*, *plûtes*, *plurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Plairai*, *plairas*, *plaira*, I shall, *or* will pleas
Plur. *Plairons*, plairez, plairont,

Conditional.

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit,* I should, would, *&c.*
Plur. *Plairions, plairiez, plairoient,* please.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Plais, plaise,* please thou.
Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, plaisent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que que que
Sing. *Plaise, plaises, plaise,* that I may please.
Plur. *Plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût,* that I might please.
Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

Complaire, to humour. *Déplaire,* to displease.

PRENDRE, to take.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Prendre,* to take.
Part. act. *Prenant,* taking.
Part. pass. *Pris, ise,* taken.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend,* I take, *or* am taking.
Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit,* I did take, *or* was taking.
Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient,*

Preterite.

Sing. Pris, pris, prit, I took, or did take.
Plur. Prîmes, prîtes, prirent,

Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra*, I shall, *or* will take.
Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Prendrois, prendrois, prendroit*, I should, would, *&c.*
Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendroient*, take.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Prends, prenne*, take thou.
Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*	
Sing.	*Prenne*,	*prennes*,	*prenne*,	that I may take.
Plur.	*Prenions*,	*preniez*,	*prennent*,	

Preterite.

Sing.	*Prisse*,	*prisses*,	*prît*,	that I might take.
Plur.	*Prissions*,	*prissiez*,	*prissent*,	

The compounds of this verb are,

Apprendre, to learn.
——— *des nouvelles*, to hear of.
Comprendre, to apprehend, to understand, to include.
Désapprendre, to unlearn.
Entreprendre, to undertake.
Méprendre, to mistake, to be deceived.
Reprendre, to take again, to chide, to rebuke.
Surprendre, to surprise.

PRODUIRE, to produce,
REDUIRE, to reduce, to bring to,
are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

RESTREINDRE, to restrain,
is conjugated like *CRAINDRE*.

RIRE, TO LAUGH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Rire*, to laugh.
Part. act.	*Riant*, laughing.
Part. pass.	*Ri*, laughed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sg.	*Ris*,	*ris*,	*rit*, I laugh, *or* am laughing.
Pr.	*Rions*,	*riez*,	*rient*,

Imperfect.

Sg.	*Riois*,	*riois*,	*rioit*, I did laugh, *or* was laughing.
Pr.	*Riions*,	*riiez*,	*rioient*,

Preterite.

Sg.	*Ris*,	*ris*,	*ril*, I laughed, *or* did laugh.
Pr.	*Rîmes*,	*rîtes*,	*rirent*,

Future.

Sg.	*Rirai*,	*riras*,	*rira*, I shall, *or* will laugh.
Pr.	*Rirons*,	*rirez*,	*riront*,

Conditional.

Sg.	*Rirois*,	*rirois*,	*riroit*, I should, could, &c. laugh.
Pr.	*Ririons*,	*ririez*,	*riroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sg.		*Ris*,	*rie*, laugh thou.
Pr.	*Rions*,	*riez*,	*rient*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sg.	*Rie*,	*ries*,	*rie*, that I may laugh.
Pr.	*Riions*,	*riiez*,	*rient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Risse*, *risses*, *rît*, that I might laugh.
Plur. *Rissions*, *rissiez*, *rissent*,

The compound of this verb is,
Sourire, to smile.

SEDUIRE, TO SEDUCE,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

SUFFIRE, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,
is conjugated like *CONFIRE*: but its participle passive is *suffi*.

SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Suivre*, to follow.
Part. act. *Suivant*, following.
Part. pass. *Suivi*, *ie*, followed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Suis*, *suis*, *suit*, I follow, *or* am following.
Plur. *Suivons*, *suivez*, *suivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivois*, *suivois*, *suivoit*, I did follow, *or* was following.
Plur. *Suivions*, *suiviez*, *suivoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis*, *suivis*, *suivit*, I followed, *or* did follow.
Plur. *Suivîmes*, *suivîtes*, *suivirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Suivrai*, *suivras*, *suivra*, I shall, *or* will follow.
Plur. *Suivrons*, *suivrez*, *suivront*,

Conditional.

Sing.	*Suivrois,*	*suivrois,*	*suivroit,* I should, *&c.* follow.
Plur.	*Suivrions,*	*suivriez,*	*suivroient,*

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		*Suis,*	*suive,* follow thou.
Plur.	*Suivons,*	*suivez,*	*suivent,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
Sing.	*Suive,*	*suives,*	*suive,* that I may follow.
Plur.	*Suivions,*	*suiviez,*	*suivent,*

Preterite.

Sing.	*Suivisse,*	*suivisses,*	*suivît,* that I might follow.
Plur.	*Suivissions,*	*suivissiez,*	*suivissent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

S'Ensuivre, to follow from. *Poursuivre,* to pursue.

Se TAIRE, to hold one's tongue,
is conjugated like *PLAIRE.*

TEINDRE, to die,
is conjugated like *CRAINDRE.*

TRADUIRE, to translate,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE.*

TRAIRE, to milk.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	*Traire,* to milk.
Part. act.	*Trayant,* milking.
Part. pass.	*Trait, aite,* milked.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing. *Trais, trais, trait*, I milk, *or* am milking.
Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois, trayois, trayoit*, I did milk, *or* was milking.
Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, trayoient,*

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Trairai, trairas, traira*, I shall, *or* will milk.
Plur. *Trairons, trairez, trairont,*

Conditional.

Sing. *Trairois, trairois, trairoit*, I should, *&c.* milk.
Plur. *Trairions, trairiez, trairoient,*

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Trais, traie*, milk thou.
Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient,*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Que que que
Sing. *Traie, traies, traie*, that I may milk.
Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, traient,*

Preterite is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

Abstraire, to abstract.
Distraire, to distract.
Extraire, to extract.
Rentraire, to fine draw.
Soustraire, to subtract.
Retraire, to milk again.

VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vaincre*, to conquer.
Part. act. *Vainquant*, conquering.
Part. pass. *Vaincu, ue*, conquered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

g. *Vaincs, vaincs, vainc,** I conquer.
r. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent,*

Imperfect.

g. *Vainquois, vainquois, vainquoit*, I did conquer.
r. *Vainquions, vainquiez, vainquoient,*

Preterite.

g. *Vainquis, vainquis, vainquit*, I conquered.
r. *Vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent,*

Future.

g. *Vaincrai, vaincras, vaincra*, I shall, *or* will con-
r. *Vaincrons, vaincrez, vaincront,* quer.

Conditional.

g. *Vaincrois, vaincrois, vaincroit*, I should, *&c.* con-
r. *Vaincrions, vaincriez, vaincroient,* quer.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

g. *Vaincs, vainque*, conquer thou.
r. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
g. *Vainque, vainques, vainque*, that I may conquer.
r. *Vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent,*

The singular of this tense and the imperfect are very little used.

Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquisse*, *vainquisses*, *vainquît*, that I m
Plur. *Vainquissions*, *vainquissiez*, *vainquissent*, conq

The compound of this verb is,

Convaincre, to convince.

VIVRE, TO LIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre*, to live.
Part. act. *Vivant*, living.
Part. pass. *Vécu*, lived.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vis*, *vis*, *vit*, I live, *or* am living.
Plur. *Vivons*, *vivez*, *vivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivois*, *vivois*, *vivoit*, I did live, *or* was living
Plur. *Vivions*, *viviez*, *vivoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus*, *vécus*, *vécut*, I lived, *or* did live.
Plur. *Vécûmes*, *vécûtes*, *vécurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Vivrai*, *vivras*, *vivra*, I shall, *or* will live.
Plur. *Vivrons*, *vivrez*, *vivront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Vivrois*, *vivrois*, *vivroit*, I should, would, *&c.* li
Plur. *Vivrions*, *vivriez*, *vivroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vis*, *vive*, live thou.
Plur. *Vivons*, *vivez*, *vivent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	Que	*que*	*que*
ing.	*Vive,*	*vives,*	*vive,* that I may live.
'lur.	*Vivions,*	*viviez,*	*vivent,*

Preterite.

ing.	*Vécusse,*	*vécusses,*	*vécût,* that I might live.
'lur.	*Vécussions,*	*vécussiez,*	*vécussent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

Revivre, to revive. *Survivre,* to outlive.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris, on the eighth of Feb-
à *Fé-*
ıary, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one. - -
ıier,
he same men who seem not to fear death when
lorsque, adv.
ey are in good health, often dread it when
en *redouter,* v.
ıey are sick. - - - What does your sister complain of?

- - - The swallows generally disappear towards the
hirondelle, f. *vers,* p.
ıd of autumn. - - You do not seem to pay any
automne, f. *faire,* v.
ttention to what I say to you. - - This man paints
ry well, I assure you. - - - Why would you
assurer, v.
ırt him, he never did you any harm? - - I should
lui *faire,* v. *mal,* m.
ty and succour him if it were not his fault. - - -
ce, pro.

You shall disappear as soon as you have ex
(by the fut.)
ecuted my orders, and take care not to spea
ayez,v. *soin*,m. *de*
to any body, for you know that walls have ear
car,c. *mur*
- - - - The last time I saw your sister she a
p
peared to me thoughtful and melancholy. - - - - Sh
roître *pensif*,adj. *mélancolique*,adj. C
is a lady that pleases every body. - - - She appea
à
quite* young: how old is she? - - - Does she n
tout,adv.
learn drawing? - - Your brother has not included h
dessein,m.
tailor's bill in the account which he ha
tailleur,m. *mémoire*,m. *compte*,m.
given me. - - - I see you do not complain of hi
rendre,v.
without a cause. - - I really am surprised (at it), b
en,pro.
he always smiles at (every thing) I tell him. - - *As* st
de tout ce que
prising as this seems to you, yet it is true.
cependant,adv. *ce*
At last the enemy surprised and defeated them in t
Enfin,adv.
space of twelve days. - - - If they had wished, th
espace,m.
might have taken the town three days sooner, but t
soldiers were so exhausted with fatigue, that th
épuisés,p.p. *de*,p.
could not even hold their guns. - - - May th
* *même*,adv. *Puissent*
brave men long enjoy the glory which they have
jouir de
quired. - - I sincerely wish they may. - - - Children
re

* *Tout*, adv. before an adjective beginning with a consonant o *h*, mute, agrees with it.

dom forget, when they continually
ment,adv. *lorsque*,c. *continuellement*,adv.
exercise their minds to study. - - If my brother do not
exercer,v.
come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we
will go and see him in the country. - - - Does not
à
Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daugh-
Mme *bien affligée*,p.p. *de*
ter's death? - - When you see Mrs. B. I am
(by the fut.)
certain she will please you. - - - Did you never see
sûr,adj.
her? - - The children who (shall be born) from this
happy marriage, will be the delight of their
délices,f.pl.
father and mother. - - She joins to the qualities of the
body those of the mind. - - Take some pears, and carry
them to your brother. - - - Every time I see him, I take
him for a foreigner. - - My sister and I learn French,
étranger,m.
and understand very well all that (is said) to us in that
on dit
language. - - - Though you should learn all the rules,
langue,f. *Quand*,c.
they would not (be sufficient) without practice. - - I did
suffire,v.
not understand what you said. - - - Do not undertake to
de
undeceive her; believe me, you will lose your time.
détromper,v.
- - - Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but
obtenir,v. *conserver*,v.
vice produces hatred and quarrels. - - - If you
vice,m. *haine*,f. *querelle*,f.
complain to the master, I will complain to the

mistress. - - Though you should undertake to prove
Quand *de*
the contrary, she would not believe you. - - Why did
not you take the same road as we? - - - He (is not
que
pleased) in his situation, now he sees all the dangers
se plaire,v.
of it. - - He has suffered much, and none of his friends
has pitied him. - - The idea of his misfortune pur-
idée,f. *malheur*,m.
sues him every-where. - - When did you hear of him?
par-tout,adv. *apprendre des nouvelles*
- - - Captain D. told my father that he had seen
à
him and spoke to him at Madras. - - - We often
mistake when we judge of others by ap-
se méprendre,v. *juger*,v.
pearances; and often a person displeases us by the
very* quality by which another has pleased us.
même,adj.
- - - The people who often seem the most zealous
gens,m. *zélé*,adj.
are not always the most constant. - - - Leave me
Laisser,v.
that book a little longer, do not take it again. - - -
peu
That apple-tree produces no fruit. - -They retook
pommier,m.
our ship. - - Go and speak to Mr. —— ; but above all
sur,p.
do not laugh. - - Would you not laugh, if you were
in my place? - - - We laughed much yesterday at
à

Very, adv. is used here adjectively, and signifies same.

the play. - - - She was an agreeable lady, she was ever smiling when any one had the honour
toujours,adv.
of speaking to her. - - He seduced her by his fine promises. - - Whatever he may undertake, he never will succeed, he is (too much) addicted to the
trop,adv. *adonné*,p.p.
pleasures of this world. - - - Young people tell
gens,m.&f.
what they do, old people what they have done,
vieillard,m.
and fools what they intend to do. - - - We
sot,m. *se proposer*,v. *de*
learn much more easily the things which
facilement,adv.
we understand than those which we do not. - - If we
comprendre
go together to my brother's, shall you be able
chez,p.
to follow us? - - I will follow you step by step. - -
pas à pas,adv.
Why do you follow me as you do? - - You may set
comme
out when (you please), we will follow you. - - Hold
il vous plaira
your tongue, you do not know what you say. - - - What books do you translate? - - My master says I shall soon translate Marmontel's Works. - - We should
Œuvre,f.
have conquered them if we had fought; and, believe
combattre,v.
me, you (might have[1]) done[4] much[2] bettter[3], if you had
auriez
followed the advice which he gave you. - - - They

have debated the question a long time without (being able to) resolve it. - - They were quite transported with joy when they (heard of) the happy news of the peace. - - Every thing smiles in nature (at the) return of the spring. - - - As long as her father and mother live, they never will consent to her marriage with Mr. R. - - You will not live long if you drink so much. - - She lived about four years after her husband's death. - - George III. the eldest son of Frederick, prince of Wales, was born on the fourth of June, 1738, and was proclaimed king of Great-Britain on the twenty-sixth of October, 1760. - - - In whatever country a man may live, he is sure to be respected and well treated every where, if his behaviour and manners are regulated by the principles of a sound policy, and the laws of the country he lives in.

pouvoir
de,p. *apprendre*,v.
nouvelle,f.sing. *dans*,p.
au retour,m. *printemps*,m. *T'ant que*,adv.
(by the fut.)
environ,p. *après*,p.
aîné,adj.
Galles,
proclamer,v.
de
mœurs,f.pl. *régler*,v.
sain,adj. *politique*,f.
où.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are *only conjugated in the third person singular*, are called impersonal verbs: they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns *il* or *on:* of this number are,

Il tonne,	It thunders.
Il pleut,	It rains.
On dit,	People say, *or*, it is said, *&c.*

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner: ex.

Il vous convient d'être modeste,	It becomes you to be modest.
Il fait beau, froid, &c.	It is fine, cold, &c.
Il fait grand vent,	The wind blows high.
Il semble,	It seems.
Il s'ensuit que,	It follows that.
Il vaut mieux,	It is better, *&c.*

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and show the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Pleuvoir*, to rain.
Part. act.	*Pleuvant*, raining.
Part. pass.	*Plu*, rained.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present, *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain, it is raining.

Negatively.

Il ne pleut pas, it does not rain, &c.

Interrogatively.

Pleut-il ?	does it rain ?
Ne pleut-il pas ?	does it not rain ?

Imperfect.	*Il pleuvoit*,	it rained, it was raining.
Preterite.	*Il plut*,	it rained, or did rain.
Future.	*Il pleuvra*,	it shall, *or* will rain.
Conditional.	*Il pleuvroit*,	it would, should, *&c.* rain.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Qu'il pleuve*,	that it may rain.
Imperfect.	*Qu'il plût*,	that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood : the learner may easily find out the rest.

Il arrive,	it happens; from	*arriver*,	to happen.
Il bruine,	it drizzles;	*bruiner*,	to drizzle.
Il éclaire,	it lightens;	*éclairer*,	to lighten.
Il gèle,	it freezes;	*geler*,	to freeze.
Il grêle,	it hails;	*grêler*,	to hail.
Il neige,	it snows;	*neiger*,	to snow.
Il tonne,	it thunders;	*tonner*,	to thunder.
Il importe,	it matters, it concerns.	*importer*,	to concern.

EXERCISES UPON THESE VERBS.

Does it rain? - - It rained just now, but
tout-à-l'heure,adv.
it does not rain at present. - - - Was it not raining
maintenant,adv.
when you came? - - I advise you not to go out
conseiller,v. *de*
this morning, I think it will soon rain. - - I am
bientôt,adv.
sure it would rain if the [6]wind [2]was [1]not[3] so[4] high[5]. - -
s'il *faire*,v. *grand.*
Do you know what happened to my cousin
savoir,v.
whilst he was in town? - - I foresaw what
pendant que,c. *en* *prévoir*
would happen. - - The roads were very slippery
chemin,m. *glissant*,adj.
yesterday, because it drizzled the whole day. - - - Did
you observe how it lightened last
remarquer,v. *comme*,adv.
night? - - If it did not freeze I would go to see them
voir,v.
to-day - - - It hailed this afternoon, and it will
après-midi,m.
certainly snow to-night. - - It thundered much
cette nuit. *beaucoup*,adv.
yesterday, and I think it will still thunder to-
croire,v. *encore*,adv.
day. - - - It matters little whether you do your ex-
que (subj.)
ercise now or later, provided it be well
pourvu que,c.
done - - - It greatly concerns children to
beaucoup,adv. *aux* *de*
avoid idleness, because it is the parent of all vice
éviter,v. *mère*,f.
and destroyer of all virtues.
destructrice,f.

The verb *Avoir*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, adverb of place.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Y avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present.	*Il y a,*	there is, there are.

Negatively.

	Il n'y a pas,	there is not, there are not.

Interrogatively.

	Y a-t-il?	is there? are there?
	N'y a-t-il pas?	is there not? are there not?
Imperfect.	*Il y avoit,*	there was, there were.
Preterite.	*Il y eut,*	there was, there were.
Future.	*Il y aura,*	there shall, *or* will be.
Conditional.	*Il y auroit,*	there should, would, *&c.* be.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Qu'il y ait, let there be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	*Qu'il y ait,*	that there may be.
Imperfect.	*Qu'il y eût,*	that there might be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Il y a eu,	there has, *or* have been.
Il y avoit eu,	there had been.
Il y eut eu,	there had been.
Il y aura eu,	there shall, *or* will have been.
Il y auroit eu,	there should, *&c.* have been.
Qu'il y ait eu,	that there may have been.
Qu'il y eût eu,	that there might have been.

EXERCISE UPON THIS VERB.

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you
attendre,v.
in your brother's study. - - - Is there any fire in the
cabinet,m.
parlour? - - No, Sir, there is none. - - There were two
salle,f.
men below who asked to speak to you. - - Was
en bas,adv. *à*
there not formerly a (coffee-house) at the
autrefois,adv. *café*,m.
corner of this street? - - - There were great re-
coin,m. *rue*,f. *ré-*
joicings in France when peace was proclaimed. - -
jouissance,f. *proclamée*,p.p.
I was telling you that there will be a grand concert
dire,v.
and afterwards a ball and supper in the course
ensuite,adv. *courant*,m.
of this month. - - There would be no harm if you
mal,m.
would learn* your lesson better. - - - My brother says
mieux,adv.
that there has been a bloody engagement between
sanglant,adj. *combat*,m.
an English frigate and a French one, and there
frégate,f. *frégate*
have been many men killed on both sides. - - - There
de part et d'autre.
would have been a great riot yesterday in the
émeute,f.
Strand, if the magistrates had not sent many constables,
connétables,m.
who dispersed the mob.
populace,f.

* The conjunction *Si*, *if*, is used *only* before the present or imperfect of the indicative mood and their compounds; and sometimes elegantly before the compound of the imperfect of the subj. mood.

There is, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne sauroit*, with the participle in the infinitive mood; the other tenses, as *there was*, *there will be*, *there would be*, used as above, and made by the same tenses of the verb *pouvoir* only: ex.

On ne peut pas, *or*, on ne sauroit sortir *aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie*,	*There is no going out* today because of the rain; that is, one cannot, &c.
On ne pouvoit l'appaiser,	There was no pacifying him.
On ne pourra pas jouer *demain*, *mon père est très malade*,	*There will be no acting* to-morrow, my father is very ill.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

There is (such a deal) of snow that there is no going
tant, adv.
out of the house. - You speak so low and so quick
bas,adv. *vîte*,adv.
that there is no hearing nor understanding what
entendre,v. *comprendre*,v.
you say. - - My brother runs so fast that there is
vîte,adv.
no following him. - - There was no walking yesterday
hier,adv.
in the streets of London on account of the dirt. - - His
à cause,p. *boue*,f.
arguments were so convincing that there was no re-
ré-
plying to him. - - There will be no skating in the
pliquer,v. *patiner*,v.
park to-morrow because it thaws. - - There will be
dégeler,v.
no going to the play next month, be-
comédie,f. *prochain*,adj. *parce*
cause the play-house will be shut. - - - There would
que,c. *théâtre*,m.

be no living with you, if you were always in the same
étiez,v. *de*
humour. - - If a horse knew his strength, there
le *connoître*,v. *force*,f.
would be no mastering him.
dompter,v.

This verb *il y a*, when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is*, *it was*, &c. when the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que:* but in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne:* ex.

Il y a *trois semaines* que *votre père est arrivé*,
It is three weeks *since* your father arrived.

Il y a *long-tems* que *je* ne *vous ai vu*,
It is a long while *since* I saw you, *or*, I have not seen you this long while.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How long is it since we (saw one another?) It is a
Combien,adv. *se voir*,v.refl.
year since I met your brother in Italy, and
rencontrer,v. *en*
it is six months since I heard of him. - - -
entendre parler,v.
How long is it since you wrote to your mother? - - -

It is but two months. - - It was a week since I had
ne que *semaine*,f.
seen your brother, when I met him by chance in
par hasard,adv.
a (coffee-room.) - - How long was it since your friend
café,m.
had left France when he wrote to you? - - It was
laisser,v.
three months. - - It may be two years since Mr. Robert

set out for the Indies. - - How long is it since you
partir,v. *Indes*.
were in England? - -. It is (such a) long while since I
si
learned German, that I almost forgot it.
Allemand,m.

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood: in this case, one of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as a substitute: ex.

Il y a *trois mois que j'étois en France*, or *j'étois en France* il y a *trois mois*,*	I was in France three months *ago*.
Il y a *quatre ans que mon frère est mort*,	My brother has been dead *these* four years.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an
C'est *quart*
hour ago. - - When did you see my father? - - I saw
him (a fortnight) ago. - - We have not heard† from my
quinze jours
brother these two years. - - You do not seem to
paroître,v.
be so lively as you were three years ago. - - I would
enjoué,adj.
have written to you a month ago, if I had known
savoir,v.
your direction. - - - I have not seen your sister these
adresse,f.

* From this instance it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number; but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must at the same time observe, that in the above sentence, the verb, which, in English, is in the *compound of the present*, is rendered in French by the *present* of the indicative, and when in the *compound of the imperfect* by the *imperfect* of the same mood.

† See page 193.

four months. - - My father has been ill these
malade,adj.
six weeks. - - He has been in London these five years,
à
and (it is said) he there enjoys a considerable fortune.
l'on dit,v.
- - - We have neither seen you nor your sisters these
three days.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, are expressed in the sentence: ex.

Il y a neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage,	My aunt has lived nine years in this neighbourhood.
Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici,	We have not been above an hour fishing here.
Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai,	My sister had been two years in France when I went there.
N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demeuroit avec nous quand elle mourut ?	Had she not lived six months with us when she died ?
Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez Mons. O.	Your brother will have been at Mr. O's. six years at Christmas.
N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris ?	Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Some people* have no pity on their poor
gens,pl. *de*
fellow-creatures. - - Some people* fancy
semblable, *personne*,f. *s'imaginer*,v.

* These sentences are the same as *there are some people who*, &c. *Il y a des gens qui*, &c.

that they can learn a language without
pouvoir,v.
studying. - - - My brother has been four years at
étudier,v.
Mr. W's. academy,* and my father told him that he
should stay there two years more. - - I had been three
rester,v.
years in England when that happened. - - I had not
arriver,v.
been three months in France, when my brother returned
from America to London. - - Mr. N. had only
ne que
learned French seven months when he wrote me
a letter in that language. - - - Had not Mr. David
langue,f.
been four years and a half in Spain when his sister
was married? - - My father and mother had not been
(gone out) above a quarter of an hour when
sortir,v. *plus de*,adv.
he arrived. - - - We had been playing at cards
aux carte,f.
for two hours when you came in. - - Thomas will have
entrer,v.
been at the college two years the tenth of next
collége,m.
month.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal when followed by a substantive, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things: ex.

* All the sentences in this exercise, should begin with the impersonal verb *Il y a*, *Il y avoit*, &c.

C'est la loi *qui l'ordonne,*	It is *the law* that prescribes it.
C'est moi *qui l'ai fait,*	It is *I* who have done it.
C'est mon bienfaiteur,	It is *my benefactor.*
C'est eux, or, *ce sont* eux, *qui me l'ont rapporté,*	It is *they* who have related it to me.

From the last instance, it appears that *it is*, &c. followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, may be rendered in French two ways; but, when *is it*, &c. is used in asking a question, it is generally put in the singular, though the pronoun be in the plural number: ex.

Est-ce eux *qui l'ont fait,*	Is it *they* who have done it?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is prosperity which commonly[2] makes[1]
prospérité,f. *rendre*,v.
men haughty and proud, but it is adversity
fier,adj. *orgueilleux*,adj.
hat makes them wise. - - - It was the custom
rendre,v. *coutume*,f.
among the Spartans to inure their
hez,p. *Spartiate*,m. *de endurcir*,v.
children early to the fatigues of war.
de bonne heure,adv. *travail*,m. *guerre*,f.
- It is not I who occasioned the quarrel, it is
causer,v. *querelle*,f.
you who began first. - - - It was envy
avez commencée le *envie*,f.
which caused the first murder. - - Is it not you who
causer,v. *meurtre*,m.
wrote to Miss A.? No, it is Miss Rose's sister.
vez écrit,v.
- If you do not succeed, it will not be my fault.
réussir,v. *faute*,f.
- If you happened to lose the friendship of your
venir *à perdre*,v.

parents, it would be the greatest misfortune which
malheur,m.
ever[2] might[1] happen to you. - - It is my friend
jamais,adv. *pouvoir*,v. *arriver*,v.
who told me that it was your father whom we saw
dire,v.
yesterday. - - Speak to my brothers, for it is they
car,c.
who told it me. - - - Why do you not accuse
Pourquoi,adv.
my sisters? - - It is they who have done all the
mischief. - - - You blame my aunts, but is it they
mal,m. *blâmer*,v. *tante*,f.
who have offended you?
offenser,v.

He, *she*, *they*, immediately followed by *who*, *whom*, or *that*, and *such as*, whether separated in English or not, but implying *people* in general, are often made into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive, and if the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used: *observe well* these examples,

C'*est* être *fou* que de perdre *le tems à ces bagatelles*,	*He is* a fool *who loses* his time in those trifles.
C'est ne pas goûter *les plaisirs de l'amitié* que de *n'aimer personne*,	*Such as* love nobody, *do not enjoy* the pleasures of friendship.
C'est *trop* présumer *de soi même* que d'agir *ainsi*,	*They are* too *conceited who act* so.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He is a blind man who does not
aveugle,adj.
perceive all the dangers which surround us
environner,v.
in this deceitful world. - - - Such as are satis-
trompeur,adj. *con-*

fied with their lot are happy. - - - He
tent,adj. *de son*,pro. *sort*,m.
does not know the court who relies
connoître,v. *cour*,f. *se fier*,v.
(on the) promises which (are made) there. - - They
aux *on fait*,v.
are strangers to the charms of society who shun
société,f. *fuir*,v.
company. - They are idle who do not know the
paresseux,adj. *connoître*
value of time. - - They obey the commands of God
temps,m. *aux*
who love their neighbours, and do not reproach
son prochain,sing.
them with their small defects. - - He is not a Chris-
lui *ses*
tian who seeks to hurt his neighbour and speaks
à *voisin*,m.
ill of him on all occasions. - - - They do not under-
dans *f.*
stand their own interest who neglect study.
propre,adj.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object; in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pronoun *il*; and when used to denote the state of the weather, it is rendered by the third person singular of the verb *faire*, to make or do: ex.

Il est extraordinaire, &c.	It is extraordinary, *&c.*
Il fait *beau tems*,	It *is* fine weather.
Ne faisoit-*il pas chaud?*	*Was* it not hot?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is surprising to see you so lazy and in-
étonnant,adj. *de*

attentive after having been punished severe-
après,p. *avoir* *sévère-*
ly for these faults. - - It is always dangerous
ment,adv.
to (keep company with) people without any prin-
de fréquenter,v. *personne* *aucun prin-*
ciple of religion. - - Does it rain? No, Sir,
cipe,m. *Monsieur*,m.
it is fine weather. - - Was it not very cold? - - It will
froid,m.
neither be cold nor hot. - - It has (been a) high
ni,c. *ni*,c. *faire*,v. *grand*,adj.
wind, and I think it will soon freeze. - - It is not so
penser,v.
cold as it was (at the) beginning of this month. --
au commencement,m.
Do you think (that) it is hotter in Italy than here?
*pres.*subj.

The learner must observe, that the following verb is *absolutely impersonal* throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say, *Je faut*, *vous faut*, *on faut*, &c. to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.
Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful, *&c.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Sing.

Present.	*Il faut que je fasse*,	I must do.
	Il faut que tu fasses,	thou must do.
	Il faut qu'il fasse,	he must do.
	Il faut qu'elle fasse,	she must do.

Plural.

Il faut que nous fassions,	we must do.
Il faut que vous fassiez,	you must do.
Il faut qu'ils, or *elles fassent*,	they must do.

Negatively.

Il ne faut pas que je fasse,	I must not do.
Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez,	you must not do, *&c.*

Interrogatively.

Faut-il que je fasse?	must I do?
Faut-il que vous fassiez?	must you do?
Ne faut-il pas que je fasse?	must I not do?
Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez?	must you not do?

Imperfect.	*Il falloit qu'il écrivit,*	it was necessary, &c. for him to write.
Preterite.	*Il fallut qu'il partît,*	he was obliged to set out.
Future.	*Il faudra qu'il vienne,*	he must come, he shall be obliged to come.
Condit.	*Il faudroit que j'allasse,*	I should go, or it would be necessary for me to go.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	*Qu'il faille,*	that it may be necessary, *&c.*
Imperfect.	*Qu'il fallût,*	that it might be necessary.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have: ex. *Il a fallu, il avoit fallu,* &c.

From the foregoing instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb *falloir* is used in the present or future tense of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive; but when it is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present of the indicative, the verb following must be rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive: ex.

Il faut, or *il faudra que* je fasse,	I must *do*, I shall be obliged *to do*, or, it will be necessary for me *to do*.

Il falloit, or, *il fallut que* je parlasse, — I was obliged, *or*, it was necessary *for me*, *to speak*.

Il faudroit que je vendisse, — I should be obliged, *or*, it would be necessary *for me*, *to sell*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

If you go to Coxheath to-day you must
aujourd'hui,adv.
(come back) to-morrow. - - - - You may go to
revenir,v. *pouvoir*,v.
London this morning, but remember that you must
souvenez-vous
be (back) at three o'clock. - - - - You must get
de retour *se*
up to-morrow morning at four o'clock. - - - -
lever,v.
Custom must not always prevail over reason. - - - -
sur.p.
Shall I be obliged to carry them there? - - -
falloir,v. *mener*,v.
Must I not show you my work? - - - - You
montrer.v. *ouvrage*,m.
must have been well (acquainted with) the places
connoître,v. *endroit*,m.
to expose yourself in that manner. - - If he
pour,c. *de*,p.
wished to pay his debts, he would be obliged
vouloit,v. *dette*,f.
to sell all his property. - - If your brothers had not
bien,m.
ceased to quarrel, it would have been ne-
cesser,v. *de quereller*,v.
cessary* for them to part. - - - - You must not
se séparer,v.

* After the words *better*, *necessary*, *needful*, *expedient*, *good*, *impossible*, &c. joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or preterite, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

leave your country so soon, all your friends op-
quitter,v. *pays*,m. *s'op-*
pose it.
poser,v. *y*.

The same observation is to be made on the verb *valoir mieux*, to be better, used impersonally; and the adjectives *bon*, *difficile*, *impossible*, *nécessaire*, *à propos*, &c. joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only: ex.

Il n'est pas bon que *vous soyez seul*,	It is not *good for you to* be alone.
Il vaut mieux que *vous ayez compagnie*,	It *is better for you to* have company.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is difficult for you to improve if you
faire des progrès,
do not apply better to study. - - It was impossible
s'appliquer,v. *étude*,f.
for you to have succeeded unless you had taken
à moins que,c.ne. (by the sub.)
more convenient measures. - - It would be expedient
convenable,adj. *à propos*
for you to read this book from the beginning
depuis,p.
to the end - - Believe me, it is better
jusqu'à,p. *fin*,f. *valoir mieux*,v.
for you to go there to-morrow, for it will snow
car,c.
soon. - - - - Will it not be better for me to be at
bientôt,adv.
school too soon than too late? - - - Would it not
tôt,adv. *tard*,adv.
be better for him to go and speak to them himself,
se
than to send his servant? - - - It is good for us
de *domestique*,m. & f.
to help one another in our troubles.
s'aider,v. *peine*,f.

The above verb *falloir*, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb; instead of which, insert one of the following conjunctive pronouns, *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, or *leur*, according to the number and person: ex.

Il me *faut des livres*,	I must *have*, or, I want books.
Il lui *faut un chapeau*,	He must *have*, or, he wants a hat.
Il lui *faut un bonnet*,	She must *have*, or, she wants a cap.

N. B. If the verb *to have* be expressed in French, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood:

Il faut que j'aie des livres,	I must *have*, or, I want books.

This method, however, is not so elegant as the former.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I shall want paper, pens, and ink. - - What do
falloir,v.
you want? - - I want nothing (for the) present, but I
à
think I shall soon want a French grammar. - - -
penser,v.
My brother has an old hat, and he will soon
vieux,adj.
want a new one. - - If you like to
neuf,adj. *en*,pro. *aimez*,v. *à*
speak much, you must have (a good deal) of
bien,adv.
circumspection not to (speak ill) of others. - - -
retenue,f. *pour ne pas* *médire*,v.
Since I cannot find my book, I must have
Puisque,c.
another. - - If we wish to succeed in our under-
vouloir,v.

, we must have (a great deal) of patience. - - -
beaucoup,adv.
others have lost their buckles, they must have
boucle,*f*.

›re the conclusion of this section, it will be pro-
say something about the pronoun indefinite *on*,
commonly precedes a verb used impersonally
ı the third person singular) in French, and in
h is generally made by a passive voice: ex.

ı *permis de chanter*,	I have been allowed to sing.
	People have allowed me, &c.
a défendu de sortir,	He has been forbidden to go out.
	One has forbidden him,&c.

:his case, the verb which, in English, is in the
: voice, must, in French, be turned into the ac-
hen the English nominative becomes the regi-
ıf the verb in French, the sentence beginning
n, and translated as if the English were, *one* has
:d me to sing, *one* has forbidden him to go out.
rench, passive verbs are seldom used.

It is the same with,

,	It is said, *or* people say.
dit,	I am told.
à votre frère,	Your brother is told.
oit, }	It was said, *or* people said,
, }	*or* were saying.
ıa,	It will be said, *or* people will say.
a à nos enfans,	Our children will be told, *or* one will tell, &c.
lit,	It has been said, *or* people have said.
ıs a dit,	We have been told, *or* one has told us.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.*

In time of war, peace is always spoken of. - - *En*,p.
Where is your brother? it is not known. - - - - *savoir*,v.
The death of the invincible admiral Lord Nelson *mort*,f.
is daily lamented, and will be *tous les jours*,adv. *regretter*,v.
so a long time. - - - - I was told yesterday that ∽
your brother has been punished for his idleness;
had your father been told of it, he would have been ∽
very angry with him. - - People will be eager *contre*,p. *s'empresser*,v.
in buying your book, and it will be read with avidity. *de*,p.
- - Learned men are found in villages, as well as in
towns. - - - It is reported on all sides that we shall *de côté*,m.
soon have peace, but the news has not yet been
received, though it be ardently (wished for), *ardemment*,adv. *souhaiter*,v.
however, it is thought that the secret expedition
will sail in a few days. - - It will be be- *mettre à la voile* ∽ *peu de*
lieved that you blame me. - - It would not be supposed
that you praise us. - - I have been assured that he has
threatened him.

* It is very important always to bear in mind the preceding rules and examples.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(*Review them carefully before you write.*)

There is no going out to-day, it rains apace. - - -
à verse,adv.
Do not make so much noise, there is no hearing
s'entendre,v.
one another. - - Is it cold this morning? Yes, Sir, it
is very cold; however, I am told it is not so cold as
cependant
it was yesterday. - - The weather is very inconstant
in this country, it was very hot yesterday, it is
pays,m.
excessively cold to-day: it did freeze this morning,
très,adv.
it hailed at noon, it rained in the afternoon, and
midi, *après-midi*,
now it drizzles. - - It sometimes lightens when it
quelquefois,adv.
does not thunder, but (as often as) it thun-
toutes les fois que,c.
ders, it lightens. - - - If it be fine weather next week,
I shall go to London, but if it be bad weather I
shall stay at home. - - - It is a pleasure to see
rester,v. *au logis*. *de*
bees (coming out) of their hives when it is
abeille,f. *sortir*,v. *ruche*,f. *faire*,v.
a sunny day. - - - Had I known you were returned
brillant,adj. *revenir*,v.
from the continent, I would have gone to see you
être
long ago. - - - My father and mother were told you
were in England ten years ago, but you neither saw
nor wrote to them. - - Every body agrees there
convenir,v.

are fine women in Great-Britain, but there is not
dans *Bretagne*,f.
such good wine as in France. - - - It greatly
si *en* *beaucoup*,adv.
concerns children to avoid bad company. - - -
aux *de* *éviter*,v.
If there were any real virtue in the world, should
we (meet with) so many false friends? - - - If he
trouver,v.
behaved well, there would not be a man
se comporter,v.
(in the world) that I should esteem more. - - - No
au monde, *estimer*,v.subj.
object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of
plaire,v. *vue*,f.
a man whom you have obliged, nor* (is) any music
est-il
so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man
oreille,f.
who owns you for his benefactor. - - - Such
reconnoître,v.
as support the conduct of idle and obstinate
encourager,v.
scholars, make themselves contemptible. - - They are not
méprisable,adj.
acquainted with the human heart, who rely upon
faire fond,v.
the vain promises of men. - - You have already been
déjà,adv.
told that (nobody in the world) has prepossessed me
against you, how many times must I repeat
contre,p. *combien*,adv. *falloir*,v.
it to you? - - I was told yesterday that you were very
ill, and I am truly glad to see you so well. - - - -
de *bien portant.*

* *Il est* and *est-il?* are often used elegantly in French, for *il y a*, and *y a-t-il?*

There is no persuading you when you have a mind
envie
not to believe what you are told. - - - More virtue
de
requisite to support good fortune than bad. - - -
pour,p.
Such art and nicety are requisite to
délicatesse *pour*,p.
please every body. - - - It matters little whether it be
à *que* *ce*
my servant or yours who carries the letter to the
porter,v.
post. - - - You must honour your father and mother if
oste,f.
you will live long and happy. - - - It is more glo-
vouloir,v.
rious to conquer one's passions than to conquer
de vaincre,v. *ses* *conquérir*,v.
the whole world. - - Sir, I want a pair of boots,
entier,adj.
you have some in your shop that will suit
boutique,f. *convenir*,v.
me. - - - It is reported that the Russians have beaten
Russe,m.
the Turks; it is said so, but it is not yet known as a
Turc,m.
certain fact. - - It is thought Sweden has declared war
fait,m. *Suède*,f.
against France. - - - It is true; but it is much
à *vrai*,adj.
feared lest the Swedes should be
craindre,v. *que*,c. *Suédois* *ne*, (by the pres.subj.)
beaten, though they fight most courageously.
se battre,v. *très*
- - - Have the letters been received which were
expected yesterday? No, but the mail is ar-
attendre,v. *malle*,f.
rived, and they will be delivered this morning.
distribuer,v.

SECT. V.

OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *participle active*, in French, always ends in *ant:* ex. *parlant; punissant*, and in English in *ing:* ex. *speaking, punishing*, &c. It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable: ex.

Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant *à nous*,	I see men and women *coming* to us.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The persons whom you saw with us are people
gens,pl.
fearing God and loving virtue. - - - - She met your
father and sister (as she was) coming here. - - - My
en *ici*,adv.
mother was told (the day before yesterday) that
avant-hier,adv.
your sister, remembering the injuries she had
se ressouvenir,v. *des*
received from your brother, refused to
reçues,p.p. *de la part de*, *de*
see him, and we are all glad to hear it. - -
de apprendre,v.
Your aunt, having given the necessary orders to your
cousins, (set out) immediately for London. - - - Did
partir,v.
you not see them coming to us? - - How many oxen,
bœuf,m.
sheep, and horses I hear afar off lowing,
brebis,f.pl. *entendre*,v. *de loin*,adv. *mugir*,v.
bleating, and neighing! - - Do you not admire these
béler,v. *hennir*,v.

lambs, skipping in your father-in-law's meadow?
agneau,m. *bondir*,v. *prairie*,f.

N. B. In order to distinguish between active participles, and many adjectives which are spelt alike, but which must agree with the nominative, consider whether there is an action expressed, or whether the word implies merely an attribute of the noun, thus, in these two sentences,

Je vois des agneaux, bondissant *dans la plaine*,	I see lambs *skipping* in the plain.
J'aime à voir les agneaux bondissans, errer *dans la plaine*,	I like to see *skipping* lambs, *wandering* in the plain.

The first conveys this idea, that the lambs are *now* skipping, whilst the second implies that an attribute of lambs is to skip.

When the participle active in English is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood, and it is sometimes used as a substantive: ex.

Faut-il que je parle sans *lui* parler?	Must I set out *without speaking* to him?
La pauvreté *du corps est* la richesse *de l'âme*,	*The impoverishing* of the body is *the enriching* of the soul.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I assure you there is a great deal of pleasure in
à,p.
teaching diligent scholars. - - - We are told there
enseigner,v.
will not be so much danger in travelling, as there
à voyager,v. *que*
was before. - - Lewis the Great had especially the su-
surtout,adv.
perior and rare talent of knowing and choosing men of merit. - - - He left the house without seeing his

father, and even without speaking to his mother.
même,adv.
--I should despise a man who is capable of
mépriser,v.
deceiving his friends. -- After having (waited for) her
tromper,v. *attendre*,v.
a long while, she (sent me word) that she was not
envoyer dire,v.
ready to (go out.) -- She spends all her time in
prêt,adj. *à* *passer*,v. *à*
reading or writing. -- My mother takes an infinite
pleasure in admiring the situation of your house. - The
à *situation*,f.
grace of God will always keep us from sinning.
empêcher,v. *pécher*,v.
-- I often admire the rising and setting of the sun. --
lever,m. *coucher*,m. *soleil*,m.
The defending of a bad cause is worse than
défense,f. *mauvais*,adj.
the cause itself.
même.

The participle passive is sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, when it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb in gender and number; and when it is not attended with any auxiliary verb; in this case it becomes an adjective or at least performs the same office.

Mon frère est aimé,	My brother is *loved.*
Ma sœur est aimée,	My sister is *loved.*
Mes cousins sont partis,	My cousins are gone.
Mes cousines sont parties,	My cousins are gone.
Elle paroît affligée,	She appears *afflicted.*
Elles paroissent affligées,	They appear *afflicted.*

N. B. There is no exception to the above rule; but it is very important to remember that in the compound tenses of the reflected verbs, the verb *être* is employed for the verb *avoir;* all such cases will come under the next rule, as if the verb *être* were the verb *avoir*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have been told your brother-in-law is gone to
beau-frère,m.
the Continent. - - - I have not seen your mother
vu,p.p.
since she arrived from France; does she appear
depuis que,c.
satisfied with her journey? - - - My brothers are gone to
de *voyage*,m.
Dover, and intend to pay you a visit when
se proposer,v. *de rendre*,v.
they are (come back). - - - The houses which are
(by the fut.) *revenir*,v.
built in the winter are not so wholesome as those
sain,adj.
which are begun (in the) spring and finished (in the)
au *au*
middle of summer. - - The wicked are always tor-
été,m. *méchant*,adj.pl. *bour-*
mented, and the righteous are comforted by their
reler,v. *juste*,adj. *consoler*,v.
own conscience. - - Virtuous people are esteemed
personne,f.
and respected by those who are so. - - - I assure you
de
that Mr. Brown's wife appears much afflicted
femme,f. *fort*,adv.
at the death of her husband, but her sons appear
de *mari*,m.
as much affected by it as she.
toucher,v.

Secondly, with the verb *avoir*, the participle instead of agreeing with the nominative, must agree with *the direct object*, which is a noun or (in this instance) a pronoun governed in the *accusative case*, but that direct object must *precede* the participle, otherwise that participle does not agree with it; thus in this phrase, *j'ai vu ma sœur*, the participle does not change, because *ma sœur* which is the direct object, does not precede, but in this phrase *c'est ma sœur que j'ai vue*, the participle agrees, because *que* relative pronoun, which represents *ma sœur* is placed before that participle.

In the compound tenses of the reflected verbs where the auxiliary *être* is employed instead of *avoir*, if you suppose this last verb to exist where *être* is used, the above-mentioned rule must direct you. By the same reason that we say *il l'a tuée* (he has killed her,) we say *elle s'est tuée*, which is the same as if we could say *elle a soi tuée*, *she has herself killed*, she killed herself.

J'ai vu Madame Wright et l'ai entendue *chanter*,	I saw Mrs. Wright and *heard her* sing.
J'ai lu tous les livres *que vous m'avez* prêtés,	I have read all the *books* which you *lent* me.
Avez-vous vu les marchandises *que j'ai* reçues,	Did you see the *goods* which I have *received*.
Vous l'avez souvent priée *de passer chez vous*,	You often *desired her* to call at your house.
Elles se *sont* repenties *de leurs fautes*,	They have *repented* of their faults.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The resolution which she has taken of going into
à
the country surprises me very much; I have spoken
étonner,v. *très fort*,adv.
to her myself, but I have not (been able to) learn
pouvoir,v.
the reasons which have induced her to it. - - - Miss
engager,v. *Mlle*
Farren was an excellent actress, I have seen her
actrice,f.

play several times. - - I am very sorry for the
fâché,adj. *de*
trouble that affair has given to your aunt. - - If you
peine,f. *tante*,f.
can come with me, I will show you the lady
montrer,v.
whom I have heard sing. - - What stuff have
entendre,v. *étoffe*,f.
you chosen ? - - The letter which you have written to
choisi,p.p.
me in French was tolerably well; I have shown
en *passablement*,adv.
it to your aunt, who is much pleased
très,adv. *content*,adj.
(with it). - - I have not yet received the goods,
en,pro. *marchandise*,f.
which you sent me by the ship Good-
vaisseau,m.
Will. - - Ladies, have you returned him the letters
Mesdames, *rendre*,v.
which he had desired you to read ? - - - Where
prier,v. *de* *Où*,adv.
did you buy those gloves ? - - - - - I bought
acheter,v.
them in France. - - Alexander conquered Asia with
Asie
the troops which his father Philip had disciplined.
troupe,f.
- - The faults which he had committed, greatly
beaucoup,adv.
increased his prudence. - - He has spent all the
augmenter,v.
treasures which his father had amassed with so much
trésor,m.
care and labour. - - I shall never forget the good
oublier,v.
services which you have done to my mother.
service,m. *rendre*,v.
- - Of all the letters which my brother has received

to-day, there is not one (of them) for
aujourd'hui,adv.
me. - - The reasons, which you have given us, have
satisfied us. - - What books have you lost? - - The
satisfaire,v.
fine actions your brothers have done in
beau,adj. *action*,f. *faire*,v. *en*
America deserve great praises, and (ought to) be
Amérique *mériter*,v. *louange*,f. *devoir*,v.
transmitted to posterity. - - The three country
houses, which your father is said to have bought,
maison,
are extremely fine and well situated. - - The
situé,p.p.
soldiers, whom they obliged to (set out,) are
soldat,m. *à*
(come back) already. - - - My sisters have
revenir,v.
quarrelled the whole day, and are now reconciled.
se quereller,v.

The participle passive is indeclinable when the participle *is not* preceded by a *direct object*, or pronoun governed in the accusative case.

This happens when the object follows, as in this phrase *J'ai* vu *ma sœur*, or when another verb governs the pronoun, as in this phrase, *Il ne faut jamais s'écarter de la bonne route* que *l'on a* commencé *à suivre*; here *suivre* governs *que* and not *commencé*.

La maison que *j'ai* fait *bâtir*,	The house I have built.
C'est une belle chanson, je l'ai entendu *chanter plusieurs fois*,	It is a fine song, I have *heard it* sung many a time.
J'y suis allé avec elle et l'ai vu *peindre*,	I went there with her, and saw her picture drawn.

La langue que j'ai commencé d'apprendre est fort utile,	The language I have *begun* to learn is very useful.

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *chanter*, *peindre*, and *apprendre*.

EXERCISES UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

I have given him a fable to translate. - - I cannot
à traduire,v.
forget the good actions, which I have seen
you do. - - - The goods which you ordered me to
de
send, are arrived ; permit me to show you the letters
de
which he has seen me open from Germany. - - -
Allemagne,f.
Have you already read the books, which I saw* you
buying ? - - - - I have bought the clothes for
habit,m.
which you saw me bargaining. - - - The history
marchander,v.
which I have begun to read is not entertaining. - -
à *amusant*,adj.
She has written more books than you ever have
jamais,adv.
read. - - The lady whom I saw singing is handsome and young, but the song which I have heard sung is the best, as to words and music, that
quant
your brother ever wrote. - Miss B. has spent
passer,v.

* Observe that the participle, though it should not agree with books, *livres*, it should agree with the pronoun *vous*, so that it should be spelt *vue* if addressed to a female.

two or three days with your sisters, and saw their
voir,v. *les*
(picture drawn); their cousins were in the next
peindre,v.
room, and my sister saw them painting in miniature.
en,p.

It is often difficult to ascertain which is the *direct object;* a simple method is, to add one of these pronouns *who* or *what* to the participle, and then the answer will point out that object: thus, for this sentencce, *ma sœur s'est cassé l'épaule*, ask my sister, *broke*—what?—*her shoulder;* this, then is the object, but as *l'épaule* follows, the participle does not change.

Sometimes a preposition is understood, or expressed by the pronoun, as in this sentence *voilà la dame dont j'ai parlé;* the pronoun *dont* is not the direct object, with which only the participle can agree; it is the genitive; besides, the verb *parler*, in this instance is neuter, and therefore cannot govern a noun in the accusative case: ex.

Les Anglois *se* sont *rendus* fameux dans cette guerre,	The English *made themselves* famous in this war?
Telles sont ses objections; *j'y* ai *pensé*,	Such are his objections; I have *thought of them.*

EXERCISE UPON THESE REMARKS.

Daughter, I had warned you of it. - - You
avertir,v.
would have rendered yourself celebrated by your talents
rendre,refl.v.
and beauty, if you had not shown them so much vanity.
montrer,v.
- - - He is the man (of whom) our neighbours have
C'est *dont*
complained. - - It is your fault, Miss, I have already
se plaindre,refl.v.
scolded you (about it).
gronder,v.

Lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the participle passive are used impersonally. *Dû* (when not signifying owed), *pu*, and *voulu*, are also indeclinable: ex.

Les pluies qu'il a fait,	The rains which we *have had.*
Je vous ai montré la reconnoissance que j'ai dû,	I have shown you the gratitude I *ought.*
Ma sœur a fait tout ce qu'elle a pu,	My sister has done every thing she *could.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The storm, which we had yesterday, has *tempête*,f.
done (a great deal) of damage to our
causer,v. *beaucoup*,adv. *dommage*
ships. - - - The abundant showers which we have
pluie,f.
had this week, have prevented me from going
empêcher,v.
into the country. - - - The high winds which
à *grand*,adj. *vent*,m.
they have had in the county of Kent, have (blown
comté,m. *renver-*
down) many houses and trees. - - At last he has
ser,v. *Enfin*,adv.
returned me all the sums which I had lent to
rendre,v. *somme*,f.
him, and which he had owed me so long. - - - I
devoir,v.
have not paid all the attention which I ought to
faire,v.
the advice your father gave me. - - - She has ob-
avis,m. *ob-*
tained from the king all the favours she would.
tenir,v. *grâce*,f.

. . . My brother might have improved more,
faire des progrès
but he has not made all the efforts he could.
effort,m.

N. B. The rules on this subject, which have been regarded as being extremely intricate, and numerous, may be reduced to three, viz. 1st, The participle when attended with no auxiliary agrees with the nominative, like an adjective.—2d, When attended with the verb *être*, the participle *constantly* agrees with the nominative. Lastly the participle when attended with the verb *avoir* agrees with its *direct object*, only when that object precedes the participle; and in the compound tenses of the reflected verbs, the auxiliary verb *être* must be regarded as filling the place of the verb avoir, and subjected to the same rules, that being an anomaly in the language.

EXAMPLE UPON THE FOREGOING RULES.

J'ai reçu *les lettres que vous m'avez* écrites *au sujet de l'affaire, que je vous avois* proposée: *et après les avoir* lues *avec attention, j'ai* reconnu, *comme vous, que, si je l'avois* entreprise, *j'y aurois* trouvé *des obstacles que je n'avois pas* prévus,

I have *received* the letters, which you *wrote* to me with respect to the affair which I had *proposed* to you: and after having *read* them with attention, I *perceived*, as you did, that, if I had *undertaken* it, I should have *met* with obstacles, which I had not *foreseen*.

Reçu is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen; *écrites* is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with its direct object, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative *que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *letters*; *proposée* likewise agrees with que, by which it is preceded,

and which relates to the word *affaire ; lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *letters ; reconnu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate; *entreprise*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *l'*, which is its direct object and its antecedent, relating to *affaire ; trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded but followed by its accusative *obstacles ; prévus*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its direct object *que*, which relates to *obstacles*.

Clearness is the principal quality of the *French language*, therefore equivocations in the use of the participles should be carefully avoided: ex. *Je les ai* rangés *en ordre*, speaking of papers, may signify I have *set* them in order, or I have them and they are in order; in such a case a different regular turn should be chosen with which this language abounds.

SECT. VI.

INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place, time, quality, quantity, number, order, affirmation, negation, doubt, interrogation, comparison, collection, separation*, &c. But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact: it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the *advantage of the learner*.

TABLE OF ADVERBS.*

Abondamment, abundantly, plentifully.
à l'Abandon, at random, in confusion, in disorder.
D'Abord, at first, immediately.
Absolument, absolutely.
D'Accord, grant it, done.
Agréablement, pleasantly, comfortably.
Ainsi (de même), so, thus, in the same manner.
Aisément, easily.
Mal aisément, with difficulty.
Dans un an d'ici, a year hence.
L'année qui vient, the next year.
Anciennement, *Autrefois*, } formerly, anciently.
En ami, friendly.
à l'amiable, amicably.
En arrière, *tomber en arrière*, to fall backward.
à reculons, *marcher à reculons*, to walk backward.
Assez, enough.
Assurément, certainly.
Aujourd'hui, to-day.
Time to come. { *D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'nnight. *D'aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnigh
Time past. { *Il y a aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week, day se'nnigh *Il y a aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fortni *Il y a aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve mon
Autant, as much, as many.
D'autant plus, so much the more.
D'autant moins, so much the less.
Tout autant, *Tout aussi*, } just as, just as much, every whit.
Dorénavant, in future.
à l'avenir, for the future, hereafter.
à l'Angloise, after the English manner, fashion, *or* w
à l'Italienne, after the Italian, *&c.*
à la Françoise, after the French, *&c.*
à la Turque, after the Turkish, *&c.*

* Simple adverbs are generally placed after the verbs, and in pound tenses between the auxiliary and the participle passive.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Our garden produces all kinds of fruits *plentifully*. - - Your sister left (*sorte*,f.) all her things *in disorder*. - - You did not know me *at first*. - - He would (*laisser*,v.) *absolutely* do it. - - If you please, I will go to (*vouloir*,v.) London with you. *Done*. - - I hope we shall spend (*vouloir*,v.) the day *pleasantly*. - - Have we not spent it *so?* - - - (*passer*,v.) My brother learns his lessons *easily*, and I *with difficulty*. - - *A year hence* you will (be able to) speak (*pouvoir*,v.) French tolerably well. - - My father says I shall go to *France *next year*. - - - It was done so *anciently*. - - I had the honour of seeing you *formerly*, but I do not recollect (*se rappeler*,v.) where I had that pleasure: I believe it was at Mr. P's. who received us *friendly*. - - - Your brother and mine have settled (*régler*,v.) their affairs *amicably*. - - - Make two steps (*pas*,m.) *backward*. - - He who walks *backwards* cannot see his way. - - Have you played *enough?* - - - *Certainly* you must (*devoir*,v.) be tired. - - - We do not expect him (*fatiguer*,v.) (*attendre*,v.)

* See the article indefinite, page 41.

to-day. - - If it be fine weather, I shall be back
faire,v. *de retour*
this day se'nnight. - - I shall see you *this day fortnight* if I am* well. - - *This day week* I was (at your house).
chez vous.
- - - *This day month* I met your brother. - - I came here *this day twelve months.* - - - He has *as* *ici*,adv.
much money and *as many* friends as you. - - I was *so much the more* persuaded of what you told me, that I dismissed him *this day* three weeks. - - -
renvoyer,v.
I will do it *so much the less*, as I promised him not
que
to meddle with that affair. - - - My sister has
de se mêler,v. *de*,p.
just *as much* wit, and is *just as* amiable as yours. - - -
que
Your son has given you some trouble, but I
peine,f. *mais*,c.
hope he will give you pleasure *hereafter.* - - If you forgive him this time, he will not do it *for the* *future.* - - - *In future*, I never will trust him
se fier,v.
any more. - - She dresses *after the English* *s'habiller*,v.
fashion, but she lives *after the French way.* - - She
vivre,v.
plays *after the Italian manner.* - - Your sister has a cap *after the Turkish fashion.* - - Come here, *bonnet*,m.
go there, look every where.
chercher,v.

* See note page 222.

ADVERBS.

Bas, } off, down, down with, below.
à, or *en bas*, }
En badinant, for fun.
Beaucoup, } much, many, a great deal.
Bien, }
à beaucoup près, nothing near, (with *ne* before and *pas* after the verb.)
De beaucoup, by much, greatly.
Bien, well, very.
De bon cœur, heartily, with a good will.
De bonne foi, } sincerely.
Sincèrement, }
De bonne heure, betimes.
De bon jeu, fairly.
De bon matin, early.
De bouche, by word of mouth.
à la bonne heure, in good time, luckily, well and good.
à bon droit, deservedly.
à bon marché. cheap.
à bride abattue, full speed.
çà et là, to and fro.
à cause de quoi, on what account.
à cela près, that excepted.
Cependant, in the meanwhile, nevertheless.
à cheval, on horseback.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Hats *off*, gentlemen, and sit down. - - - The[2] whole[1] army[3] surrendered and laid *down* their arms
se rendre, v. *mettre*, v. *les*
upon the ramparts of the citadel. - - There is a man *below*, whom you will see with pleasure. - - Though* *Quoique*, c.
we said it *for fun*, he was very angry with us. - - *contre*, p.
There were many ladies, and we had *a great deal* of pleasure. - - You may say what you please,
pouvoir, v. *il vous plaira*, v.

* See conjunctions that govern the subjunctive, page 420.

but she is *nothing near* so handsome as her sister. - - He has *by much* increased his fortune. - - - Whatever you do, do it well. - - If you do not do it *with a good will*, I will do it myself. - - He has acted very *sincerely* in that business. - - Do you speak *sincerely?* - - We will get up *betimes*. - - Have I not won
se lever,v. *gagner*,v.
fairly? - - We will (set out) *early*, that we may arrive
afin que
before the heat of the day. - - - It (is
avant *chaleur*,f. *valoir*
better to) tell it him *by word of-mouth*, than to
mieux,v. *de*
write to him. - - Sir, I have done my exercise. - - *Well*
thème,m.
and good. - - He has obtained it *deservedly*. - - My
obtenir,v.
father has bought a horse *very cheap*. - - Do you see those two horsemen, who come to us *full speed?* - - -
cavalier,m.
They wandered *to and fro* without* knowing whither
aller,v.
to go. - - *On what account* is he angry with me? - - *That excepted*, I have nothing to reproach him
à reprocher,v. *lui*
with. - - - I should speak, but, *in the meanwhile*, I
devoir,v.
(hold my tongue). - - Miss White is very handsome,
se taire,v.
nevertheless, I do not love her. - - - Some went
Les uns
to London in a coach, others on *horseback*.
en,p. à

* Without, *sans*, requires the present infinitive.

ADVERBS.

Combien, How much, how many, how?

Combien y a-t-il que,
Combien de temps y a-t-il que,
Combien y avoit-il que,
Depuis quand,
Combien de temps,
Pendant combien de temps,
} how long?

N. B. 1. *How much*, *how many*, *how*, are rendered in French by *que* before an admiration: ex.

Que vous êtes jolie! How pretty you are!

2. We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased; and then the verb, which (in English) is in the compound of the present, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood: ex.

Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes, or, *depuis quand êtes-vous à Londres?* How long have you been in London?

3. If the verb (in English) be in the compound of the imperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative: ex.

Combien y avoit-il que vous étiez, or, *depuis quand étiez-vous à Londres quand il mourut?* How long had you been in London, when he died?

4. If the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de temps*, with the following verb in the compound of the present: ex.

Pendant combien de temps avez-vous été à Londres? How long were you in London?

5. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de temps*, with the verb in the same tense as it is in English : ex.

Pendant combien de temps vous proposez vous de rester en Italie ? How long do you intend to stay in Italy?

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

How much do you owe him ? - - - You see to *how many* dangers and *how many* reproaches we are liable. - - - *How many* times shall I be obliged to bid you to (be silent ?) - - - *How* troublesome you are ! *How* sorry I am for* having displeased you ! - - *How much* I should be obliged to you, if you would grant me that favour ! - - *How long* have you been learning French ? - - *How long* have they been in Paris ? - - *How long* had you been in London, when you married ? - - *How long* had you been learning Italian, when you wrote to me ? - - *How long* have your parents been in England ? - - *How long* had your brother been in Germany, when we left it ? *How long* were you in Holland ? - - *How long* did your cousin learn the mathematics ? - - *How long*

exposé,p.p. *de* *dire*,v. *de se taire*,v. *importun*,adj. *de* *à* *se marier*,v. *Italien* *père et mère* *quitter*,v. *en*

* The prepositions *de*, *pour* and *à*, always govern the present infinitive and its compound.

have that gentleman and lady (been waiting for) *attendre*, v.
me? - - *How long* has your relation been dead? - - -
How long had he been in his regiment, when he
died? - - *How long* was he ill? - - *How long* does your
malade?
uncle intend to leave his son on the continent? - -
se proposer de
How long had your father and mother proposed
to stay in America? - - Why (are you proud) of
de *en* *s'enorgueillir*, v.
your beauty? You do not know how long it will last.

ADVERBS.

Combien y a-t-il d'ici? How far is it hence?
Dans combien de temps? How long will it be before?
Comme, as, like, how.
Comme il faut, soundly, as it should be.
Comment, how.
à contre-cœur, against our will.
à contre-sens, the contrary, *or* wrong way, in a wrong sense.
à contre-temps, unseasonably.
à corps perdu, hand over head, desperately.
de côté, *à l'écart*, *à part*, } aside.
à côté, by the side of it.
à côte l'un de l'autre, abreast.
De ce côté-ci, on this side.
De ce côté-là, on that side.
De côté et d'autre, up and down, about.
De tous côtés, on all sides, on every side.
Coup sur coup, one after another.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

How far is it hence to Dover? - - *How long will it be*
Douvres?
before you 'send me 'back the books I lent you? - -
renvoyer,v.
They are punished *as* they deserve. - - - My father's
le
house is *like* yours, it is very badly built. - - -
mal,adv.
See *how* it rains. - - - Have they not been beaten
soundly? - - - This exercise is done as *it should be.*
- - *How* can you speak thus? - - We went to the play
against our will. - - You hold your book *the wrong*
way. - - - - Your brother took *in a wrong sense* all
that I said to him. - - - Our master arrived very
ce que
unseasonably. - - - The French rushed on the
fondre,v.
Austrians *desperately.* - - Lay this *aside.* - - - Put
Autrichien,m.
that *by the side of it.* - - I perceive two ships sailing
apprevoir,v.
abreast. - - Let us walk *on this side*, and our companions
will *go on that side.* - - They run *up and down* all day,
and do (nothing but) play. - - How dare you run *about*
ne *que*
while your mother (is waiting for) you? - -
*pendant que.*c.
The enemies were victorious *on all sides.* - - - We
hear *on every side*, that peace will very
*apprendre.*v. *bien*
soon take place. - - - They drank three bottles of
avoir lieu,v.
Burgundy wine one after another.

ADVERBS.

Davantage, more.
Dedans, *En dedans*, within, inwardly.
Dehors, *En dehors*, without.
Déjà, already.
Demain, to-morrow.
Le lendemain, the day after.
Après demain, the day after to-morrow.
Dernièrement, lately.
Ci-dessus, above.
Par dessus, above, over and above.
Dessous, *Au dessous*, underneath.
à découvert, openly.
à demi, *à moitié*, half, by halves.
à dessein, on purpose, designedly.
à droite, to the right.
à double entente, with a double meaning.
Encore, again, yet, as yet.
Enfin, at last.
Ensuite, afterward, then.
Entièrement, entirely.
Exprès, on purpose.
à l'écart, out of the way.
à l'entour, round about.
à l'envers, the wrong side outwards.
à l'envi, in emulation.
aux environs, thereabouts.
En nulle manière, in no wise, (with *ne* before the verb.)
En plein jour, *En plein midi*, at noon, at mid-day.
En temps et lieu, in a proper time and place.
En tous cas, whatever may happen.
En un clin d'œil, in the twinkling of an eye.
En sursaut, suddenly.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

I know how that happened, talk *no more* of it. - - Look *within* and you shall see it. - - She was *within* and I was *without*. - - Have you *already* done your exercise? - - I will call upon you *to-morrow*, and
passer,v. *chez*,p.
the day after we will go and see my uncle. - - - We will pay you *the day after to-morrow* if we can. - - I was *lately* (at your house). - - You will find it *above*.
chez vous.
- - - I like your garden and walks *above all*.
aimer,v.
- - There is a stone, look *underneath*, you will find something curious. - - - Speak and show yourself
singulier.
openly. - - - We were *half* dead. - - - I never do things *by halves*. - - They killed him *on purpose*. - - They did say so *designedly*. - - Go *to the right*. - - My brother always speaks *with a double meaning*. - - - I have told the truth, and they do not *yet* believe me. - - *At last* the rebels retired into the woods with
se retirer,v. *dans*,p. *bois*,m.
a great loss. - - Do first what you have to do,
perte,f. *Faire*,v.
afterward you shall go out - - - He did it *entirely* to please you. - - I came *on purpose* to see you.
pour,p.

- - - Take all these papers, and put them *out of the way*. - - How can you find the place, if you always turn *round about?* - - - You have (put on) your waistcoat *the wrong side outwards*. - - - My brother and yours work *in emulation* of one another. - - - He lives in London or *thereabouts*. - - - I will do it *in no wise*. - - I was stopped *at noon*. - - - We will tell him what we think *in a proper time and place*. - - - *Whatever may happen*, I (do not care) for it. - - He did it *in the twinkling of an eye*. - - This morning I awoke *suddenly*, but I soon fell asleep again.

mettre,v. *veste*,f. *à* *lui* *se soucier*,v. *s'éveiller*,v.

ADVERBS.

Facilement, easily.
Fidèlement, faithfully.
à la file, } in a file.
De file, }
à la fois, together.
Combien de fois? how many times?
Une fois, once.
Deux fois, twice.
Trois fois, thrice, three times.
Tant de fois, so many times.
Par fois, now and then.
Fortement, strongly.
Fort, very.
Fort et ferme, stoutly.

à fond, thoroughly.
De fond en comble, from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.
De front, abreast.
Galamment, genteelly, politely.
Goutte à goutte, by drops.
Guère ou *Guères*, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.
à la hâte, in haste.
En haut, / *Là haut*, } up there, up stairs, above stairs.
D'heure en heure, hourly, every hour.
Hier, yesterday.
Hier-au soir, last night.
Avant-hier, the day before yesterday.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Your brother learns *easily*, but he forgets *almost* as *easily* as he learns. - - In the last battle our troops (*oublier*, v.) fought (with the) French, all the soldiers and officers did their duty *faithfully:* the enemy surrendered at discretion, and were obliged to (march out) of the country *in a file.* - - Let every one speak in his turn, for if you speak all *together*, how can I hear what you say? - - *How many times* did I tell you to write to your parents? - - I spoke to him only *once*, but I saw him *twice.* - - My father generally goes to Germany thrice a year. - - I told it you *three*

(*à*) (*de sortir*, v.) (*à*) (*pl.*) (*Que entendre*, v.) (*de père et mère?*) (*Allemagne*)

times. - - I saw him *so many times.* - - Do you go *often* to London ? I go (there) *now and then.* - - The king *strongly* opposed the enemy in the action. - - - Your little sister is *very* pretty. - - - In all that (which) they undertake they always act *stoutly.* - - My brother knows French *thoroughly.* - - They demolished the house *from top to bottom.* - - I travelled in a post-chaise drawn by three horses *abreast.* - - Always behave *genteelly.* - - Your brothers came to see us, and we received them *politely.* - - The wine runs from the hogshead *by drops.* - - Give him *but little* wine. - - [1]Never[3] do[2] things *in haste.* - - Is Mr. D. *above stairs ?* - - Go *up stairs*, you will find what you (look for) in the drawer behind the door. - - After having (waited for) him *hourly*, he arrived at last. - - We see the army increasing *every hour.* - - I went *yesterday* to London. - - It rained very much *last night*, and it has frozen very hard this morning. - - *The day before yesterday* I met your brother, who was riding on horse-*back.*

souvent,adv. *y* *s'opposer à* *mêlée*,f. *agir*,v. *savoir le François* *couler*,v. *muid*,m. *Ne jamais*,adv. *chercher*,v. *tiroir*,m. *derrière*,p. *attendre*,v. *grossir*,v. *très-fort* *se promener*,v.

ADVERBS.

Ici, here.
Ici autour, hereabouts.
Ici près, hard by.
D'ici, hence.
D'ici en quinze jours, within a fortnight.
Par ici, this way.
Par ici par là, here and there.
à l'instant, immediately, instantly.
Jamais, ever.
Ne jamais, never.
à jamais, for ever.
Justement, just, precisely.
Jusqu'à quand? how long?
Jusqu'ici, hitherto, as far as this.
Jusque-là, so far, as far as that.
Jusqu'où? how far?
De jour, in the day time.
De jour à autre, / *De jour en jour*, } from day to day, daily.
De deux en deux jours, / *De deux jours l'un*, / *Tous les deux jours*, } every other day.
Dans quinze jours, in a fortnight.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Did I not tell you to stay *here?* - - How many miles is it *hence* (*de*) to Hampton-Court? - -

(There must) be (a great deal) of game *hereabouts*. - - How long has he lived *hard by?* - - How far is it *hence* to Canterbury? - - I will (call upon) your brother *within a fortnight*. - - Come this way. - - Your

(*Il doit*, v. imp. — *gibier*, m. — *demeurer*, v. — Cantorbéry — *passer chez*)

books are scattered *here and there.* - - Come back
épars,adj.
immediately. - - They *instantly* invited him to dine
à
with them. - - I do not believe that he *ever* will follow
(by the subj.)
your advice. - - My father *never* will see him again.
conseil,m.
- - Great men will *for ever* be celebrated in history.

- - (This is) *just* what I say. - - *How long*, O
Voilà,adv.
Catiline, will you abuse our patience ? - - -
Catalina *abuser*,v. *de*
Hitherto the enemy has done nothing considerable.
de
- - Learn this piece of poetry as *far as that.* - -
poésie
How far will you go ? - - You always come to see me
de
by night, why do not you come *in the day-time ?* - -
de
We expect *from day to day* to receive news from
de
the Continent. - - We are *daily* exposed to great
m.
dangers. - - My master comes here *every other day.*

- - I shall go to France and Italy in *a fortnight.*

ADVERBS.

Là, there, thither.
Là autour, thereabouts.
Là bas, yonder.
De là, } thence.
En de là, }
Par là, that way.
Loin, far.
De loin, afar off, at a distance.

Long-temps, a long while, long time.
Lors, then, at the time.
Alors, } then.
Pour lors, }
Dès-lors, from that time.
Mal, ill, wrong.
Maintenant, now.
Médiocrement, indifferently.
Même, even, yet.
De même, so, in the same manner.
Mieux, better.
De mieux en mieux, better and better.
Moins, less.
Moins—Moins, the less—the less.
à moins, for less, at less.
Au moins, du moins, } at least, at the least.
Tout au moins, }
En moins de rien, in a trice.
Naïvement, plainly, ingenuously.
Naturellement, naturally, by nature.
au Naturel, to the life.
Ne ni, ni, neither—nor.
Non pas, ne pas, ne point, non, no, not.*
De nuit, by night, in the night-time.
Obligeamment, kindly, obligingly.
Où, where.

OBSERVATION ON THE ADVERB *Où*.

The adverb of place, *Où*, where, is most commonly and more elegantly turned into French by *que* after the two other adverbs *ici*, here, *là*, there, to prevent the hiatus caused by the meeting of the two vowels; and sometimes after nouns expressing the place where something has happened, been done or committed, especially when

* *Pas*, with the negation *ne* before it, merely expresses a negative, without affirming it, whereas *point* denies and affirms at once. *Pas often* denies but partly, or with some modification; *point*, on the *contrary*, always denies absolutely, totally, and without any reserve.

the sentence begins with the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as, *it is*, *it was*, *it will be*, &c.: ex.

C'est ici que nous l'attendons,	It is here (where) we are waiting for him.
Ce fut là que je le vis pour la première fois,	It was there (where) I saw him for the first time.
Ce fut en plein sénat que César fut inhumainement assassiné,	It was in full senate (where, or in which) Cæsar was inhumanly murdered.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

It was *there* or *thereabouts* that I met him. - - Do Ce
you see that tree *yonder*. - - *Thence* I went to France,
and soon after to Germany. - - If you go *that way*
après,p.
you may call at Mr. H's. - - We are yet *far* from
pouvoir,v. *passer chez*
our house. - - I see many ships *afar off*. - - I saw him
yesterday, but it was *at a distance*. - - You made me
wait *a long while*. - - The fight lasted *a long*
combat,m.
time. - - He was ill *at the time* of my arrival. - - *Then*,
I believe you. - - *From that time* I began to
commencer,v.
speak to him. - - Does your son behave ill *now ?* - -
When I do wrong, I repent *very soon*. - - They are
tort *bientôt*,adv.
now in England. - - The tree that I planted grows
indifferently. - - Virtue is amiable *even* in an enemy.

You blame him, and nevertheless you act *in the same manner*. - - You work *better* than your sister. - - She reads French *better and better*. - - My cousin has *less* money and merit. - - *The less* you work *the less* you will improve. - - - He will not do it *for less*. - - There are now in America 30,000 men *at the least*. - - If you cannot come, *at least* write to us. - - He replied *plainly* to all my questions, and I am much pleased with him. - - What he does, he does it *naturally*. - - Miss Nichol's picture is drawn *to the life*. - - I will *neither* see him *nor* speak to him. - - My mother and sisters (were to) go next week to France, but my father says, that he *neither* can *nor* will expose them to the dangers of a journey through a distant country. - - I (asked for) a glass of wine, and *not* a glass of water. - - Will you come with me? *No*, for you always travel *by night*. - - Always speak *kindly*. - - *Where* did you meet them? - - It was *where* I saw your brother for the last time. - - - It was at Caernarvon *where*

agir,v. — le — (by the fut.) faire des progrès. — portrait,m. — fait,p.p. — devoir,v. — vouloir,v. — dans éloigné de- mander,v. — car,c.

Edward the Second (was born,) the first who bore the
Edouard *naître*,v.
title of Prince of Wales. - - It was near the walls of
Galles,f. *muraille*
Corunna in Spain, *where* (or *near which*) the brave
la Corogne
Sir John Moore was wounded, and died a
chevalier,m. *Jean*
few hours after; England will long regret the loss
of that great general. It was there also *where* that[2]
famous[3] battle[4] (was fought[1]) (in which) both our
se donner,v. *où*
officers and soldiers showed so much courage. - - It is
not amidst the pleasures of this world *where* (or *amidst*
parmi,p.
which) we find happiness; it is in the bosom of inno-
sein,m.
cence and peace *where* (or *in which*) we ought to
(look for) it. - - It is in the county of Huntingdon
chercher,v. *province*,f.
where the best cheeses in the kingdom are made.*

ADVERBS.

D'où ? whence ?
Par où, through what place ? which way ? through which ?
Oui, yes.
D'outre en outre, through.
Pas à pas, step by step.
De part et d'autre, on both sides.
Nulle part, no-where, any-where.
à peine, hardly, scarcely.
Pêle-mêle, helter-skelter.

* See rules, page 337.

Peut-être, may be, perhaps.
Peu, little.
Peu à peu, by little and little, by degrees.
à peu près, } almost, very near, thereabouts.
à peu de chose près, }
Dans peu, in a short time.
Depuis peu, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.
à pied, on foot.
Pieds nus, barefoot, barefooted.
Au pis aller, let the worst come to the worst.
De pis en pis, worse and worse.
De plein gré, with a good will, freely.
De plein pied, on the same floor.
à pleines mains, largely.
Plus, more, above.
Plus—Plus, the more—the more.
Plus qu'il n'en faut, more than enough.
Au plus, *tout au plus*, at the most.
De plus en plus, more and more.
à plus forte raison, much rather, much more so.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Did my brothers tell you *whence* they came? - - *Which way* are they gone? - - The hole *through which* they (made their escape) was so small, that I
s'échapper,v.
do not know how they could (get out). - - Do you know
sortir,v.
your lesson? *Yes*, Sir. - - The barrel is pierced
baril.m.
through. - - I will follow you *step by step*. - - - The battle was cruel and bloody, and
combat,m. *sanglant*,adj.
kept up (a long time) with an equal advantage
se maintenir,v.
on both sides. - - I can find my book no-where. - - -

(There is no) going *any-where* in winter. - - He speaks
en
so low, that I can *hardly* hear what he says. - - - The
Spaniards pursued them so closely that they
Espagnol,m. *de si près*,adv.
entered the town *helter-skelter*. - - - I shall see you
dans
perhaps to-morrow. - - He has *little* money. - - If you
give me a verb, I will learn it *by little and little*. - -
She is as tall as you, or *thereabouts*. - - I heard that
your sister will (be married) *in a short time*. - - Have
se marier
you (heard from) your mother *lately*? - - I received a
letter from her *not long ago*. - - I was *on foot*, and
he was in a coach. - - I often pity the poor little
chimney sweepers, who walk *barefooted* in
cheminée *ramoneur*,m.
winter - - - *Let the worst come to the worst*, I will
(get rid) of it. - - - Your brother writes *worse*
se défaire,v.
and worse. - - He submitted to it *with a good will*. - -
se soumettre
All our rooms are *on the same floor*. - - He is so cha-
ritable, that he gives alms *largely*. - - I shall
aumône,f.sing.
never more complain of the rude reception
malhonnête,adj. *accueil*,m.
which your uncle has given to my father. - - - I have
fait,p.p.
written three letters, neither *more* nor *less*. - - You
are *above* twenty years old. - - - *The more we are*
plus de

above others, *the more* it becomes us
au dessus de,p.
modest and humble.* - - - You give me *mor*
enough. - - How many coats have you? - - I ha
at the most. - - I shall endeavour to deserve your
ness *more and more*. - - If I have done that to
pou
lige my friend, I would *much more so* do it f
relations.
parent,m.

ADVERBS.

Plutôt, sooner.
Point du tout, not at all.
à point nommé seasonably.
Tout à point, in the nick of time.
à propos, seasonably.
Pourquoi? or *que ne?* why?
De près, near, nearly, narrowly.
Premièrement, *En premier lieu*, } first, in the first place.
Dès à présent, from this moment.
Presque, almost, hardly.
Presque jamais, hardly ever, (with *ne* before the v
Presque toujours, most commonly.
De propos délibéré, on purpose, purposely, deliber
Par cas fortuit, by chance, accidentally.
Par derrière, behind.
Par dessus le marché, into or over the bargain.
Par en bas, downward.
Par en haut, upward.
Par malice, through ill-nature, out of ill-nature.
Par mégarde, unawares.
Par terre, upon the ground, down.

* See the rule page 63.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

My father arrived yesterday *sooner* than we ex-
ne
ɔcted him. - - - Do you like that book? *Not at*
l. - - - You come very *seasonably*, and your brother
ıme *in the nick of time.* - - He speaks *little*, but he
peu,adv.
ıeaks *seasonably.* - - - *Why* do you not learn your
ssons better? - - *Why* do not you come yourself?
- Your dog is so snarling, that (there is no) ap-
hargneux,adj.
roaching him *near.* - - - He *narrowly* escaped
ɛing killed. - - - *In the first place*, I must tell
être,v.
ɔu, that I shall punish you, if you do not
ɛhave better. - - *From this moment* I begin to
comporter,v. *à*
elieve that you are altered. - - You are *almost*
changé,p.p.
ı tall as I am. - - He is *hardly ever* at home. - - We
chez lui.
ine *most commonly* between three and four o'clock.
entre,p.
- They killed him *purposely.* - - I met him *by chance.*
- That has happened *accidentally.* - - He struck
frapper,v.
is enemy *behind.* - - - He gave me three yards of
aune
ıuslin *into the bargain.* - - Shall I begin *down-*
mousseline
ard or *upward?* - - - Begin *downward.* - - He has
ɔrn *my book through ill-nature.* - - I have
chirer,v.

done him any harm, certainly I did it *unawares.* - -
du
I always find your books and hat *upon the ground.*

- - It was Peter who threw me *down.*
jeter, v.

ADVERBS.

Quand? when?
Depuis quand? how long is it since?
Que? why? how?
Quelquefois, sometimes.
à quoi bon? to what purpose?
Rarement, seldom.
Au reste, } as to the rest.
Du reste, }
à rebours, the wrong way.
à reculons, backward.
à la renverse, backward, upon one's back.
Au or *à rez de chaussée*, even with the ground.
Sens devant derrière, preposterously.
Sens dessus dessous, topsy-turvy.
De tous sens, } every way.
De tous les sens, }
Séparément, separately.
Seulement, only.*
De sang froid, in cold blood.
De suite, together, one after another.
Dans la suite, } afterward.
Par la suite, }
Sur le champ, directly, upon the spot.
Sûrement, safely.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you? - -
How long is it since you lived in London? - - Why do
à

* *Only* is often also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb *and que* after it, then it becomes a conjunction.

you not come to see us *sometimes?* - - *To what purpose* shall I write to him? - - He writes to me very *seldom.* - - *As to the rest,* do as you please. - - You do (every thing) *the wrong way.* - - You hold your book *the wrong way.* - - He fell *upon his back.* - - - If you walk *backward,* you will fall *backward.* - - Our eating-room is *even with the ground.* - - You put all your things *preposterously.* - - She has left (every thing) *topsy-turvy.* - - - You may find it *everywhere.* - - He defeated them *separately.* - - I *only* saw him *once.* - - He committed the murder in *cold blood.* - - They go *together.* - - He will give you much pleasure *afterward.* - - Do *directly* what I bid you. - - We arrived *safely.*

(*vouloir*, v. fût. — *pouvoir*, v. — *salle* — *meurtre*, m. — *dire*, v.)

ADVERBS.

Tant, so much, so many.
Tant mieux, so much the better.
Tant pis, so much the worse.
Tantôt, by and by, sometimes.
Tantôt—Tantôt, sometimes—sometimes.
Tôt, *Bientôt*, } soon, very soon.
Tôt ou tard, one time or other, sooner or later, soon or late.
Tant soit peu, very little, ever so little.
Tard, late.

à temps, time enough, in proper time.
De long-temps, for a long time, this long while.
De temps en temps, / *De temps à autre*, } now and then, from time to time.
à tort, wrongfully.
à tort ou à droit, right or wrong.
à tort et à travers, at random.
Trop, too much.
Toujours, always, ever.
Pour toujours, for ever.
Tous les jours, every day.
Tour à tour, by turns.
Tout, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.*
Tout à coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.
Tout bas, softly, with a low voice.
Tout d'un coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

He has *so much* money, and *so many* goods, that he does know what to do (with them.) - - - (It is) *so much the better* for me, but it will be *so much the worse* for you. - - My father will come back *by and by*. - - - *Sometimes* you write well, *sometimes* you write very badly. - - My father says I shall *soon* go to France. - - Have patience, you will succeed *one time or other*. - - The sun is the emblem of truth, which dispels, *sooner or later*, the

en, pro.
C'est, v. *ce*
revenir, v.
dissiper, v.

* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable, in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant and an h mute: ex.

Ces femmes paroissoient tout effrayées et toutes consternées, These women seemed quite frightened and quite dismayed.

vapours of slander. - - Did he give you any meat? He gave me *very little.* - - You arrived *late*, but I came *in proper time.* - - I have not (heard from) my brother *for a long time.* - - Come and see us *now and then.* - - - You accuse him *wrongfully.* - - - *Right or wrong* he will *vouloir*,v. speak, and always speaks *at random.* - - Give him a little money, but never give him *too much.* - - You *always* contradict me when I speak. - - O my children! be *ever* good, and you will be *ever* happy. - - I bid *dire*,v. you adieu *for ever.* - - I go *every day* to town. - - We will dance *by turns.* - - I am *quite* tired with repeating the same things. - - My sisters were *de* *quite* transported with joy when they heard the happy news of the victory. - - Misfortunes *de* come sometimes *suddenly* upon us. - - Speak *softly.* - - - A storm arose *suddenly*, and the sailors *s'élever*,v. were *quite* frightened. - - The ladies I saw at the play were *quite* young and happy. - - He has more *à* brilliancy than solidity. - - - Science is estimable, *brillant* *solide.* but virtue is more so. *davantage*,adv.

ADVERBS.

Tout à fait, quite.
Tout à l'heure, this minute, presently.
Tout droit, straight along.
Tout de bon, in good earnest.
Tout de son long, all along.
Tout franc, frankly, freely.
Tout haut, aloud.
Tout outre, through and through.
à tout bout de champ, } at every turn.
à tous coups, }
à tous égards, in all respects.
De toutes ses forces, with all his *or* her might.
Par tout, every-where.
Par tout où, wherever.
Vîte, } quickly.
Vîtement, }
Vivement, } to the quick.
Au vif, }
à vide, empty.
Au plus vîte, with all speed.
Voici, here is, behold.
Voilà, there is, behold.
à vue d'œil, perceptibly.
Y, there, therein, within, thither.

EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

You are *quite* altered. - - I will do it *presently*. - - If you do not come *this minute*, I shall go and fetch you. - - Go *straight along*. - - Do you believe it *in good earnest?* - - He was lain down *all along*. - - He acts *frankly*, and speaks aloud. - - He ran him *through and through*. - - She speaks

changé.
chercher, v.
couché, p. p.
percer, v.

at every turn, without knowing what she says. - - *sans*,p. *savoir*,v.
She is better than her sister *in all respects*. - - He struck me *with all his might*. - - I have (looked for) you *every-where*. - - I will follow you *wherever* you go. - - - Set out *quickly*. - - Her misfortunes (by the fut.) touch me *to the quick*. - - The coach was returning *empty*. - - Go *with all speed* to Mrs. Lucas, and tell her to come *directly*. - - *Here is* my room, and *there is* yours. - - These children grow *perceptibly*. - - Go *thither instantly*.

frapper,v. *cher-cher*,v. *malheur*,m. *s'en retourner*,v.refl. *chez*,p. *de grandir*,v. *tout de suite*,adv.

SECT. VII.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative case. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, the following govern the genitive or ablative.

Autour de, about, round.
à cause de, because of, on account of.
à cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c. on your, his, her, our, *&c.* account.
à côté de, aside, by.
à couvert de, free, secure, *or* screened from.
à fleur de, close to, even with.
à moins de, under.

*à force de,** by dint of.
à raison de, at the rate of.
à l'abri de, sheltered from.
à l'égal de, in comparison of.
à l'égard de, with regard, with respect, as to, concerning
à la faveur de, by means of.
à l'insu de, without the knowledge of, unknown to.
à la manière de, / *à la mode de,* } in *or* after the manner *or* fashion of
à l'opposite de, / *Vis à vis de,* } over against.
Au deçà de, / *En deçà de,* } on this side.
Au delà de, on that side, on the other side.
Au dehors de, out, without.
Au dessus de, above, over, upon.
Au dessous de, under, below, beneath.
Au devant de, before.
Aller au devant de, to go to meet.
Au derrière de, behind, in the back part.
Au dedans de, in, within.
Au lieu de, instead of.
Au milieu de, in the middle of.
Au prix de, en comparaison de, in comparison to.
Aux environs de, about, round about.
Ensuite de, after.
Faute de, for want of.
à la hauteur de, (sea term,) off.
Hors de, out of.
Le long de, along.
Loin de, far from.
Près or *proche de,* / *Auprès de,* } near, *or* nigh, by.
Pour l'amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c. for my sake, for his, her, your sake, *&c.*
Tout auprès de, close, hard by.
à l'épreuve de, proof against, (able to resist.)

* This proposition is sometimes Englished by *with:* ex. *Il pleure* à force de *rire,* He cries *with* laughing.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Come this way ; we shall walk *round* the meadow. - - *prairie*,f.
I have sent nothing to your brother *because* of his idleness, but I forgive him *on your account.* - - Sit down *by* that lady's sister. - - Endeavour to set yourself *mettre*,v. *free* from blame. - - - We are not yet *secure* from all danger. - - - Cut that sorrel *even with the ground.* *oseille*,f. - - He is become a very good master *by dint of* study and practice. - - - He will not sell it *under* *vouloir*,v. twelve guineas. - - - My brother bought yesterday twenty pair of silk stockings *at the rate of* fourteen shillings and sixpence a pair. - - - Under that tree *Sous*, p. we shall be *sheltered from* the rain. - - - Your horse (is worth) very little *in comparison of* his. - - - *With* *valoir*,v. *regard to* what you say, I do not mind it. *se soucier*,v. *en* - - All the prisoners (made their escape) *by means of* *s'échapper*,v. the darkness of the night. - - - Your brother is *obscurité*,f. gone to London *without the knowledge of* your mother. - - - He (left off) Latin *unknown to* his *quitter*,v. father. - - Now the English ladies (dress themselves) *s'habiller*,v. *after the French fashion.* - - Mrs. Tart lives in *demeurer*,v.

the Strand *over-against* Catharine-street. - - We now
Cathérine
live *on this side* of the river. - - Do not you say that
demeurer
you met my father *on the other side* of the bridge?
- - Why did you stay *out* of the house? - - Mrs. A.
is very proud, she (thinks herself) *above* every body,
se croire
and consequently she (looks upon) every body as
regarder,v.
beneath her. - - Did you observe the elegant
remarquer,v.
lady who was in the box *below* you? - - There
loge,f.
is a large tree *before* the house. - - I *am*
grand
going to meet my aunt, will you accompany me? - -
My uncle has a rich plantation in the *back*
part of Virginia. - - There is a fine statue *within* the
f.
garden. - - He took my hat *instead of* his. - - Let us
go *in the middle* of the meadow. - - - My house (is
va-
good for) nothing *in comparison of* hers. - - He
loir,v.
walks two or three times a* day *about* the garden. - -
fois,f.
We drank tea, *after* which we went to
prendre,v. *quoi*,pro.
the play. - - I can do nothing *for want* of money. - -
They were *off* the Cape of Good Hope when they
Cap,m. *Espérance*,f.
were taken. - - Do not push me *out of* the
pousser,v.

* Remember the observations after the article *un, une*, a *or* an, the bottom of page 48.

room. - - He is gone *along* the river. We are still *far from* our house. - - I met your friend Mr. A. *near* the church. - - My mother was buried *nigh* this marble pillar.* - - He passed *by* me without knowing
sans,p. *connoître*
me. - - I do it *for your sake* as well as for *theirs*. - - My best friend lives *close* to the Royal Exchange,
demeurer *Bourse*,f.
and he lived formerly *close* to St. James's palace. - - The officers and soldiers were lodged in barracks,
caserne,f.
cannon and bomb-*proof*. - - My shoemaker very
canon,m. *bombe*,f.pl.
much wanted to make me a pair of boots water-
désirer,v. *de*
proof, but I had not money enough to pay
pour,p.
him.

Secondly, the following govern the dative,

Conformément, according, pursuant.
Jusqu'à, *Jusques à*, } till, until, even to, as far as, to.
Par rapport à, with respect to, on account of.
Quant à, as for, as to.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

A candid and sincere man always speaks and acts *according* to what he thinks. - - He has been punished *pursuant* to an act of parliament. - - Yesterday we
parlement,m.
(waited for) him *till* five o'clock (in the) morning. - -
du

* See rule, page 44.

They fought with obstinacy on both sides *until* the
des deux
beginning of the night. - - If I had not stopped him,
entrée,f.
he would have gone *even to* Dover. - - We accompa-
être
nied them *as far as* Rochester, and they pursued
their way *to* Canterbury. - - I will do it *with respect*
chemin
to you, but never *on account* of them. - - *As for* me
I will not give him a penny. - - *As for* us we were
sou,m.
(very much) dissatisfied, I assure you. - - *As to* what
très
people may say, I do not (care for) it.
gens,pl. *pouvoir*,v. (fut.) *se soucier de*,v.

Thirdly, the following require the accusative.

Après, after.
D'après, after,* according to.
Avant, before.
Avec, with.
à travers, cross, through.
Chez, in, to, at, among.
Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c. at *or* to my, thy, his, her, our, *&c.* house.
Contre, against.
Dans, in, into, within.
De, about, through.
Depuis, since, from.
Derrière, behind.
Dès, from.
Devant, before.
De dessus, from the top.
De dessous, from under, from beneath.
Durant, during.

* We make use of this preposition in the sense of *after* in the following diction and others similar:
Il peint d'après un bon maître, He paints after a good master.

En, in, into, like, as a, at.
Entre, between.
Envers, towards, with regard to.
Environ, about.
Excepté, }
Hors, } except, but, save.
Hormis, }
Moyennant, for, provided.
Nonobstant, }
Malgré, } notwithstanding, in spite of.
Outre, beside.
Par, by, through.
Par deçà, on this side.
Par delà, on that side.
Par derrière, behind.
Par dessus, above, over.
Par dessous, under, below.
Parmi, among.
Pendant, during, for.
Pour, for.
Sans, without.
Sauf, saving, but with.
Selon, }
Suivant, } according to.
Sous, under.
Sur, upon, about.
Touchant, concerning, about.
Vers, towards, to.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

He arrived here an hour *after* you. - - Miss A. paints *after* nature. - - *According to* her assertion, it is false. - - Let me drink *before* you. - - Did you not see her walk *with* her father? - - - It was the ancient Britons, who cut a road *through* this mountain. - - - Such was the custom *among* the

Laisser, v. *Ce* *Breton*, *chemin*, m.

Romans. - - I was going *to your house:* but as I have met you, we will go *to my house*, where we shall dine. - - Do not lean *against* that wall. - - Go and *s'appuyer*,v. *mur*,m.
take a walk *in* the garden. - - I am going *into* my *faire un tour*
room. - - (Keep yourself) *within* the limits of de- *Se tenir*,v. *borne*
cency. - - I spoke to your father *about* your affairs. - - His father died *through* grief. - - I have not (heard from) her *since* her departure. - - Go into my room; you will find a letter *behind* the looking-glass; *miroir*,m.
(be so kind as) to bring it to me. - - *From* this mo- *avoir la bonté de*
ment I believe you. - - Do not put yourself *before* me. - - We saw the camp *from the top of* the hill. - - I saw it *from under* a tree. - - He behaved well *during* your absence. - - My sister is *in* England. - - He behaved *like an* honest man in that affair. - - He acts *as a* tender father who loves you. - - Tell nobody what passed *between* you and me. - - Be not unjust *towards* *se passer*
your neighbours. - - It was *about* four o'clock when *prochain*,m.sing.
we (set out.) - - Take all that you please *except* my *vouloir*,(fut.)
sword. - - I give you all my books, *but* the History of

France. - - They were all drowned *save* my friend. - - He will do it *for* two guineas. - - I walk every day *notwithstanding* the bad weather. - - I hope you will succeed in your undertaking *in spite of* Mrs. Slander. - - *Beside* his own money, he spends all his sister's. - - It is said that Gibraltar is (blocked up) *by* land and *by* sea. - - I have passed *through* France and Italy. - - We have passed *through* Germany. - - He lives *on this side*, and his brother *on that side* of London. - - *He is a coward who attacks his enemy *behind*. - - Let us see whether you can jump *over* the table. - - Look *under* the door, and you will see it. - - Envy, jealousy, and slander, always reign *among* authors. - - What have you done *during* my absence? - - I have (been expecting) you *for* a long time. - - Your aunt has sent me some books *for* you. - - - *Without* him what could I have done? - - A woman may please *without* †beauty, but she cannot succeed *without* virtue.† - - He always (goes out) *without* me. - - The army marched three days and three nights *without* stopping. - - He (carried away) all my furniture, *saving*

noyer,v.

réussir

bloquer,v.

Allemagne.

si,c.

sauter,v.

médisance,f.

on

pouvoir

s'arrêter.

meubles,m.pl.

* See page 106. † Use no article.

my bed. - - Do I not live* *according to* the rules
règle,f.
which you have prescribed? - - I found your buckle
prescrire,v. *boucle*,f.
under the chair. - - - You said you had left it *upon*
chaise,f. *laisser*,v.
the table. - - How could I lend you a guinea? I had no money *about* me. - - - Did not my brother write to you *concerning* that affair? - - It was *towards* the evening
Ce
when he arrived.
que,c.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

Above. This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing *time* or *number*, so as to signify *more than* or *longer than*, is to be rendered in French by *plus de*: ex.

Le combat dura plus de deux heures, The fight lasted *above* two hours.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

My brother was not *above* twenty years old, when
ᔕ
he (was married). - - He made us wait *above* a week. - -
se marier.
My father's country-house is very handsome, but it costs him *above* six thousand pounds. - - In the last sea-fight which took place between the French and
avoir lieu
the English, *above* twelve hundred men perished in the action (on the) side of the French, and the
du

* See the N. B. before the Exercises upon the first Conjugation, page 178. *Vivre*, means, to live, to exist, *Demeurer*, means, to live, to reside.

English took *above* fifteen ships of the line. - - It is
au-dessus
above a year since my cousin set off for Jamaica.
que *partir*,v. *Jamaïque*,f.

At is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following: ex.

Nous étions à diner,	We were at dinner.
Elle est à la maison,	She is at home.
Il joue bien aux cartes,	He plays well at cards.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

If you be *at* Rome, live as they do *at* Rome. - -
vivre *on*,
We will (get up) next week *at* six o'clock. - - When I
se lever
called upon Mr. B. he was *at* breakfast. - - (Every
passer *chez*
thing) I have is *at* your service. - - My brother is *at* Mr. H's. academy. - - Were you *at* Mrs. C's. ball last week? - - You always travel by night *at* the peril of your life. - - I will pay you *at* the end of the year. - - My mother is *at* the height of happiness. - - He plays
comble,m.
very well *at* chess, and his companion begins
échecs,m.pl.
to play a little *at* draughts. - - He did it *at* the insti-
dames,f.pl.
gation of his friend.

After *nouns* or *verbs* denoting *anger*, *derision*, *joy*, *provocation*, *resentment*, *sorrow*, *surprise*, or *concern*, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*: ex.

Il se moque de vous,	He laughs *at* you.
Je me réjouis de votre bonheur,	I rejoice *at* your good luck.
Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,	We are surprised *at* what you say.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Exasperated *at* his conduct, he told him never to
Irrité,adj. *de*
laugh *at* poor people. - - We always (ought to) re-
se moquer, *devoir*
joice *at* the good fortune which befalls our neigh-
arriver,v.*à*
bours. - - I am vexed *at* the news which we received
fâché
last week. - - A good Christian never shows any re-
sentment *at* the injuries which are offered to him. - -
faire
He always smiles *at* (every thing) which is said. - - A
tout
patient man never grieves *at* his misfortunes. - -
s'attrister,v.
I cannot help being surprised *at* her manner
s'empêcher,v.*de*
of answering. - - I am concerned *at* the loss which
fâché
you sustained in your trade. - - *He* was so mortified
essuyer,v. *commerce*,m.
at the disobedience of his sons, that he died through
de
grief.

At is rendered by *chez*, when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood, and the same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to:* ex.

J'étois chez votre frère,	I was *at* your brother's.
Je vais chez Madame Lucas,	I am going *to* Mrs. Lucas'.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITIONS.

I called upon Miss Brown this morning, as I had
passer chez
promised your mother, but she was not *at* home. - -
à
Where was she then? She was *at* her aunt's. - - I
done?
thought my friend was *at* his father's, but I mistook,
se tromper
for he was *at* his uncle's. - - How long have you been
car
at Mr. H's.? - - We lodge *at* my friend's, but we board
manger
at the pastry-cook's. - - If you go *to* my brother, tell
him to come *to* my cousin's, where I (am to) spend
de *passer*, v.
the day, and we will go together *to* his friend's.

By, when preceding a numeral adjective immediately followed by another adjective expressing the *dimension* or *superficies* of an object, is rendered in French by *sur*, and when it precedes a verb in the participle active, it is then rendered by *en:* ex.

Cette chambre a dix pieds de longueur sur sept et demi de largeur,	This room is ten feet long *by* seven and half wide.
En agissant ainsi, vous vous ferez des ennemis,	*By* acting thus, you will get enemies.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

My box is a foot and a half deep *by* two wide and four long. - - The general (drew up) his army in order
ranger, v. *en*
of battle, on a plain three miles long *by* two

and half wide. - - - Our (school-room) at Alfred
école,f.
House, Camberwell, is forty feet long *by* thirty-six wide, and our garden contains above an acre of land. - - You will soon speak French
arpent,m.
by applying so. - - Your father gets a considerable
s'appliquer *faire*,v.
fortune *by* buying cheap and selling dear. - - Men acquire learning *by* working and not *by* sleeping. - - Water hollows a stone, not *by* falling with force,
creuser,v.
but *by* falling often; so men become learned, not *by* studying with force, but *by* studying often.

By, after the verbs *to sell*, *to buy*, *to work*, and the like, preceding a noun of *weight* or *measure*, *day*, *week*, *month*, or *year*, is rendered into French by *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

Je ne vends rien à la *livre*,	I sell nothing *by* the pound.
Il achète toujours à l'*aune*,	He always buys *by* the ell.
Nous travaillons à l'*heure*, ou à la *journée*,	We work *by* the hour, or *by* the day.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Always buy tea *by* the pound, and never *by* the ounce, you will get it cheaper. - - I never buy my
avoir
cloth *by* the ell, but *by* the piece. - - It is a sad thing to buy coals *by* the bushel. - - How do you sell your
de
brandy? We sell it *by* the gallon, and not *by* the

bottle. - - He sells his wine *by* the dozen. - - - I sell eggs *by* the hundred, and chesnuts *by* the quarter. - - How do you measure your cambric? *by* the ell, *batiste*,m. or *by* the yard? - - Do you buy cider *by* the hogshead, *tonneau*,m. or *by* the pipe? - - Does your father work *by* the week or the month? - - No, Sir, he works *by* the year. Well! I always thought he worked *by* the piece.

By, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*, *to knock down*, and the like, is made into French, by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated: if the blows have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by *with*: ex.

Il fut blessé d'un coup de flèche,	He was wounded *by* an arrow.
Ils l'assommèrent à coups de bâton,	They knocked him down *with* a stick.

EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Achilles was killed (at the) siege of Troy *by* an
Achille *au* *Troie*
arrow, which Paris, king Priam's son, (let fly)
décocher,v.
at his heel.* - - - (Unable to) catch the thief,
talon,m. *Ne pouvoir attraper*,v.
they knocked[2] him[1] down[2] *with* sticks. - - - At last
Enfin,adv.
the king, having broke his battle-axe and sword
hâche-d'armes,f.

* See rules, pages 101 and 401.

was (knocked down) *by* a stone, and taken prisoner.
renversé,p.p. *fait*,p.p.
- - - William the Second was killed *by* an arrow in the New-Forest. - - - My brother was wounded *by* a gun,
fusil,m.
and my cousin was killed *by* a cannon-ball. - - Edward
boulet de canon,m.
the First was wounded in Palestine *with* a poisoned
f.
dagger. - - - He is so strong, that *with* his fist he
poignard,m.
could knock down an ox. - - - He threw my brother down, and almost killed him *with* his feet. - -
par terre,
They killed him not *with* stones, but *with* arrows. - - The soldiers kill one another *with* bayonets, and the
se tuer
officers *with* sabres and swords. - - He killed his dog *with* kicks. - - The city of Vera Cruz has been destroyed *by* cannon-shot.

For, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote *thanksgiving*, &c. is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*: ex.

Je me réjouis du *service qu'il vous a rendu, et je l'en remercierai demain,*	I rejoice *for* the service which he has done to you, and will thank him to-morrow *for* it.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

I am very grateful *for* all the kindness
reconnoissant,adj. *bonté*,f.
you have had for me. - - He is very sorry *for* the

grief he has caused you. - - When we have reached
atteindre,v.
the age of reason, we are often sorry, but too late,
for the time we lost when we were young. - - My
brother desired me to thank you *for* the part you
de
took in his troubles. - - Every one leaped *for* joy,
peine,f. *tressaillir*
when the happy news of peace arrived. - - A child
who cares little *for* the author of his life,
se soucier,v. *jours*,m.pl.
is an unnatural being. - - An ungrateful son will be
dénaturé,adj.
punished (one time or other) *for* his ingratitude.

From, preceding the name of a *man* or *woman*, or one of the *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, or *interrogative*, pronouns, after the verbs *to go*, *to come*, *to send*, &c. is generally rendered in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma*, *de sa*, *de notre part*, *de votre part*, &c.: ex.

Allez, de ma part *chez Mons.* D.	Go *from* me to Mr. D.
Je viens de sa part,	I come *from* him or her.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

Go *from* me to Miss Dunkin's and tell her I shall
lui
be glad to see her: no, stop a little, tell her that
de
you come *from* my cousin, who has something very
pretty to show her. - - *From* whom do you come?
[2]said she[2] to me[1]. - - Madame, replied I to her, I come
répliquer,v.
from my parents, who sent me. - - Well, answered
père et mère

she, any one is always welcome, who comes *from* them. - - Send *from* me to Mr. Lucas, and let him *faire*
know that I am (very much) vexed at the letter I *très* *de*
received *from him*; I never could have expected *s'attendre*,v.
to receive such an affront *from* on old acquaintance.
à *connoissance*,f.

In requires some attention from the learner, who is to observe that *dans* is followed by the article, a pronoun, or any word which may define the noun, when, on the contrary, *en* seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not: ex.

Il est dans *la maison*,	He is *in* the house.
Elle est en *Angleterre*,	She is *in* England.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

He always keeps himself (shut up) *in* his room. - - Take all the linen which I shall want *in* our jour- *linge*,m.
ney, and put it *into* my box. - - Walk* *into* the parlour. - - We live *in* the county of Surrey. - - Is there a good fire *in* the room? - - Ovid, one of the finest poets of the Augustan age, expired *in* the seventeenth *d'Auguste*,m. *siècle*,m.
year of our Lord, at Tomi, near Varna. - - Is your sister *in* France? - - No, madam, she is *in*

* To walk or *step into* is translated by *entrer* followed by *dans* in French; but to walk or take a walk is *se promener*.

Spain. - - How long do you intend to stay *in* town? - - Sir, do you keep house? - - No, we live *in* (ready furnished) lodgings. - - When we are *in* peace, people talk of war; and when *in* war, they talk of peace. - - Your eldest son behaved (*like a*) hero. - - If my son behave *like an* honest man, I shall act towards him *as a* tender father. - - *In* what does human happiness consist? - - If you wish to be happy and esteemed *in* this world, live *like a* man of honour and probity. - - He walks *in* the garden with his friend. - - He is gone to spend the winter *in* Italy. - - The American[3] navy[2] officers[1] have acted *like* heroes.

garni,adj. *chambre*,f. *on* *on* *on* *en* *marine*

In, after words denoting *pain*, *hurting*, or *wounding*, and preceding one of the possessive pronouns in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, and the possessive pronoun left out; and when *in* precedes a noun denoting a part of time, it is not to be expressed in French: ex.

Il étoit blessé au *bras et non* à la *jambe*,	He was wounded *in* his arm, and not *in* his leg.
Vous le trouverez toujours chez lui le matin,	You will always find him at home *in* the morning.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother has constantly (a pain) *in* his head, and I have very often a pain *in* my teeth. - - Never eat any fruit which is not ripe, for there is nothing more apt to give you a pain *in* your stomach. - - My companion, by jumping over a form, (fell down), *banc*,m. *tomber*,v. and was much hurt *in* the shoulder. - - Your brother was wounded *in* the arm, but not dangerously, and my cousin was mortally wounded *in* the head. - - My master comes generally *in* the morning. - - I will call upon you *in* the afternoon, and *in* the evening go to the play.

On or *upon*. This preposition is rendered by *de* after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like; and by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument: and before the days of the week and the names of the month, preceded by a numeral adjective the above preposition must not be expressed: ex.

Il vit de *pain et* d'*eau*,	He lives *on* bread and water.
Vous jouez du *violon*, *et il joue* de la *flûte*,	You play *on* the violin, and he plays *on* the flute.
Cela arriva le *dix-huit du mois dernier*,	That happened *on* the eighteenth of last month.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

We all depend *upon* divine mercy. - - A
miséricorde,f.
good end generally depends *on* a good beginning. - - Men do not live only *on* bread and meat, but *on* the grace of God. - - Birds subsist *upon* what they can catch. - - What do you live *upon*, you who never eat any meat? - - In winter I live *on* milk and vegetables, and in summer I live *upon* bread and butter, cheese, and all sorts of fruits. - - *Upon* what instrument does your sister play? - - She plays very well *on* the harpsichord, and she is now learning to play *on* the harp. - - Come *on* Friday early, and I will go to see you *on* the Saturday following. - - Why did you not play *on* the violin *on* Wednesday last? - - *On* June the eighth, 1376, died Edward, prince of Wales, the delight of the
(in the pl.)
nation, in the forty-sixth year of his age. - - *On* the third of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victo-
remporter,v.
ry over the Dutch off Harwich, took eighteen
sur *Hollandois*,m.
ships, and destroyed fourteen more.

Over. This preposition is commonly rendered in French by *sur*; but it must be rendered by the participle passive of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it denotes an action ended: ex.

Il a l'avantage sur *vous*,	He has the advantage *over* you.
Votre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée,	Your brother set out as soon as the rain was *over*.
Le dîner est-il fini ?	Is dinner *over ?*

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

A coach passed *over* his body and killed him. - -

Tullia, Tarquinius' wife, the unnatural daughter
Tarquin *dénaturé*,adj.
of Servius, king of Rome, ordered her coachman
ordonner à
to drive *over* the dead body of her father. - - In
de passer,v.
going to London, did you go *over* Westminster
passer,v.
bridge ? - - Yes, but in coming back I passed *over*
Blackfriars bridge. - - They dissolved the army
disperser,v.
as soon as it was resolved that the campaign was
over. - - In France they drink coffee as soon as
on *prendre le*
dinner is *over*. - - You may go and walk when
(by the fut.)
the rain is *over*. - - They fought well, and the
(by the fut.)
battle was soon *over*.

With is rendered by *dans*, when it is used before nouns denoting the purpose, design, or motive of the agent : ex.

Il le fit dans *l'attente d'être bien récompensé*,	He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

He poisoned his brother *with* the hope of
empoisonner,v.
inheriting his estates. - - My brother is gone to
hériter,v.*de* *bien*,m.
your house *with* the design of scolding you
gronder,v.
well. - - He who beats another *with* the intention of killing him, is a murderer (at the) bottom of his
au
heart. - - He did it *with* the intention of pleasing you, and not *with* any design of hurting you. - - I went last week to Mr. Olympus, *with* the expectation of receiving the money which I lent him a month ago, but he was not at home. - - I live *with* the hope of receiving it (one time or another). - - He said so *with* a design of deceiving you, if he could.

With must be made by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve*, *to die*, *to do*, *to dispense*, *to meddle*, *to encompass*, *to load*, *to cover*, *to strike*, and those denoting *fulness*: likewise after the following adjectives, *amorous*, *charmed*, *pleased*, *displeased*, *endowed*, *&c.* ex.

Elle meurt de *froid et* de *faim*,	She dies *with* cold and hunger.
Je suis content de *ce que j'ai*,	I am pleased *with* what I have.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Lazy people (ought to) die *with* hunger and
devoir,v.
cold. - - The winter was so severe, that I was dying
with cold. - - They are so rich, that they do not know
what to do *with* their money. - - I hope you will dis-
que
pense me *with* that disagreeable (piece of work).
besogne,f.
- - Do not meddle *with* my affairs, meddle *with* your
own. - It is reported on all sides that that city (is to) be
encompassed *with* walls. - - Do you see that waggon?
chariot,m.
It is loaded *with* goods. - - Do you wish your house
que
be covered *with* slates or tiles? - He was overwhelmed
soit,v. *tuile*,f. *accablé*,adj.
with grief. - - The enemy, struck *with* terror and
astonishment, ran away. - - Honour me *with* your
commands. - - I have filled my cellar *with* good beer
and excellent wine. - - Narcissus, seeing himself in a
Narcisse
clear fountain, fell (in love) *with* his own
devenir,v. *amoureux*,adj.
person. - - I am charmed *with* the agreeable company
of your sister. - - As to us, little satisfied *with* his
answers, we took other measures. - - Are you not

pleased *with* the behaviour of your son Thomas ? - - *satisfait*,p.p.
You would be wrong to be dissatisfied *with* *avoir tort*, *de* *mécontent*,adj.
him, for he behaved (like an) honest man in *se conduire*,v. *en*
that affair, and he is endowed *with* many good *doué*,adj.
qualities. - - The man who meddles *with* nobody's affairs, but quietly lives in peace, seldom makes himself enemies.

With is rendered by *contre* after words denoting *anger* or *passion :* and before nouns denoting the *matter*, *instruments*, *tools*, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, it is rendered by one of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun : ex.

Madame votre mère est très-fâchée contre *vous*,	Your mother is very angry *with* you.
Une table à *tiroirs*,	A table *with* drawers.
Dessiner au *crayon*, à la *craie*,	To draw with a pencil, *with* chalk.
Se battre à l'*épée*, au *pistolet*,	To fight *with* swords, *with* pistols.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother was in[2] such[1] a passion[2] *with* me, that I *si* *colère*
thought he would have beaten me. - - I believe what *croire*,v.
you say, but I was very angry *with* her when she told me she would not do it. - - I live near the river,

and if you will come to see me, we will fish *with* a
vouloir,v.
net or a line. - - Your brother and my cousin
filet,m. *ligne*,f.
fought *with* sabres and pistols; the former was
sing. sing.
wounded in his thigh, and the latter in his side. - -
My house has been built *with* lime and sand. - - Did
Miss Arnold show you the picture she has drawn
with India ink? - - No, but she showed me her
Chine,f.
mother's picture done *with* chalk, I assure you it is
crayon,m.
very like. - - Do not go so near that wall, it is newly
ressemblant,adj. *mur*,m.
painted *with* (white lead). - - I bought a penknife *with*
céruse,f.
two blades. - - The Americans fought bravely
lame. *se battre*
with the English at New-Orleans.
Nouvelle

With is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with*, *to trust with*, *to supply with*, *to reproach with*, &c. It is likewise to be suppressed where it expresses the *situation*, *position*, &c. of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having*, *holding*, &c.: ex.

Il a essuyé bien des chagrins,	He has met *with* many troubles.
Nous lui fournirons tout ce dont il aura besoin,	We will supply him *with* every thing he may want.
Il se promène toujours un livre à la main,	He always walks *with* a book in his hand, that is, *having* or *holding a book*, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

He met *with* (so many) mortifications from his
essuyer,v.
sons, that through grief he fell ill and died
de *tomber*,v.
almost with despair. - - - When you meet
de *rencontrer*,v.
a poor man, never reproach him *with* his poverty,
but endeavour to furnish him *with* the means
moyen,m.
of emerging from his misery. - - I have trusted Mr.
sortir,v.
N. *with* my son's education, with the utmost confidence that he will answer my expectation. - - The New River supplies London *with* all the water which the inhabitants stand in need of. - - I reproached
avoir besoin,v.
her *with* her ingratitude towards her benefactors. - - - He always walks round his garden *with* a stick in his
bâton,m.
hand. - - Never speak to any body *with* your hat on
le *à*
your head. - - He is represented on horseback, *with* a sword in his right-hand and a horse - pistol
l'épée *arçon* *pistolet*,m.
in his left.
gauche,adj.

Without (*sans*): this preposition is sometimes expressed (in English) by the imperfect or compound of the imperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the conjunction *if*, and sometimes by *but for*: ex.

Sans vous, *je ne sais ce que je deviendrois*,	*If it were not for you*, I do not know what would become of me.
Sans lui, *mon frère auroit été puni*,	*Had it not been for him*, my brother would have been punished.
Sans elle, *je serois mort de faim*,	*But for her*, I should have starved.

EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

Without the assistance (*secours*,m.) of the divine Providence, what are we? What are we capable of? - - - According to what you tell me, and what I have heard, (*entendre*,v.) she has (a great deal) of wit and merit; and, *but for* that large (*grand*,adj.) scar (*cicatrice*,f.) which she has in her forehead, she would be very handsome. - - - *Had it not been for* the help of good and honest people, what could you have done? - - *If it had not been for* me, he never would have paid you. - - *Were it not for* rich and charitable persons, what would become of the poor and needy? - - Our neighbour (*voisin*,m.) fell into the river, and *but for* my father, who was passing that way, he would have been drowned. - - *Were it not for* emulation, (every thing) would languish in the world.

(*se noyer*,v.refl.)

(*tout*)

SECT. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continuative*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand, that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again *in the subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

Afin de, in order to.
à moins de, or *à moins que de*, unless.
Avant de, or *Avant que de*,* before.
Au lieu de, instead of.
De crainte de, or *De peur de*, for fear of.
Excepté de, except to.
Faute de, for want of.
Jusqu'à, to that degree that, till.
Loin de, far from.
Plutôt que de, rather than.

EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

In order to learn well; we must *on devoir*, study with (a great deal) of attention. - - It will be impossible for you to learn French *unless* you be diligent. - - Let us *de*

* This is now little used.

breakfast *before* we begin (any thing). - - A prudent
rien
man (ought to) think several times, *before* he acts. - - -
agir,v.
He is gone to church, *instead of* coming with us. - - -
I would not do it *for fear of* displeasing you. - - He
is capable of (every thing) *except of* doing good. - -
tout
For want of sending for a surgeon in
envoyer *chercher*,v. *chirurgien*,m. *à*
time, he lost his arm. - - - He carried his inso-
pousser,v.
lence *to that degree that* he spoke injurious words
dire,v. *parole*,f.
to him. - - Your cousin has humbled himself, *till*
s'humilier,v.
he fell (on his) knees before the idol. - - *Far from*
à
exciting them to fight, I did all that I could *in order*
à
to prevent them. - - She would do (any thing) (in the)
tout *au*
world *rather than* speak to him. - -*Rather than* study,
he loses his time, or spends it in trifles.
passer

The following require the verb in the *indicative mood.*

Ainsi que,* as.
Tout ainsi que,* just as.
Après que,* after that, after.
à cause que, } because.
Parce que, }
à ce que, according as, or to.
à condition que, on, or upon condition that.
à mesure que,* in proportion as, as.
Au lieu que, whereas.

* See the rule, page 417.

Dès le moment que, * the moment that.
Aussi long-tems que, * as long as.
Aussi loin que, * as far as.
Aussitôt que, *D'abord que*, *Dès que*, *Sitôt que*, } * as soon as.
Attendu que, considering that, seeing that.
Comme, or *En tant que*, } * as.
De façon que, *De manière que*, *De sorte que*, *Si bien que*, *Tellement que*, } in such manner that, so that, so.
Depuis que, ever since, since.
Puisque, since.
De même que, even as.
D'où vient que, how comes it to pass that, why.
Lorsque, *Quand*, } * when.
Mais, but.†
Outre que, beside that.
à peine—que, hardly, scarcely—but, *or* when.
Pendant que, *Tandis que*, } * while.
Peut-être que, perhaps.
Quand, *Quand même*, } though.
Selon que, *Suivant que*, } * according as.
Tant que, * as long as.
Que—de—ne, than, only.
Autant que, * as much as.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* as *only* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it: ex.

Je n'ai parlé à votre frère deux fois, que I have spoken to your brother *but* twice.

D'autant que, whereas, for so much as, since.
D'autant plus—que, so much the more, the more,—as.
Tout que, for all that.*
Toutefois, yet, nevertheless.
Toutes les fois que, every time, as often as, whenever.
Sinon que, except that.
Si, if, in case, whether. (*Were I*, Si J'étois.)

EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I called at your sister's, *as* you had desired me. *passer*,v. *prier*,v. - - I punish you *as* you deserve (it). - - *After* you were gone, I began writing. - - I love you *because* you behave better than your brother. - - - *According as* I see, you are very well. - - He will write to you, *on condition that* he shall speedily receive *promptement*,adv. your answer. - - - *In proportion as* we study, we become learned. - - A skilful gardener pulls up *habile* *arracher*,v. weeds *as* they grow. - - - Your brother *mauvaise herbe*,f. *croître*,v. learns his lessons, *whereas* you do nothing. - - *The moment that* I saw you, I knew you again. - - I did not stay in Italy, *as long as* you did. - - I followed him (with my) eyes *as far as* I could. - - *As soon as* they had taken the general, the army surrendered. - - Why did you give it to him, *considering that* you had promised it to me? - - I did not come to see you,

* See the rule, page 132.

seeing that I did not know that you were ill. - - -
You (look at) me, *as* if I had taken your book. - -
regarder,v.
I will lend you my horse, *as* you are my friend. - -
So you will not come when I call you? - - - He
beat him *so that* he almost killed him. - - -
Your mother is quite altered, *since* I saw her
changé,p.p.
last. - - - - - You must stay at home, *since* you
dernièrement,adv. *au logis*,
are not well. - - The thing happened *even as* I had
foreseen it. - - *How comes it to pass that*, I have not
seen your friend until now? - - *Why*, in proportion as
we grow older, do we not grow wiser? - - - *When*
devenir,v.
you are going to undertake an affair of importance,
permit me to tell you, that you (ought to) consult
de
your friends before you begin it. - - - *When* she had
done speaking, she (fell asleep). - - Did you not see
s'endormir,v.
Mr. Brown this morning? - - Yes, *but* I could not speak
to him. - - - Sometimes those who meddle with our
affairs *but* to serve us, are those who do us most
pour *le plus*
harm. - - - The misfortunes of others seem to us
tort,m. *sembler*,v.
but a dream in comparison to our own. - - - If you
songe,m.

could give me *but* half of the money you owe me, I should be (very much) obliged to you. - - - *Beside that* he does not apply as he should, he is often absent
refl.
from school. - - - We were *hardly* arrived, when it began to rain. - - - *While* you lose your time, your
à
brother improves fast. - - - - Play on the harpsichord,
beaucoup,adv. *clavecin*,m.
while I write my exercise. - - *Perhaps* the master will forgive me. - - *Though* you should cheapen for
marchander,v.
two hours, I could not abate sixpence. - - Our father punishes and rewards us *according as* we deserve. - - -
le
Speak *as long as* you please, I will not grant you what you ask me. - - He had rather do harm
aimer,v. *mieux*,adv.
to his companions *than* (be doing) nothing. - - - If
faire,v.
you loved to study, *as much as* you love to play, I
à
should have (no occasion) to complain. - - I avoid
aucun sujet,m. *éviter*,v.
slanderers, *as much as* I fear them. - - - You may
médisant,m.
believe me, *for so much as* I was present when he said so. - - This proceeding was *the more* extraordinary, *as* it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. - - The belief of another life appears to
croyance,f.

me *so much the more* conformable to truth, *as* it is the more necessary to virtue. - - Virtue reigns *so much the more* sovereignly, *as* it does not reign by force and fear. - - *For all that* he is rich, I cannot esteem him. - - - All men (seek after) riches, and
rechercher,v.
yet we see few rich men happy. - - I see the king and queen *every time* I go to Windsor. - - He interrupts me *as often as* I speak. - - *Whenever* I go to London, I meet him. - - She said nothing to me *except* that it was impossible (for her) to do what you required of
lui,pro. *de* *vouloir*,v.
her, - - I know not *whether* he would come, even though you should desire him. - - *In case* Mr. S. calls
passer,v.
here, tell him I am not at home. - - *If* you do it, you will be punished. - - Tell me sincerely *whether* he did it or not. - - We should spare ourselves
s'épargner,v.
many troubles, *were we* more prudent.
peine,f.

The conjunctions that have this mark * affixed, as it appears in the preceding ones, when followed, in English, by a verb in the present of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered in French by the future.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You will be rewarded *just as* you deserve. - - *After* you have done your exercises, you shall (go out.) *devoir*,m. - - I will explain these rules to you, *as* we read them. - - *The moment* that you burn this letter, the danger will be over. - - We will follow you *as far as* you go. - - *As long as* you (keep company with) those people, *fréquenter*,v. *gens*, never come to my house. - - We will (set out) *as soon as* we have dined. - - - *As* you deserve, you will be *le* rewarded. - - Send me Miss White, *when* she has done writing. - - You will write the words *accordfini*,p.p.*de ing as* I dictate them. - - *As long as* you behave *se comporter*,v. well, you will be dear to me - - - In short, said this good king, I shall only (think myself) happy in *as much* *se croire* *as* I cause the happiness of my people. *faire*

It has been remarked in the degrees of comparison, that every comparative must be attended by the conjunction *que*, than; it must now be observed, that, if it precede a verb in the infinitive, *que* is to be followed by *de*. But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned into the infinitive, the conjunction must then be attended by *ne*; that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the verb: ex.

Il vaut mieux être malheureux que *d'être coupable,*	It is better to be unfortunate *than* criminal.
Mon père est revenu plutôt que nous ne *l'attendions,*	My father came back sooner *than* we expected him.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is more pleasing to enjoy good health, *agréable*,adj.
than to possess a large fortune. - - It is harder (to *grand*,adj. *de*
be revenged) of an enemy, *than* forgive him. - - - *se venger*,v.
It is better to (make a sacrifice of) a limb, said the *sacrifier*,v.
surgeon, *than* to let him die. - - When the thunder roars it is less dangerous to be in an open field, *gronder*,v.
than to take shelter under a tree. - - Should you *se mettre* *devoir*
not apply more *than* you do; you, especially, who refl.
(are to) be useful to your country? - - - That would give me more pleasure *than* you imagine. - - Did you refl.
not receive your goods sooner *than* you thought? - - How many people can say to themselves, Had I *se dire*,v.
employed my time *better than* I did when I was young, I should be (in good circumstances) now. - - - *à mon aise*
Diseases come faster *than* they go away. *s'en retourner*,v.

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood.*

Afin que, } that, in order that, to the end that.
Pour que, }
*Avant que,** before.
Au or *en cas que,* in case that, *if,* suppose that.
*A moins que,** }
Excepté que, }
Si ce n'est que, } unless, till.
Que—ne, }
Bien que, }
Encore que, } though, although, for all that, as.
Quoique, }
*De crainte que,** } lest, for fear.
De peur que, }
Dieu veuille que, God grant.
Plaise, or *plût à Dieu que,* please God, *or* would to God.
à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid.
Hormis que, } save that, unless, except.
Hors que, }
*Jusqu'à ce que,** till, until.
Loin que, far from.
Moyennant que, } save that, provided that.
Pourvu que, }
Nonobstant que, notwithstanding that.
Pour peu que, how little soever, however little.
Sans que, without that.
Soit que, whether,—or.
Supposons que, suppose, let us suppose that.
Tant s'en faut que je, I am so far from.
Tant s'en faut qu'il or *elle,* he, *or* she is so far from.
Tant s'en faut que nous, or *vous,* we, *or* you are so far from.

* These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the verbs following them: ex.

A moins qu'*il ne le fasse,* *Unless* he does it.
De crainte, *or* de peur qu'*ils ne viennent,* *For fear,* or *lest* they come.

EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I will explain to you every difficulty, *that* you may not be disheartened in your undertaking. - - - *décourager*,v.
Carry that money to Mrs. Nolle, *in order that* she may pay the writing-master when he comes. - - - A (by the fut.)
wise and prudent man lives with economy when young, *to the end* that he may enjoy the fruit of his labour when he is old. - - - *Before* you begin an (by the fut.)
action, consider well, and see whether you can bring *en venir*
it about; for, it is the end that crowns the work. - - - *à bout* *œuvre*,m.
In case you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you. - - *If* I do not call upon you this afternoon, I will write to you. - - - *Suppose* you should lose your friends, what would become of you? - - You will never be respected, *unless* you forsake the bad *abandonner*,v.
company you keep. - - - You cannot finish (to-night), *ce soir*,
unless I help you. - - - I will not lend it you, *unless* you promise me to return it to her, as soon as you *de rendre*,v.
can. - - - I shall not cease to importune you, *till* you (by the fut.) *de*
have forgiven me. - - They are not happy, *though*

they be rich. - - The general arrived yesterday morning (at the) camp, weary and tired, but very seasonably; immediately he gave his orders to begin the action, *though* he had not yet all his troops. - - - *Although* you have a good memory, this is not enough to learn any language whatever, you must (make use) of your judgment. - - *For all that* she has no fortune, I do not love her the less for it. - - - *As* zealous *as* he appears, I know one action of his life which is neither Christian nor equitable. - - I lend you my violin *although* you did not return it to me the other day. - - - My mother will come to see you, *for fear* you should forget to go to the play with her. - - - I will not give you that penknife, *lest* you should make a bad use of it. - - - - I will go to London to-morrow, *for fear* he should come himself. - - - I will write again to your brother to-morrow, *lest* he should not have received my last letter. -- We avoided an engagement, *for fear* we should be taken, their force being

las,adj. *pour*,p. *engager*,v. *pour*,p. *se servir*,v.refl. *rendre*,v. *de* (present of subj.)

superior to ours. - - God *grant* you be not disappointed
tromper,v.
in your hopes! - - - *Would to God* I had been there! I
would have conquered or perished. - - *God forbid* I
vaincre,v.
should blame your conduct. - - Your business never
will be done properly, *unless* you do it yourself. - - I
shall not go out to-day, *except* you go with me. - -
They fought with fury on both sides,
se battre,v. *acharnement*
till night came. - - I shall not set out, *till* I have
dined. - - I am going to write, *till* we go out. - - *Far*
from hating him, I wish him all kinds of prosperity.
- - - I forgive you this time, *provided* you promise me
to be lazy no more, and pay more attention to
de *faire*,v.
what you are told. - - I will give you leave to dance,
permission de
provided you give me your word of honour
parole,f.
not to overheat yourself. - - Why did you tell
de s'échauffer,v.
me my father was arrived, *notwithstanding* you
knew the contrary? - - He is so quick, that
prompt,adj.
however little he is contradicted, he (flies into a passion)
s'emporter,v.
in an instant. - - - *However little* you give her
she is of so[2] good[3] a[1] temper[4], that she is always
naturel,m.

pleased. - - - Can you touch it *without* my brother
content,adj.
perceiving it ? - - *Suppose* we dine here to-day,
s'apercevoir de
and to-morrow at our house. - - I am *so far*
from blaming you for assisting him, that, (on the)
(comp. of the pres. inf.) *au*
contrary, I (very much) admire your conduct. - - -
He is *so far from* despising her, that, on the contrary, he respects and honours her. - - - It is *so far from* raining, that, on the contrary, I think we shall have dry and hot weather during all this week.

The conjunction *si*, if, or whether, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

Si vous venez chez moi, et si vous ne me trouviez pas,	If you call upon me, and do not find me at home,

It is more elegant to say,

Si vous venez chez moi, et que *vous ne me trouviez pas*, &c.

Que must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding: ex.

Dès que je l'aurai vu et que *je lui aurai parlé, je vous le ferai savoir,*	As soon as I have seen him and spoken to him, I will let you know it.
Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que vous, et qu'*il ait de meilleurs amis,*	Though he be richer than you, and have better friends.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

If your father do not arrive to-day, and *if* you
que,c.
want money, I will lend you some. - - -
avoir besoin de
If you should see your sister, and speak to her, &c. - - *If* you study and take pains, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time. - - *Whether* you sing, *or* dance, do it with grace and attention. - - - *If* you love me, and (be willing to) oblige me, do not go to France with her. - - *If* men were wise, and would follow the dictates of
lumière,f.
reason, they would (save themselves) many sor-
s'épargner,v.
rows. - - - *If* you meet my brother, and he speak to you, do not answer. - - - *So that* you saw and spoke to her. - - *Though* you have good relations,
parent,m.

your merit be known, and you do not want
manquer de
friends, your projects will not succeed without your brother's assistance. - - *As soon as* I have dressed myself, and breakfasted, I will go to see him. - - *While* you play and lose your money, your sister is learning her lesson. - - We must pity him who has
celui
no talent, and *only* despise him who has no virtue. - - - Play on the organ, *while* I read my brother's letter and answer him. - - - *Beside* that he never studies, and is always in the country, he has not so much wit as his sister. - - I will explain to you every difficulty (*in order*) *that* you may take courage and learn well. - - *Though* you should have the best master in England, and learn all the rules of the grammar, if you do not put them in practice, you will never speak good French. - - God *grant* you may succeed in your pursuits, and obtain the
entreprise,f.
favour you solicit so ardently! - - - *Whether*
Soit que
God (raise up) thrones, or pull them down;
élever,v. *abaisser*,v.
whether he communicate his power to princes,
soit que *puissance*,f.

or withdraw it to himself, and only leave them
retirer,v.
their own weakness; he teaches them their duty
in a sovereign manner. - - *Whether* you speak or
de,p.
(hold your tongue,) you will obtain nothing from
se taire,v.
me; but whatever you may say, speak *so that* you
may never offend any one. - - Your brother told me
personne.
he was young, and was* but twenty years old when
he was made a captain; I think he was better in-
plus
formed and had more experience *than* you have. - -
instruit
I can assure you, *that* both our officers and soldiers
have behaved nobly, and performed prodigies of
faire
valour, *though* the enemies were superior in num-
ber, and had the advantage of the ground.
terrein.

It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting *wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty, persuasion, pretension, surprise*, &c. always require the conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb, which, in English, is put in the infinitive mood, the participle active, or the future tense, must, in French, be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

* See the remark after the verb *être*, to be, page 174.

Croyez-vous qu'il soit honnête?	Do you believe him to be honest?
Je doute que vous le fassiez,	I doubt of your doing it.
Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne,	I do not believe she will come.

See *Falloir*, and the rules after it, page 332.

Pay the utmost attention to the

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You wish him to pay you; he has no money, I am obliged to lend him some every day. - - I do not think *de* that true philosophy may be less useful to women than men; but I remark, *remarquer*,v. that the most part of those who meddle *se mêler*,v. (with it) are but very bad philosophers, without becoming better *en* wives for it. - - I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day. - - - She wishes you may *pouvoir*,v. succeed in all your undertakings. - - I fear* *craindre*,v. she (will go away) without speaking to me. - - I much fear *s'en aller*,v. he will come sooner than you expect *attendre*,v. him. - - Do you not say you are surprised that William *Guillaume* has not spoken to you (ever since) last week. - - - For my part, *depuis* *Quant à moi*, I am not surprised at it, for he is always pouting. *bouder*,v.

* The verbs *craindre* and *appréhender* when attended with no negation, require that *ne* should be placed before the verb which follows: ex. *Je crains qu'il ne meure*, I fear he will die.

-- Do you think he will succeed, and obtain the place
croire,v.
he aims at? - - You have had much trouble, and we
aspirer,v. *peine*
all fear lest hereafter she should give you much
(pres.of subj.)
more. - - If you believe him to be your friend, why
then do not you follow his advice? - - It is necessary
for you to go thither, and assure him, that I am very
que
thankful for all his kindness. -- I wonder that
reconnoissant *de*,
Mr. R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. - - -
If you see her and she speaks to you, do not answer
her. - - Order her to do it. - - Do you imagine
Dire,v. *s'imaginer*,v.
we are sure they will come to-night? - - - Do you
think it is possible for you to (bring it about)?
croire,v. *de en venir à bout*,v.
- - It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it. - -
I do not say I have seen it. - - He (was afraid) lest
craindre,v. *que*
you should come while he was (gone out). - - -
sortir,v.
Our master has ordered, that we should (get up) to-
se lever
morrow morning early. - - You did not think that she
(wanted to) deceive you, when she told you that.
vouloir,v.
- - I wonder you should doubt, that it is your
être surpris,v. *ce*
daughter who told it me. - - - Do you think my mother

will let us go to the ball next week? -- Were Mr. S. discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would communicate it to him immediately. - - It
sur le champ.
will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself, while he is town, because I do not doubt* of his undertaking it. - - Were I certain that you would
ne with the subj. pres.
speak to him about it, I would desire him to come
prier de
and dine with us to-morrow; for I (am to) see him to-
⌒
night at his brother's. - - I am certain that he will satisfy you: are you certain he will satisfy me? - - - Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father. -- I will give you no rest, unless you are re-
que ne
conciled with your mother. - - I do not believe it is she who has done it. - - Do you believe it? - - My brother is not well, and I douht (very much) of
fort,
his coming to see us before next spring. - - - Do you think he is on the road? - - I doubt
en,p. ⌒ *route?*
whether he will come before next week. - -
suivant,adj.
I did not know you had studied geography so long.

* After the verbs *Douter* and *Nier*, when these verbs are attended with a negation, *ne* is employed with the verb which follows: ex.
Je ne nie pas que cela ne soit, I do not deny that it is so.

It must be observed, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense, *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning, *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose?* &c. must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Je veux qu'*il fasse cela*,	I will *have* him do that.
Je veux que *vous me montriez cette lettre*,	You *shall* show me that letter, that is to say, I choose you should show, &c.
Voulez-vous que *je danse?*	*Shall* I dance? that is, do you choose, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You would (*vouloir*, v.) have your daughter return (*revenir*, v.) to-morrow, but that is impossible. - - I will have your father know what you have done: you must stay (*rester*, v.) here till he comes. - - Your mother would have you come directly; why do you not you come then? - - I absolutely intend (*vouloir*, v.) that she shall go thither directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill or well, I will have him set out (*se porter*) as soon as he has received my letter. - - I will have you see my house, and tell me what you think (*penser*, v.) of it. - - She shall not go

into the country, unless I go with her. - - My father would have me and my brother walk all the way. - - Your sister shall go with me to Croydon, and not you. - - Your father will have you go to France in a month; I am very glad of it, however I would not have you do things too precipitately. - - - Shall my brother show you his translation? - - Your brother asked me whether he might go home to-morrow; I told him he might go whenever he thought he should be wanted: but you shall remain here till you have learned all your lessons. - - I know a gentleman who is going to Paris; shall I tell him to call upon you? I would not have you go to Germany without understanding French well, as that language will enable you to learn German much sooner than you expect. - - Your brother shall not go out to-day. - - Will you (be so good as) to go and carry that letter to the post? No, I cannot leave my play. But I tell you, that you shall (go there); I would have you pay more attention to what you are told.

faire à pied,v. *chemin*,m. *croire*,v. *passer chez* *mettre en état de bien s'attendre.* *avoir la bonté de* *faire*,v.

Qui, *que*, or *dont*, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood, and when *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

C'est la plus belle femme qui *puisse se voir*,	She is the handsomest woman *that* can be seen.
C'est le plus méchant garçon que *je connoisse*,	He is the most wicked boy *that* I know.
Je veux une femme qui *soit belle*,	I will have a wife *who* is handsome:

that is, I will not have any woman for a wife, but *on condition* she be handsome.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Do you say you are surprised, that he has not yet written to you? I assure you it is not to be wondered at; for, he is the most negligent man I know. *s'étonner*

- - - It is necessary for you to go thither, and assure him that he has done nothing that should (make[2] me[1] angry[2]). - - He is the most charitable man we have in this neighbourhood; his purse is open to the poorest men he can find. - - - Did you not tell me you (sought for) a master who had a good pronunciation, and was endowed with (a great deal) of patience? - - When a father is capable of teaching his children, he is the best master whom *que* *devoir*, v. *fâcher*, v. *chercher*, v. *doué de*

they can have. - - I know nobody that improves
faire des progrès
more than Miss K——; and when she was learning
French, had she learned it by rules, she would speak,
le
write, and translate now much better than Miss S—,
though she was two years in France. - - Has not your
brother some friends whom he can trust? - - Your
se fier à,v.
father has bought the finest horse that I have ever
seen. - - Is there any lady that appears more reasonable
than she does? - - If you ever choose a friend, I wish
you may choose one whom you esteem, and who
may be an honest man. - - It (will be better for) you to
valoir mieux
go and speak to him yourself, instead of writing to
him, because I do not doubt of his undertaking and
(bringing about) your affair; he is the most diligent
venir à bout de
and the most careful man we have in this country. - -
Before you begin any thing of importance, consult
some body who is your friend, and on whom you can
rely. - - - Do you know any body who goes to
faire fond,v.
France? - - I have something to send to my sister. - -
If you do not follow my advice, believe me, it will

be the greatest misfortune that can happen to you. - - Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. - - The best reason I can give you is, that I *pouvoir*,v. (was not) well. - - If you lend me a horse, lend me *se porter*,v. one that goes well. - - - The God who has created us, and who created the universe, is the only one *seul*,adj. to whom we owe homage, and the only one whom we (ought to) fear.

SECT. IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of *joy*, *grief*, *pain*, *admiration*, *aversion*, *silence*, *calling*, *encouraging*, *warning*, &c. such as,

Allons, gai! come, be cheerful!
çà, courage! come, come on!
Bon! good!
Ah, mon Dieu! oh, my God!
Ah, ouidà! ay, marry!
Ha, quelle joie! O, joy!
ô ciel! O Heaven!
Fi, fi! fy upon! shame!
Holà, ho! ho there!
Hélas! alas!
Malheur à! wo to!
Miséricorde! bless me!
Prenez garde, gare! have a care!
Paix, chut, st! hist, hush!
Silence! silence!

EXERCISE UPON THE INTERJECTIONS.

Come, friends, let us rejoice! - - - Good! here are
se réjouir,v.
news for you, brother. - - - Fy, fy! Robert, you do
not think of what you say. - - Oh! how[1] lovely[6] a[4]
penser,v. *à* *que*
virtue[5] is[3] modesty[2]! Why do you not endeavour to
s'efforcer,v. *de*
acquire it? - - Alas! who can express the torments
I suffer here? - - - Man without religion, never
having his heart or mind at peace, can, alas!
esprit,m. *en*,p.
be *but* a very unhappy creature. - - - Wo to you!
usurers, misers, unjust possessors of (other people's)
usurier,m. *avare*,m. *autrui*,pro.
goods, hearken to these words: The treasures
bien,m. *écouter*,v. *parole*,f.
of iniquity (will be of no service) to you. - - O
ne servir de rien
(lazy people), go to the ant, consider what she
paresseux *fourmi*,f.
does, and learn from her, wisdom and industry.

Bless me! I am undone! - Hush there! silence!
perdu,p.p.
- - Oh! the dismal effects which laziness pro-
funeste,adj.
duces! - - How[1] tremendous[6] an[2] office[3] is[7] that
Que *terrible*,adj. *le*
of[4] a[5] judge[6]! What wisdom, what integrity, what
knowledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience,
science,f.
(are required!)
ne faut-il pas avoir,v.

REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de*, *à*, and *pour*.

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no occasion for a syntax. It will, however, be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper use of the particle *de* or *à*, and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue.*

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed nor understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to*, be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

FIRST, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb: ex.

Aimer *est un verbe*, *To love* is a verb.

SECONDLY, after the following verbs, *aller*, *croire*, *devoir*, *faire*, *il faut*, *savoir*, *valoir mieux*, *venir*, *pouvoir*, *oser*, *vouloir*, and *penser*, when rendered by *to be like* or *near*.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every body has not. - - To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, are the two great sciences of life. - - I had rather do it

aimer mieux, v.

* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

now than later. - - Why dare you not undertake it? I think you might succeed. - - He says he will lend
pouvoir,v. *réussir*,v.
you his gun with all his heart, because you know
fusil, m.
how to make use of it. - - Aristotle, though he was
se servir,v.
so great a philosopher, was never able to penetrate the cause of that prodigy. - - Tell him, that he may set out when (he pleases). - - You never could
il lui plaira,v. *pouvoir*,v.
come more seasonably. - - We (are to) go to Vauxhall to-morrow. - - I am going to see your brother. - - (Is it not better) to set out now, than wait
Valoir mieux,v. *de attendre*,v.
any longer? - - - If you think to oblige her,
plus *croire*,v.
you mistake. - - We (were to) have had a ball yester-
se tromper,v.
day, but my sister was not well. - - You did very right, for you ought not to speak to him. - - I
bien, adv. *car*,c. *devoir*,v.
(had like) to have fallen twenty times (in) coming
penser,v.
hither. - - To instruct, please, and move the pas-
émouvoir,
sions, are the three principal qualifications requisite in
qualité *nécessaire*
an orator. - - If you would read this book, I could
vouloir,v. *pouvoir*,v.
lend it to you for four or five days. - - He wishes to learn without taking pains.
vouloir,
peine, f. sing.

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood: *First*, when any of the following words, *of, from* or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See the rule upon the participle active, page 343.)

Secondly, after a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *decent*, *glad*, *impossible*, *necessary*, *sorry*, *worthy*, *vexed*, and the like.

Fourthly, after the following verbs: *to advise*, *to apprehend*, *to bid*, *to cease*, *to command*, *to conjure*, *to counsel*, *to defend*, *to defer*, *to deserve*, *to desire*, *to endeavour*, *to entreat*, *to fear*, *to hasten*, *to long*, *to order*, *to permit*, *to persuade*, *to pray*, *to promise*, *to propose*, *to refuse*, *to remember*, *to threaten*, *to tell*, *to warn*, *to undertake*, &c. and the greater part of the reflected verbs.

And *lastly*, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother, to lend me some money. - - My mother ordered me to tell you, to go and speak to her directly. - - Did you not permit him to go out this morning? - - I am surprised to find you so ill. - - I have not desired you to play. - - Bid your sister to send me my book. - - We (were afraid) of displeasing you. - - What do you advise me to do in such a case? - - My sister and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next.

prier, v. *ordonner*, v. *sortir*, v. *Dire*, v. *à craindre*, *conseiller*, v. *passer*, v. *chez*, v.

I am very glad to hear you are better. - -
apprendre,v.
She does not pretend to speak French as well as
se piquer, v. *de*
you. - - We are tired of repeating to you the same
things so often. - - If you finish your exercise soon
you will have the pleasure of walking, while the
others will have the trouble of working. - - Hasten
se hâter,
to tell her not to go thither (any more); for, she
de *de* *plus*, adv.
would be in danger of losing her life. - - En-
la
deavour to please your masters by your application to
à
study. - - Do not you remember having said you
would carry me to the camp? - - Do not they
mener,v.
deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to serve
mériter,v. *
the public? - - We are all glad to hear you have
overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry
to have heard the contrary. - - What a fool[3] you[1] are[2]
apprendre, ⌒
to grieve so, when you have so much reason to
s'affliger,v.
rejoice! - - Never endeavour to speak French unless
you have a good pronunciation. - - I shall never refuse
to do you a service, (as long as) it is in my power.
rendre,v. ⌒
- - Have you a mind to do what you have pro-
⌒ *envie*,
mised me? - - I cannot give you the book you asked

* See the rule, page 106.

me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send
juger à propos,v.
it me back again. - - I desired you to bring your sister with you; why did you not ?* - - I forbid
défendre,v.
you to speak or write to him (any more). - - Would
davantage, adv.
you not be very glad to read and speak Italian ? - - - - Condemn the opinion of no one hastily, but endeavour to regulate your own by the line of
s'efforcer,v.
truth. - - Who can hinder me from speaking or
vérité, f. *empêcher*,v.
writing to her ? - - (Give[1] me[2] leave[1]) to tell you, that
Permettre,v.
you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. - - He
mal, adv.
(was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull
se contenter, v. a-
down the statues, but, &c. - - Is there (any thing)
battre,v. *rien*,
more glorious, than to change anger into friendship? - - - (I long) to see your mother, and tell her all
Il me tarde,v.
that I think (about it.)
en,pro.

The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood: *First*, after the auxiliary verb, *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action: ex.

J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire, I have many letters *to* write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be *addicted*, *apt*, *bent*, *diligent*, *disposed*,

* *Do it*, is understood, and must be expressed in French.

dreadful, *easy*, *fit*, *hard*, *inclined*, *quick*, *ready*, *subject*, *used*, &c.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable*, *good*, *dexterous*, *handsome*, *scarce*, the *last*, the *first*, the *second*, &c.

And, *lastly*, after the following verbs, *to amuse*, *to aspire* or *aim at*, *to begin*, *to condemn*, *to continue* or *go on*, *to compel* or *force*, *to design*, or *destine*, *to dispose*, *to employ* or *spend*, *to encourage*, *to engage*, *to excite*, *to exhort*, *to help*, *to induce*, *to invite*, *to learn*, *to please*, *to serve*, *to take a pleasure or delight in* or *to*, *to teach*, *to think*, &c.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.

Come hither, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. - - We have much to fear in our present situation, and a (great many) hazards to run. - - I cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or six visits to pay. - - Is there any thing pleasanter (*rendre*, v.) (*agréable*,) to behold than the flux and reflux of the sea? - - We (*voir*,) (ought to) learn how to subdue our passions, conquer our desires, and suffer patiently the most (*subjuguer*, v.) cruel misfortunes. - - She is always the first to (*disgrâce*, f.) (find fault with) what I do. - - Do not gather (*trouver à redire à*) that apple, it is not yet good to eat. - - Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let. - - Mr. F. is a very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming. (*louer*, v.) (*adonné*) (*jeu*, m.)

- - - Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. - - - We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. - - - The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. - - What you say of her is very hard *difficile*, adj. to believe. - - Tell him, I have no complaint to make about his conduct. - - - Why do you oblige her *de* to ask my pardon, since she is not inclined to do it her- *me*, pro. self? - - - I believe she takes a delight in tormenting me. - - - Life is so short, that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. - - There is no more danger to fear. - - - Use yourself, *S'accoutumer*, v. said a father to his son, to practice virtue: that alone will help you to bear with patience all the vicis- *supporter*, v. situdes of fortune. - - - Never amuse yourself in read- ing bad books. - - - You can never spend your time *passer*, v. better than in reading and studying the history of your own country. - - Learn to speak well; but, above all, to speak truth. - - That science which teaches us to *dire*, v. see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation. *bien*, - - - An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. - - - Does your master teach you how to translate English into French? - - - Do you begin to translate French well? - - - Why did you not oblige him to pay you what he owes you? - - - Why do you

not (get ready) to set out with us? - - I love to
s'apprêter, v.
discourse with polite and sensible people.
s'entretenir, v. *sensé*,

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin*, *to continue*, *to constrain*, *to engage*, *to exhort*, *to compel*, or *force*, *to endeavour*, *to oblige*, may be succeeded by *de*, or *à*, as most convenient.

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *design*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to*, *to the end*, or *for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs, *enough*, *on purpose*, *too*, *too much*, or *less*; and before an infinitive in the beginning of a period.

EXERCISE ON THESE RULES.

I will do (every thing) in my power to please him. - - Good rules are useless, if the attention, industry, and
assiduité, f.
patience of the scholar be not put into practice to learn them. - - Mrs. B. has (too much) pride to confess she (is in the wrong.) - - To understand[2] geography[3] well,[1]
avoir tort
we must, &c. - - I assure you that I came (on purpose)
on *exprès*
to see you. - - - She will do all that is in her power to oblige you, and prove to you that she is truly your friend. - - The wicked live to die, but the righteous die to live. - - She has vanity enough to believe all you tell her. - - What makes the misfortunes of kings, is not to have friends bold enough to tell them the truth. - - I wrote to you some time ago, to let
faire, v.
you know, that your brothers were arrived. - - He

ised me, that he would do (every thing) to de-
the honour of your protection. - - - I sent yes-
y my servant to your aunt's to desire her to
me[1] back[2] again[2] the book I lent her a month
but she was not at home. - - We did all that
faire, v.
could to pass the river, but could not (accom-
en venir à
it). - - - To convince you that I am ready to do
any service, (be so kind as) to command me.
avoir la bonté, v.
- Why did you not punish her for having done
you forbade her to do ? - - - A man should live
devoir,
ture at least to know the world, and many other
connoître,
ries to (know how to) make a proper use of that
savoir, *convenable*,
ledge.

SECT. X.

OF IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE, &c.

mal à la tête,	to have the head-ache, or a pain in the head.
mal aux oreilles,	to have sore ears, or a pain in the ears.
mal aux yeux,	to have sore eyes, or a pain in the eyes.
mal au nez,	to have a sore nose, or a pain in the nose.
mal à la bouche,	to have a sore mouth, or a pain in the mouth.
mal aux dents, &c.	to have the tooth-ache.

We say, after the same manner, *Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c.* to be cold in one's hands, &c. ex.

J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds, My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

Avoir beau, to be in vain : ex.

Vous avez beau *parler,* *It is in vain for you* to talk.

Avoir beaucoup de peine, to have much ado.

Avoir de la peine à, to have difficulty in ; ex.

J'ai de la peine à *vous croire,* *I can hardly* believe you.

Avoir besoin de, to want, to have occasion for.

Avoir la bonté de, (*daigner*), to be so kind as.

Avoir connoissance, avis de, to have notice of.

Avoir cours, to take, to be in vogue.

Avoir honte, to be ashamed.

Avoir la mine de, to be like, to look like : ex.

Vous avez la mine d'*être intelligent,* *You look like* a man of understanding.

Avoir pitié de, to pity.

Avoir part au gâteau, to share in the booty.

Avoir bonne mine : ex.

Vous avez très-bonne mine *aujourd'hui,* } *You look very well* to-day.

Avoir plus de peur que de mal, to be more afraid than hurt.

Avoir raison de, to be in the right to.

Avoir soin, to take care.

Avoir tort de, to be in the wrong to.

N'avoir que faire de, { to have no occasion or business of or for.

N'avoir garde de, or *Se garder bien de,* } are expressed by { to be sure not to, *or,* by no means.

Aller son train, to go one's own way.

Aller trouver quelqu'un, to go to somebody.

Venir trouver, to come to.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had *a pain in my* head. - - My brother would have come with me, but he has *a sore leg,* and is obliged to

keep his bed. - - I heard your mother had the *garder le tooth-ache :* Is it true ? No, madam, but she has *a pain in her* side which prevents her from (going *empêcher,* out.) - - - I have not yet finished my exercise ; for *my hands were so cold,* that I could not write a single word ; besides, I *had much ado* to find my books, I did not know where (to look for) them. - - *It will be in vain for you to* write to me, I never will answer you. - - - I *can hardly* believe what you tell me. - - *It is in vain for me to* speak to her, she still *goes her own way.* - - - Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she *was more afraid than hurt.* - - *It has been in vain for him to* torment your sister, she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P's. - - - *Go to* him, and tell him that, unless he returns me my books in a very short time, I will desire *peu* his father to send them to me : when you have told him that, do not (wait for) his answer ; *come to* me immediately, I shall be at your mother's, where I (am to) dine, and thence go to the play with the[2] whole[1] family. - - - *In vain* I give myself trouble, I am not the richer for it. - - - Your sister does not *look so well* to-day as she did yesterday. - - - *Am I not in the right* to go there no more ? - - - I *will take care* to prevent them from coming hither. - - - Believe me, I have long suspected them, and now I am very certain that both your cousins and they *have had a share in the booty.* - - - *We should often be ashamed* of our finest actions, if the

world knew all the motives which produce them. - - - *You are in the wrong* not to (ask for) his horse, he would lend it to you. - - - Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one (of my own ?) - - I *have no occasion for* *à moi*, his. - - - *Be so kind as to* carry that letter to Mr. H's. but *be sure not to* tell him who sent you. - - I hope you will *by no means* go there again, after what has happened to you. - - - He was so altered, that she *had much ado* to recollect him, but he now begins *to look very* *remettre*, *well.* - - Somebody having advised Philip, Alexander's father, to banish from his states a man who had spoken ill of him, I *shall by no means do it*, answered he, he would go every where and speak ill of me.

ON *ETRE*, TO BE.

Etre { *à son aise*, / *en bonne passe*, / *bien dans ses affaires*, } to be in good circumstances.

Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un, { to be in favour with some one.

Etre mal avec quelqu'un, { to be out of favour with some one.

Etre à charge à quelqu'un, { to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden to some one.

Etre but à but, to be equal.

Etre de moitié, to go halves.

Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon, { to be within musket-shot, gun-shot.

Etre à la portée de la voix, to be within call.

Etre { *à la veille de*, / *sur le point de*, } to be upon the brink, or very near to.

Etre en état de, / *Avoir le moyen de*, } to be able to afford.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother *is in good circumstances* now. - - Somebody told me he *was in favour with* the king. - - Yes, it is true, but *he is out of favour* with my father, because *he is troublesome* to the family. - - Well, Mr. R. and he *are equals*. - - - I thought Mr. A. and Mrs. D. *went halves* in that affair, but I heard the contrary. - - - Suffer me to tell you, you do very wrong to treat her as you do, you undoubtedly must have forgotten she *is in* the queen's *favour*. - - - Well, though she *be in* the queen's *favour*, do you imagine I am not to tell her what I think of her conduct ? - - - The two fleets *were within gun-shot*, and *very near* beginning the engagement, when we left them. - - *We will be within call*. - - Why do you not take a coach now and then ? said she to me. I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I to her, but I *cannot afford* it.

Eh bien, *permettre*, *combat*, m.

ON *FAIRE*, TO MAKE, OR DO.

Faire cas de, to value, to esteem.
Faire un tour de promenade, to take a walk.
Faire le malade, to sham sickness.
Faire l'école buissonnière, to play truant.
Faire beaucoup de chemin, to go a great way.
Faire le bel esprit, to set up for a wit.
Faire fond sur quelqu'un, to rely upon one.
Faire savoir, (*envoyer dire*,) { to let one know, to inform, to send word.
Faire voile, or *Mettre à la voile*, } to set sail.
Faire faire, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

Faire de son mieux, to do one's best.
Faire semblant, to pretend.
Faire de son pis, to do one's worst.
Ne faire que de, to be just, *or*
Venir de, to have but just: ex.
Il ne fait que d'*arriver*, He *is but just* arrived.
Ne faire que, to do nothing but.
Se faire des amis, des ennemis, to get friends, enemies.
Se faire des affaires, to bring one's self into trouble.
S'en faire accroire, { to be conceited, to have a good opinion of one's self.
C'en est fait de moi, I am undone, it is over with me.
C'en étoit fait de lui, he was undone, it was over with him.
C'en sera fait d'elle, { she will be undone, it will be over with her.
C'en seroit fait de nous, { we should be undone, it would be over with us.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood: ex.

Il lui fit couper *la tête*, He *caused* his head *to be cut off*.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I *value* it much; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. - - I would go and *take a walk*, if I were well. - - Do you not *sham sickness* now and then? - - - Did not your brother *play truant* last week? - - - That man *goes a great way* for a trifle. - - Mr. P. *sets up for a wit*, wherever he goes. You may *rely upon* what I tell you. - - He succeeds better *in being conceited*, than in giving others a
à à
good opinion of himself. - - I begin to be (very much)

satisfied with his brother, who now *does his best*, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father. - - - *Let me know* whether he will pay you or not. - - - *We shall set sail* about the fifteenth of next month. - - - - - Why did not you *bespeak* three or four pair of shoes more? - - - *Send word to your* brother, or *let* him *know*, that there is a letter for him here. - - I will give him an exercise, and *oblige him to do* it in my presence. - - - She told me if she *were obliged to do* it, she *would do her worst*. - - She *pretends* not to listen, but I assure you she does not lose a word of what you say. - - We were *but just* (come in) when it began to rain. - - - It *would have been over with us*, could the enemy have known what passed in our camp. - - *You do nothing but* play from morning till night. - - - - That young lady *will get* friends every where. - - - If you do not take care, you *will bring yourself into trouble*. - - Permit me to tell you, that they *are too much conceited*. - - - Your brother is *undone*, if his master come to know of it. - - The king *caused* them *to be put* to prison. - - He *caused* a superb palace *to be built*.

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Aimer mieux, to have rather, to choose rather.
Se donner bien des airs, to take a great deal upon one's self.
Il ne faut pas s'étonner, it is no wonder.
Il me tarde de, I long to.

Penser, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

S'en prendre à, { to lay the fault or blame upon one, to look to one for.

S'y bien prendre, or *S'y prendre de la bonne façon*, { to go the right way to work.

S'y prendre mal, to go the wrong way to work.

S'y prendre tout autrement, { to go quite a different, or another, way to work.

Prendre en mauvaise part, to take amiss.

Venir à bout de, to bring about, to accomplish.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I *choose rather* to (set out) now than later. - - She told me she *had rather* speak to any other person than to Mr. L. - - They *had rather* have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. - - - Do not you think Mrs. H. *takes a great deal upon herself?* - - - *It is no wonder* that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France, and I never was there. - - - I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking; for, he *goes the right way to work*, and I am certain that he *will bring it about*. - - - Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor; for, he *goes the wrong way to work* in (every thing) he undertakes. - - She *longs to* see your father, and tell him you behaved well all the time of his absence. - - - I *had like* (to have been) killed in coming here. - - If he lose, he *will lay the blame upon you*. - - - Why do you *lay the blame upon* her? she was not even in the room when that happened. - - - Should not your sister succeed, whom

would she lay the fault upon ? - - - You say you *long to* speak French ; and I too, I assure you. - - - I *long to* tell you something, nevertheless I do not know how to communicate it to you for fear of disobliging you. - - - When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable, you should *go quite a different way to work.* - - I beg of you not *to take amiss* what I *prier*, ∽
tell you. - - Do not begin a thing, unless you are sure *to bring it about.*
de

ON DIFFERENT VEBBS.

Se passer de, to do, to live without, *or* to be easy, without.
Savoir bon gré, to take kindly of.
Trouver mauvais que, to take ill if.*
Trouver à redire à, to find fault with.
Tenir maison, to be a house-keeper.
Tenir boutique, to be a shop-keeper.
Tenir parole, to keep one's word.
Ne tenir qu'à, { to be in a person's power. / to lie in a person's power : ex.
Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c. It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.
Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, &c. que, It is not my, your, fault &c. if.†
S'en tenir à, to stand to.
Vouloir du bien à, to wish one well.
En vouloir à, to have a spite against.
Je souhaiterois pouvoir, I wish I could.
Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie, your life is, was, at stake.
Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur, { my honour is, was, / concerned in it.
Je ne laisse pas de, nevertheless, *or* for all that, I.

* With the following verb in the subjunctive.
† With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some; but when I have none, I *am easy without* it. - - - If you will *be so kind as to* write to my father, to let him know my situation, I *shall take it kindly of* you, and promise you never to *find fault with* what you may recommend to me. - - *I wish I could* do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. - - - I hope you *will not take it ill, if* I write to your uncle (at the) same time. - - I *shall stand to* what you say. - - - *He has been a house-keeper* these five and twenty years. - - He might have succeeded much better than he has done, had he followed his uncle's advice and mine; but he never was satisfied, and was continually *finding fault with* what we were telling him. - - However little you send him at present, he will *take it kindly of* you. - - - *It is in her power* to live in the country, and be very happy there. - - *It will soon lie in your power* to make us happy. - - I assure you it *shall not be my fault, if* you do not succeed; for I *wish you well.* - - Since it *lies in your power* to recommend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it? - - When you see him, you may assure him, that, since it *is in my power* to do it, I will not forget him. - - - *You have a spite against* my brother; because *it was in his power* two or three times to oblige you, and he never would. - - - *I wish I could* persuade you how sorry he was for it; but his honour *was concerned* in not doing it: and, though you be very angry with him, he *would, nevertheless,* (or, *for all that,*) do you service if it were *in his power.* - - Had I

thought he would have refused me that favour, I never would have asked it (of him ;) I might very well *have*
lui,
done without it. - - You ought to have thanked him for
de
that attention, instead of being angry with him; but
contre
when your sisters heard that you could not obtain his leave, *they took it amiss,* and have (ever since) *had a spite*
congé
against him. - - When they told me (of it,) I would most
le
willingly have represented to them (how much) they *were in the wrong:* but I would *by no means* do it ; for I know *it is in their power* to do me (a great deal) of harm, and I do not wish to *get enemies.* - - - - Every body admires her humanity; for, though he has behaved in so
de
ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, *nevertheless,* have done him service, if he had lived.

GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

OF THE UNDERSTANDING OF LANGUAGES.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) in-
intelligence, f. *de*
troduction to all the sciences. By it we come
parvenir, v.
with very little trouble at the knowledge of (a great
peine,
many) fine things, which have cost those who in-
à
vented them (a great deal) of pains. By it all
times and countries lie open to us. By it
siècle, m. *pays,* *être,* v.
we become, in some measure, contemporary to all
de

ages, and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables)
mettre en état
us to converse with the most learned men of all
de
antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for
on
us. We find (in them) many masters, whom (we are
il nous
allowed) to consult at leisure; many friends who
est permis de
are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable
conversation improves the mind. It informs us of
enrichir, v.
a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally
(how to derive an advantage) of the virtues and vices
à profiter, v.
of mankind. Without the assistance of languages,
secours, m. *langue*, f.
all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these
pour, p.
treasures (locked up;) and, for want of having the
fermer, v.
key, which alone can open us the door (to them,) we
seul, adj. *en*, v.
remain poor (in the) midst of (so many) riches, and ig-
au
norant in the midst of all the sciences.

OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud
naître, v. *
of ignorance, which is increased by the false pre-
judices of a bad education. By study, the former
is dispersed, and the latter corrected. It gives

* See the observation on the preposition with, page 405.

proportion and exactness to our thoughts and rea- *justesse*,f.
sonings; instructs how to range in due order what- *convenable*
ever we have to speak or write; and presents us with *dire*,v.
the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our *modèle*,m.
conduct; those sages, in this sense, we may call, with Seneca, the masters, and teachers of mankind. But *Sénèque* *précepteur*,m.
the usefulness of study is not confined to what we *borner*,v.
call science; it renders us also more fit for business and employment; besides, though this study *de plus*,adv. *quand*,c.
were of no other use but (the acquiring) a habit of *de* †
labour, (the softening) the pains of it, (the pro- †
curing) a steadiness of mind and (conquering) † *fermeté*,f. †
our aversion to application or a sedentary life, or whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it *assujettir*,v.
would still be of very great advantage. In reality, it draws us off from idleness, play, and debauchery. *retirer*,v.
It usefully (fills up) the vacant hours of the day, and renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a *espèce*,f.
manner, the grave of a man while he is alive. It ena-

† These participles active are to be rendered in French by the infinitive, and the conjunction and preposition should be repeated before each.

bles us to pass a right judgment upon other men's
*
labours, to enter into society with men of understanding,
en *esprit*,
to keep the best company, to (have a share in)
fréquenter,v. *prendre part à*
the discourses of the most learned, to furnish out matter
for conversation, without which we must be silent; to
quoi,
render it more agreeable and more useful, by intermix-
ing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the
relever,v.
other.

SECT. XI.

SCHEME FOR PARSING A SENTENCE.

As it is very essential to the thorough learning of a language, not to mistake one part of speech for another, we finish this grammar by giving a classical and methodical scheme for parsing a sentence. The examples, with very little change, may suit any language.

Article. *Questions:* Is it definite, partitive or indefinite? What gender? What number?

Examples. *Le* pouvoir *du* roi, the *power* of the *king*; *la* liberté *des* hommes, the *liberty* of *men*; J'ai *du* pain, *de la* viande, *des* pommes; *I have bread, meat, apples*; *La* sœur *de* Pierre, *Peter's sister*.

Application. *Le*, definite art. m.—*du*, contraction of *de le*, genitive defi. art. m.—*La* definite art. f.—*des*, contraction of *de les*, genitive defi. art. both genders, pl.—*du*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. m.—*de la*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. f.—*des*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. both genders, pl.—*de* indefinite art. both genders and numbers, geni. and abl.—*à* dat. indef. art.

* Repeat this same preposition before each verb.

Substantive. *Questions:* What gender? What number? If the noun is singular, name its plural; if plural, name its singular.

Examples. Le *pouvoir* du roi; la *liberté* des hommes; le *prix* des *denrées*, *the* price *of* provisions.

Application. Pouvoir, substantive, m. *pouvoirs* for its pl.—*Liberté*, subst. f. *libertés*, for its pl.—*Prix*, subst. m. *prix* for its pl.—*Denrées*, subst. f. pl. *denrée* for its singular.

Adjective. *Questions:* What gender? What number? What does it agree with in the sentence? If it be masculine, name its fem. If it be feminine, name its masc.

Examples. Un *beau* chapeau, *a* fine *hat;* ces femmes sont *jolies*, *those ladies are* pretty; cette fille est *orgueilleuse*, *that girl is* proud.

Application. Beau, noun adj. m. agrees with *chapeau;* it has *belle* for its feminine.—*Jolies*, noun adj. f. pl. agrees with *femmes;* it has *joli* for its masculine.—*Orgueilleuse*, noun adj. f. agrees with *fille;* it has *orgueilleux* for its masculine.

Pronoun. *Questions:* Is it personal, conjunctive, possessive, relative, demonstrative, interrogative or indefinite? What gender? What number? With what does it agree in the sentence?

Examples. Elle a *mon* livre, she *has* my *book. Cette* plume ne vaut rien, this *pen is good for nothing.* L'homme *qui* vous parloit, *the man* who *was speaking to you.* Il y a *plusieurs* années, *several years ago. Quel* homme? What *man?*

Application. Elle, pronoun pers. f. agrees with *a. Mon*, pronoun poss. m. agrees with *livre. Cette*, pronoun demonstr. f. agrees with *plume. Qui*, pronoun rel. both genders and numbers, agrees with *homme. Plusieurs*, pronoun indef. pl. both genders, agrees with *années. Quel?* pron. int. m. agrees with *homme.*

Verb. *Questions:* Name its infinitive—its person—its number—its tense—its mode.

Examples. Pendant qu'ils *étoient* ensemble, j'*entendis* sonner midi; *while they* were *together, I* heard *twelve o'clock* strike. Quoiqu'il *paroisse* heureux, n'*enviez* pas

son sort; *though he* may appear *happy*, do *not* envy *his situation.*

Application. *Etoient*, from *être;* 3d pers. pl. imperf. tense, indic. mood. *Entendis*, from *entendre;* 1st pers. sing. preterite, indicative mood. *Paroisse*, from *paroître*, 3d pers. sing. pres. tense, subjunc. mood. *Enviez*, from *envier;* 2d pers. pl. imperat. mood.

Preposition. What does it govern in the sentence?

Examples. *Avant* midi; *sans* argent; before *noon;* without *money.*

Application. *Avant*, a preposition, governs *midi.* *Sans*, a preposition, governs *argent.*

Conjunction. What mood does it require? Name the verb it acts upon in the sentence.

Examples. *Lorsque* le roi entra, when *the king came in.* *Quoique* vous soyez riche, though *you be rich.* Je lis *pour* m'amuser, *I read* to *amuse myself.*

Application. *Lorsque*, a conjunction, requires the indic. Here it governs *entra.* *Quoique*, a conjunction, requires the subjunc. Here it governs *soyez.* *Pour*, a conjunction, requires the infinitive. Here it governs *amuser.*

Adverbs and interjections. Only name them.

Examples. *Ah!* mon ami, agissez *prudemment;* ah, *my friend, act* prudently.

Application. *Ah* is an interjection.—*Prudemment* is an adverb.

ABRÉGÉ
DE LA VERSIFICATION FRANÇOISE.

LES vers, à ne les considérer que sous le rapport de leur mécanisme, sont des paroles arrangées selon certaines règles fixes et déterminées.

Ces règles regardent sur-tout le nombre des syllabes, la césure, la rime, les mots que le vers exclut, les licences qu'il permet, et enfin les différentes manières dont il doit être arrangé dans chaque sorte de Poème.

Des différentes espèces de Vers françois.

On compte ordinairement cinq sortes de vers françois. C'est par le nombre des syllabes qu'on les distingue.

1°. Ceux de douze syllabes, comme :

Dans le ré-duit ob-scur d'u-ne al-co-ve en-fon-cée
S'é-lè-ve un lit de plu-me à grands frais a-mas-sée :
Qua-tre ri-deaux pom-peux, par un dou-ble con-tour,
En dé-fen-dent l'en-trée à la clar-té du jour.

Ces vers s'appellent *alexandrins*, *héroïques* ou *grands vers*.

2°. Ceux de dix syllabes, comme :

Du peu qu'il a le sage est sa-tis-fait.

3°. Ceux de huit syllables, comme :

L'hi-po-cri-te en frau-des fer-ti-le,
Dès l'en-fan-ce est pé-tri de fard ;
Il sait co-lo-rer a-vec art
Le fiel que sa bou-che dis-tille.

4°. Ceux de sept syllabes, comme :

Grand Dieu ! vo-tre main ré-clame
Les dons que j'en ai re-çus.
El-le vient cou-per la trame
Des jours qu'el-le m'a tis-sus.
Mon der-nier so-leil se lève,
Et vo-tre souf-fle m'en-lève
De la ter-re des vi-vans ;
Com-me la feuil-le sé-chée
Qui, de sa ti-ge ar-ra-chée,
De-vient le jou-et des vents.

5°. Ceux de six syllabes, comme :

A soi-même o-di-eux
Le sot de tout s'ir-ri-te :
En tous lieux il s'é-vite,
Et se trouve en tous lieux.

Les vers qui ont moins de six syllabes ne sont guère d'usage que pour la poésie lyrique, et quelques petites pièces badines.

DE LA CÉSURE.

La césure est un repos qui coupe le vers en deux parties ou hémistiches.

Ce repos doit être à la sixième syllabe dans les grands vers, et à la quatrième dans ceux de dix syllabes. L'esprit et l'usage de la césure sont très-bien exprimés dans ces vers de Boileau.

Que toujours en vos vers, - le sens coupant les mots,
Suspende l'hémistiche, - en marque le repos.
Sur les ailes du temps - la tristesse s'envole.
Que le mensonge - un instant vous outrage,
Tout est en feu - soudain pour l'appuyer ;
La vérité - perce enfin le nuage,
Tout est de glace - à vous justifier.

Il n'y a que les vers de douze et de dix syllabes qui aient une césure.

Pour que la césure soit bonne, il faut que le sens autorise le repos ; ainsi dans les vers suivans, la césure est défectueuse.

N'oublions pas les grands - bienfaits de la patrie.
Faites voir un regret - sincère de vos fautes.
Mon père, quoiqu'il eût - la tête des meilleures,
Ne m'a jamais rien fait - apprendre que mes heures.

La césure ne vaut rien dans ces exemples, parce que le sens exige que le mot où est la césure, et celui qui le suit, soient prononcés tout de suite et sans pause.

Mais la césure est bonne dans les vers suivans :

Ses chanoines vermeils - et brillans de santé
S'engraissoient d'une longue - et sainte oisiveté.

Ici la césure est bonne, parce qu'on peut faire une petite pause après un substantif suivi de plusieurs adjectifs, ou entre plusieurs adjectifs qui suivent ou qui précèdent un substantif.

I. Remarque. Le dernier mot du premier hémistiche, peut se terminer par l'*e* muet, pourvu que le mot suivant commence par une voyelle.

Ami lui dit le chantre encor pâle d'horreur,
N'insulte pas de grâce à ma juste terreur.
Il trépigne de joie, il pleure de tendresse.

II. Rem. Les pronoms *cela*, *celui*, *celui-là*, *etc.* et *de qui*, mis pour *dont*, peuvent aussi terminer le premier hémistiche, ou recevoir la césure; on souffre cette négligence, mais il faut se la permettre rarement; elle donne toujours aux vers un air prosaïque.

Il n'est fort entre ceux que tu prends par centaines,
Qui ne puisse arrêter un rimeur six semaines:
Bénissons Dieu de qui la puissance est sans bornes.

Les vers de dix et de douze syllabes sont, comme tous les autres, assujétis aux règles dont il nous reste à parler.

DE LA RIME.

La Rime est la convenance de deux sons qui terminent deux vers. Quelquefois on exige aussi qu'il y ait convenance d'orthographe, que deux sons semblables soient représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Où me cacher? fuyons dans la nuit infernale.
Mais que dis-je? mon père y tient l'urne fatale.
Le sort, dit-on, l'a mise en ses sévères mains.
Minos juge aux enfers tous les pâles humains.

On distingue deux sortes de rimes, la féminine et la masculine. La première est celle des vers qui se terminent par un *e* muet, soit seul, soit suivi d'une *s* ou d'*nt*.

Travaillez à loisir, quelque ordre qui vous presse,
Et ne vous piquez point d'une folle vîtesse.
Il veut les rappeler, et sa voix les effraie;
Ils courent; tout son corps n'est bientôt qu'une plaie.
Dans quels ravissemens, à votre sort liée,
Du reste des mortels je vivrois oubliée.
Un jeune homme, toujours bouillant dans ses caprices,
Est prêt à recevoir l'impression des vices.
C'est peu qu'en un ouvrage où les fautes fourmillent,
Des traits d'esprit semés de temps en temps pétillent.

Ces vers féminins ont une syllabe de plus que les masculins: mais comme l'*e* muet sonne foiblement dans la syllabe qui termine le vers, cette syllabe est comptée pour rien.

La rime masculine est celle qui finit par une autre lettre que l'*e* muet, ou seul, ou suivi d'une *s*, ou enfin d'*nt*.

Chaque vertu devient une divinité;
Minerve est la prudence, et Vénus la beauté.
Le travail est souvent le père du plaisir;
Je plains l'homme accablé du poids de son loisir.

Remarque. La syllabe *oient* ou *aient*, qui se trouve dans les imparfaits et les conditionnels des verbes, forme

une rime masculine, parce que cette syllabe a le son de l'*e* ouvert. Ainsi les vers suivans sont masculins.

Aux accords d'Amphion les pierres se mouvoient,
Et sur les murs Thébains en ordre s'élevoient.

RIMES RICHES ET SUFFISANTES.

Les rimes masculines et féminines se divisent en *riches* et en *suffisantes*.

I. La rime riche est formée de deux sons parfaitement semblables, et souvent représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Indomptable Taureau, Dragon impétueux,
Sa croupe se recourbe en replis tortueux.
De rage et de douleur le monstre bondissant
Vient aux pieds des chevaux tomber en mugissant.
Au moment que je parle, ah, mortelle pensée !
Ils bravent la fureur d'une amante insensée.

II. La rime suffisante est celle qui n'a pas une convenance aussi exacte de sons et d'orthographe.

Hélas ! Dieux tout-puissans, que nos pleurs vous appaisent.
Que ces vains ornemens, que ces voiles me pèsent !
Quelle importune main, en formant tous ces nœuds,
A pris soin sur mon front d'assembler mes cheveux ?

III. Dans la rime masculine, on n'a guère égard en général, qu'au dernier son des mots : ainsi *maison* rime avec *poison ; piété* avec *pureté ; procès* avec *succès*.

IV. Mais dans la rime féminine, on fait une attention particulière au son de l'avant dernière syllabe, parce que celui de la dernière n'est ni assez plein, ni assez marqué, pour produire une conformité de son sensible et agréable à l'oreille. Ainsi *mère* et *mâre*, *audace* et *justice*, *estime* et *diadême* ne rimeroient pas ensemble, quoique ces mots se terminent par la même syllabe *re*, *ce*, *me*.

Mais *visible* et *sensible*, *monde* et *profonde*, *justice* et *précipice*, *usage* et *partage*, peuvent rimer ensemble, parce que ces mots ont une convenance de sons dans les avant-dernières syllabes.

V. Comme la convenance de sons est essentielle à la rime, on ne sauroit bien faire rimer les syllabes brèves avec les longues, les *l* mouillées, avec les *l* non mouillées, etc. comme *maître* et *mètre ; joûte* et *route ; jeune* (qui n'est pas vieux) et *jeûne* (abstinence) ; la *fille* et la *file ; péril* et *puéril*, etc. Ainsi J. B. Rousseau

a manqué à son exactitude ordinaire, quand il disoit à son ami ;

Et sur ce bord *émaillé*
Où Neuilli borde la Seine,
Reviens au vin d'*Auvilé*
Mêler les eaux d'Hypocrène.

VI. L'*é* fermé, l'*i* et l'*u*, soit seuls, soit suivis des consonnes *l*, *s*, *t* ou *z*, ne forment pas de bonnes rimes, si dans les deux syllabes rimantes ils ne sont précédés de la même consonne. Ainsi *bonté* et *donné*, *vertus* et *reçus*, *amis* et *avis*, *cultivez* et *portez*, ne rimeroient pas bien.

Choisissez des amis de qui la piété
Vous soit un sûr garant de leur fidélité.
Ami droit et sincère on doit à ses amis
Garder fidèlement ce qu'on leur a promis.

VII. L'observation précédente a lieu pour l'*a* dans les verbes : il *donna* et il *aima*, il *porta* et il *rêva*, il *immola* et il *saura*, ne rimeroient pas ensemble. Et en général elle est d'usage pour tous les sons communs à un grand nombre de mots. Ainsi les sons *ant* ou *ent*, *eu* et *on* ne riment bien qu'autant qu'ils sont précédés des mêmes lettres, comme *puissant*, *chassant* ; *agrément*, *régiment* ; *passion*, *mission* ; *ambitieux*, *religieux* ; *vieux*, *mieux*.

Mais les mots suivans ne rimeroient pas bien ensemble : *puissant*, *chancelant* ; *raison*, *passion* ; *heureux*, *religieux*, etc.

VIII. Quand la rime est formée par des sons pleins, comme *ar*, *as*, *at*, *or*, *os*, *ot*, *er*, *ès*, *et*, *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *ou* ; par *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *ion*, *oin* ; en un mot par des voyelles précédées d'une ou de plusieurs consonnes, alors on n'exige pas que la lettre qui précède soit la même dans les mots qu'on veut faire rimer. Par exemple, *embarras* et *combats*, *gros* et *sots*, *progrès* et *succès*, *mer* et *enfer*, *ouvert* et *souffert*, *soupir* et *désir*, *espoir* et *devoir*, *jamais* et *parfaits*, *pain* et *main*, *nuit* et *conduit*, *témoins* et *besoins*, *soutiens* et *conviens*, et autres semblables peuvent rimer ensemble.

IX. Un mot en *e*, *x*, ou *z*, ne peut rimer qu'avec un mot terminé par l'une de ces trois consonnes. Ainsi *admirable* et *tables*, *risible* et *plausibles*, le *secours* et le *jour*, la *vanité* et vous *méritez*, la *foi* et les *lois*, le *courroux* et le *genou*, etc. ne rimeront pas bien ensemble.

Mais *lois* et *Rois*, *courroux* et *tous*, *célestes* et tu *détestes*, *vanités* et vous *méditez*, *clefs* et vous *raclez*, le *discours* et le *cours*, formeront de bonnes rimes.

X. Dans les verbes *ois* et *oit*, ayant le son de l'*e* ouvert, ne riment guère qu'avec un autre verbe. Quoique j'*aimois* et *jamais*, *donnois* et *harnois*, *plaçoit* et *lacet*, *manquoit* et *banquet*, *je déplaçois* et *les succès*, se terminent par le même son, l'usage ordinaire est de ne les pas faire rimer ensemble.

XI. Les terminaisons *ent*, *oient* ou *aient*, ne doivent rimer qu'avec des verbes qui aient les mêmes terminaisons: ils *privent*, ils *écrivent*; ils *lurent*, ils *burent*; qu'ils *surfassent*, qu'ils *effacent*; etc. mais ils *méprisent* ne rimeroient pas bien avec *entreprise*; la *surface* avec ils *surpassent*.

XII. La convenance des sons et d'orthographe ne peut autoriser la rime du mot avec lui-même, d'un simple avec son composé, ni même de deux mots dérivés de la même racine, quand ils se ressemblent trop pour la signification. Ainsi la rime est défectueuse dans ces vers:

Je connois trop les Grands, dans le malheur *amis*,
Ingrats dans la fortune, et bientôt *ennemis*.

Elle est tout-à-fait vicieuse dans ceux-ci:

Les chefs et les soldats ne se connoissent *plus*;
L'un ne peut commander, l'autre n'obéit *plus*.

XIII. Mais deux mots entièrement semblables par le son et l'orthographe riment bien ensemble, lorsqu'ils ont des significations différentes. Les dérivés sont dans le même cas, s'ils n'ont plus un rapport sensible pour le sens.

Prends-moi le bon parti, laisse-là tous les *livres*:
Cent francs au denier cinq, combien font-ils? vingt *livres*.
Nobles, souvenez-vous qu'une naissance *illustre*
Des sentimens du cœur reçoit son plus beau *lustre*.
Dieu punit les forfaits que les rois ont *commis*,
Ceux qu'ils n'ont point vengés, et ceux qu'ils ont *permis*.

XIV. Les deux hémistiches d'un vers ne doivent pas rimer ensemble, ni même avoir une convenance de sons, comme:

Il ne tiendra qu'à *toi* de partir avec *moi*.
Aux Saumaises *futurs* préparer des *tortures*.

XV. Le dernier hémistiche d'un vers ne doit pas non plus rimer avec le premier du vers précédent ou du vers suivant.

Il faut, pour les avoir, employer tous vos *soins ;*
Ils sont à moi, du *moins* tout autant qu'à mon frère.

Un fiacre, me couvrant d'un déluge de boue
Contre le mur *voisin* m'écrase de sa roue ;
Et, voulant me sauver, des porteurs *inhumains*
De leur maudit bâton me donnent dans les reins.

XVI. Il faut encore éviter la rime dans les premiers hémistiches de deux vers qui se suivent.

Sinon demain *matin*, si vous le trouvez bon,
Je mettrai de *ma main* le feu dans la maison.

Quelquefois cependant la rime des premiers hémistiches n'a rien de choquant ; c'est lorsqu'elle se fait par la répétition d'une pensée, d'une expression qu'on reproduit à dessein, pour fixer davantage l'attention du lecteur ; comme :

Qui cherche *vraiment Dieu*, dans lui seul se repose ;
Et qui craint *vraiment Dieu*, ne craint rien autre chose.

Des termes que le vers exclut.

I. Les bons Poètes rejettent avec soin tous les termes durs, ou difficiles à prononcer, ou bas et prosaïques. Rarement ils se servent des conjonctions que les orateurs emploient souvent pour lier et arrondir leurs périodes ; telles que *c'est pourquoi*, *parce que*, *pourvu que*, *puisque*, *de manière*, *de façon que*, *de sorte que* ou *en sorte que*, *outre*, *d'ailleurs*, *en effet*, etc.

Il est un heureux choix de mots harmonieux ;
Fuyez des mauvais sons le concours odieux.
Le vers le mieux rempli, la plus noble pensée,
Ne peut plaire à l'esprit, quand l'oreille est blessée.

II. Un mot terminé par une autre voyelle que l'*e* muet, ne peut être suivi d'un mot qui commence aussi par une voyelle ou une *h* muette : ce seroit un *hiatus*.

Gardez qu'une voyelle à courir trop hâtée,
Ne soit d'une voyelle en son chemin heurtée.

Ainsi les phrases suivantes ne formeroient pas de vers :

Que l'aimable vertu a peu d'adorateurs !
Evitez le souci, et fuyez la colère.

III. Comme la conjonction *et* a toujours le son de l'*e* fermé, elle ne sauroit non plus dans le vers être suivie d'une voyelle. On ne pourroit pas dire en vers :

Qui sert *et* aime Dieu, possède toutes choses.

Mais on dira bien :

Qui connoit et sert Dieu, possède toutes choses.

IV. Les voyelles nasales qui, dans la prononciation, ne doivent pas être liées avec le mot suivant, ne peuvent avec grâce être suivies d'un mot qui commence par une voyelle. Ainsi la rencontre des voyelles nasales et des voyelles simples est désagréable dans ce vers :

Un grand *nom* est un poids difficile à porter.
Ah ! j'attendrai long-temps, la nuit est *loin* encore.

Cependant cette rencontre peut se souffrir, quand la prononciation permet de pratiquer un petit repos entre le mot qui finit par un son nasal, et le mot qui commence par une voyelle ; comme dans ce vers de l'Athalie de Racine :

Celui qui met un *frein* à la fureur des flots,
Sait aussi des méchans arrêter les complots.

V. L'*e* muet final et précédé d'une voyelle, comme dans *donnée*, *aimée*, *Asie*, *envie*, la *paie*, la *joie*, la *proie*, la *rue*, *entrevue*, etc. ne peut entrer dans le corps du vers qu'au moyen de l'élision ; ainsi les vers suivans sont mal construits :

Au travers du Soleil, ma *rue* s'éblouit.
Ils vous *louent* tout haut et vous *jouent* tout bas.
Il *avoue* sa faute et demande pardon.

Mais ceux-ci sont réguliers à cause de l'élision,

La *joie* est naturelle aux âmes innocentes.
A quels mortels regrets ma *vie* est réservée !

VI. L'*e* muet, dans le corps du mot et précédé d'une voyelle, est compté pour rien dans la prononciation ; souvent même on ne l'écrit pas. Il *agréera*, *criera*, *louera*, *reniement*, *dévouement*, etc. ne font pas plus de syllabes que *agrêra*, *crîra*, *loûra*, *renîment*, *dévoûment*.

ENJAMBEMENT DES VERS.

Les vers n'ont ni grâce ni harmonie, quand on rejette au commencement du second vers des mots qui dépendent nécessairement de ce qui se trouve à la fin du premier.

Quel que soit votre ami, sachez que mutuelle
Doit être l'amitié ; même ardeur, même zèle.
Il n'est donc point d'amis, pour la dernière fois
Je le répète encor : peu connoissent les lois
D'une vraie amitié.

Dans le premier vers, *mutuelle* dépend nécessairement de ces mots *doit être l'amitié.*

Dans les derniers, ces mots *d'une vraie amitié* sont dépendans de ceux-ci, *les lois*, et l'on ne peut les séparer dans la prononciation.

Ces enjambemens sont proscrits dans la haute poésie, mais ils se tolèrent dans les fables et dans les autres pièces de style familier.

Si néanmoins la dépendance d'un vers s'étendoit jusqu'à la fin du suivant, en sorte qu'à la fin du premier il y eût un petit repos, l'harmonie loin d'être blessée n'en seroit que plus sensible.

Là gît la sombre envie, à l'œil timide et louche,
Versant sur des lauriers les poisons de sa bouche.
Ce malheureux combat ne fit qu'approfondir
L'abîme dont Valois vouloit en vain sortir.—VOLT.

Des licences qu'on se permet dans les Vers.

Ces licences consistent dans certaines dispositions de mots, dans l'emploi de plusieurs termes dont la prose n'oseroit se servir, dans le retranchement d'une lettre.

DES TRANSPOSITIONS.

I. On place avec grâce les régimes composés avant les mots et les verbes dont ils dépendent.

A la Religion soyez toujours fidèle,
Les mœurs et la vertu ne sauvent point sans elle.
C'est Dieu qui *du néant* a tiré l'univers ;
C'est lui qui *sur la terre* a répandu les mers.
Sans Dieu rien n'eût été,
Et lui seul *des mortels* fait la félicité.
A vous former le cœur appliquez-vous sans cesse.

II. On place entre l'auxiliaire et le participe, entre le verbe et son régime, des mots qui n'y seroient pas soufferts en prose.

Un vieillard vénérable avoit, *loin de la Cour*,
Cherché la douce paix dans un obscur séjour :
Dieu fit *dans ce désert* descendre la sagesse.

Les transpositions, quand elles sont naturelles, et qu'elles n'embarrassent pas le sens de la phrase, donnent de la grâce et de la noblesse à la poésie; mais elles ne valent rien, lorsqu'elles rendent le vers dur, ou qu'elles obscurcissent la pensée, comme dans les vers suivans :

Quoi ! voit-on revêtu de l'étole sacrée
Le prêtre *de l'autel* s'arrêter à l'entrée ?
Craignez *de votre orgueil* de vous rendre la dupe.
Que toujours la fierté, l'honneur, la bienséance
De cette folle ardeur s'oppose à la naissance.

Des mots propres à la Poésie.

La poésie se sert en général des mêmes mots que la prose; cependant il y a quelques expressions que les Poètes emploient heureusement, et qui seroient déplacées dans la prose. Telles sont *antique* pour *ancien : coursier* pour *cheval : l'Eternel, le Très-Haut, le Tout-Puissant* pour *Dieu : le flanc* pour *le sein, le ventre : le glaive* pour *l'épée : les humains, les mortels, la race de Japet* pour *les hommes : hymen* ou *hyménée* pour *mariage : espoir* pour *espérance : le penser* pour *la pensée : jadis* pour *autrefois : naguère* ou *naguères* pour *il n'y a pas long-temps : labeur* pour *travail : repentance* pour *repentir : soudain* pour *aussitôt : ombre éternelle, sombres bords* pour *l'enfer*, etc.

Où sont, Dieu de Jacob, tes antiques bontés ?
On fait cas d'un coursier, qui, fier et plein de cœur,
Fait paroître en courant sa bouillante vigueur.
L'Eternel en ses mains tient seul nos destinées.
Célébrons dans nos chants la gloire du Très-haut.
Si quelque audacieux embrasse sa querelle,
Qu'à la fureur du glaive on le livre avec elle.
Souvent d'un faux espoir un amant est nourri.
Les Dieux m'en sont témoins, ces Dieux qui dans mon flanc
Ont allumé le feu fatal à tout mon sang,
Ces Dieux qui se sont fait une gloire cruelle
De séduire le cœur d'une foible mortelle.
Soumise à mon époux, et cachant mes ennuis,
De son fatal hymen je cultivois les fruits.
On n'aime plus comme on aimoit jadis.
Va dans l'ombre éternelle, ombre pleine d'envie;
Et ne te mêle plus de censurer ma vie.

La lecture des bons Poètes fournira une foule d'autres expressions propres à la poésie.

Nous écrivons en prose je *crois*, je *vois*, je *dis*, je *sais*, je *vis*, j'*avertis*, etc. Les Poètes, selon le besoin, emploient ou retranchent l'*s* dans ces mots. Ils écrivent de même *jusque* ou *jusques*, *encore* ou *encor*, *grâce au Ciel* ou *grâces au Ciel*. Ils emploient aussi *alors que*, pour *lorsque*, *cependant que* pour *pendant que*, *avecque* pour *avec*, etc.

Les bons Poètes se servent rarement de la plupart de ces dernières licences ; et ceux qui se livrent à la poésie ne doivent pas oublier le précepte de Boileau.

Sur tout qu'en vos écrits la langue révérée,
Dans vos plus grands excès vous soit toujours sacrée ;
Envain vous me frappez d'un son mélodieux,
Si le terme est impropre ou le tour vicieux ;
Mon esprit n'admet point un pompeux barbarisme,
Ni d'un vers ampoulé l'orgueilleux solécisme.
Sans la langue, en un mot, l'auteur le plus divin,
Est toujours, quoiqu'il fasse, un méchant écrivain.

DE L'ARRANGEMENT DES VERS ENTR'EUX.

Dans les différentes manières dont les vers doivent être arrangés, il faut considérer la rime et le nombre des syllabes.

Le nombre des syllabes est arbitraire dans les pièces libres et dans la poésie lyrique ; mais il est déterminé dans les autres pièces sérieuses, qui sont la plupart écrites en vers de douze syllabes. Ainsi dans le Poème épique, l'Eglogue, l'Elégie, la Satyre, l'Epître, et dans la Tragédie et la haute Comédie, il est d'usage de n'employer que le vers Alexandrin.

Quant à la rime, deux vers masculins peuvent être suivis de deux vers féminins, *et vice versâ ;* ou bien un vers masculin est suivi d'un ou de deux féminins, et un vers féminin d'un ou de deux masculins.

On appelle vers *à rimes plates* ceux qui sont disposés de la première façon, comme les suivans.

De figures sans nombre, égayez votre ouvrage ;
Que tout y fasse aux yeux une riante image :
On peut être à la fois et pompeux et plaisant,
Et je hais un sublime ennuyeux, languissant.
Un poème excellent où tout marche et se suit,
N'est pas de ces travaux qu'un caprice produit :
Il veut du temps, des soins ; et ce pénible ouvrage
Jamais d'un écolier ne fut l'aprentissage.

On appelle vers *à rimes croisées* ceux qui sont ordonnés de la seconde manière, comme ceux-ci dans lesquels Rousseau dit en parlant de Circé furieuse :

Sa voix redoutable
Trouble les enfers,
Un bruit formidable
Gronde dans les airs,
Un voile effroyable
Couvre l'Univers.

Mais quand on n'observe d'autre règle que de ne pas mettre de suite plus de deux vers masculins ou féminins, et qu'on fait suivre un vers masculin ou féminin d'un ou de deux vers d'une rime différente, alors ils s'appellent vers *à rimes mêlées*, comme ceux-ci :

Ah ! si d'une pauvreté dure
Nous cherchons à nous affranchir,
Rapprochons-nous de la nature,
Qui seule peut nous enrichir.
Forçons de funestes obstacles ;
Réservons pour nos tabernacles
Cet or, ces rubis, ces métaux ;
Ou dans le sein des mers avides
Jetons ces richesses perfides,
L'unique aliment de nos maux.

Lorsque les vers sont en rimes plates, ils ont ordinairement le même nombre de syllabes. Mais lorsqu'ils sont à rimes croisées ou à rimes mêlées souvent ils ont une mesure inégale.

Dans les vers à rimes plates, c'est un défaut de faire revenir deux rimes masculines ou féminines déja employées, de manière qu'elles ne soient séparées de deux autres semblables que par deux rimes d'une espèce différente, comme dans cet exemple :

Soudain Potier se lève et demande *audience* :
Chacun, à son aspect, garde un profond *silence*.
Dans ce temps malheureux par le crime *infecté*,
Potier fut toujours juste, et pourtant *respecté*.
Souvent on l'avoit vu, par sa mâle *éloquence*,
De leurs emportemens réprimer la *licence*,
Et, conservant sur eux sa vieille *autorité*,
Leur montrer la justice avec *impunité*,

L'oreille est aussi choquée par la convenance de sons dans les rimes masculines et féminines qui se suivent, comme dans ces vers, d'ailleurs pleins de belles images.

Tel des antres du Nord échappés sur la *terre*,
Précédés par les vents, et suivis du *tonnerre*,
D'un tourbillon de poudre obscurcissant les *airs*,
Les orages fougueux parcourent l'*Univers*.

On compose à rimes plates les grands poèmes, tels que l'Epopée, la Tragédie, la Comédie, l'Eglogue, l'Elégie, la Satyre, l'Epître; à rimes croisées, l'Ode, le Sonnet, le Rondeau; et à rimes mêlées, les Stances, l'Epigramme, les Fables, les Madrigaux, les Chansons.

Il n'y a d'autres règles à observer dans les grands poèmes pour la distribution des rimes, que d'éviter la consonance, et de ranger les vers masculins et féminins deux à deux les uns après les autres. Nous ne nous étendrons donc pas davantage sur cet article par rapport à l'Epopée, à la Tragédie, etc. Nous ne dirons rien non plus des autres règles de ces poèmes. Ces dissertations nous mèneroient trop loin. Consultez l'Art poétique de Boileau, et les meilleures poétiques anciennes et modernes.

Mais l'ordonnance des vers dans plusieurs petits poèmes a des règles fixes et particulières. Ce sera le sujet des articles suivans.

DES STANCES.

Une *Stance* est un certain nombre de vers, après lesquels le sens est fini. Dans une Ode elle s'appelle *Strophe*.

Une stance n'a pas ordinairement moins de quatre vers, ni plus de dix. La mesure des vers y est arbitraire; ils peuvent être ou tous grands ou tous petits, ou bien mêlés les uns avec les autres.

Les stances sont appelées *régulières*, lorsqu'elles ont un même nombre de vers, un même mélange de rimes, et que les grands et les petits vers y sont également distribués. Elles sont appelées *irrégulières*, lorsqu'elles n'ont pas toutes ces convenances.

Pour la perfection des stances, il est nécessaire, 1°. Que le sens finisse avec le dernier vers de chacune.

2°. Que le dernier vers d'une stance ne rime pas avec le premier de la suivante.

3°. Que les stances d'une même pièce commencent et finissent par des rimes de même nature ; c'est-à-dire, que si le premier vers d'une stance finit par une rime masculine, les premiers vers des strophes suivantes doivent également être masculins. Il est cependant bon de remarquer que quoiqu'en général il ne soit pas permis de mettre de suite quatre rimes de même espèce, cependant plusieurs auteurs l'ont fait d'une stance à l'autre, parce qu'ils ont regardé chaque stance d'une pièce comme isolée, et comme indépendante de celle qui suit. Mais nous croyons que cette licence ne peut être tolérée que dans les chansons.

Si une stance est seule, elle prend un nom particulier, du nombre de vers dont elle est composée. Elle s'appelle *Quatrain*, si elle en a quatre ; *Sixain*, si elle en a six ; *Dixain*, si elle en a dix. Et quelquefois à raison du sujet, c'est une *Epigramme*, un *Madrigal*. On appeloit autrefois *Octave* une stance de huit vers.

On voit que toutes ces stances sont du nombre pair. Il y en a aussi du nombre impair, de cinq, de sept et de neuf vers.

RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE PAIR.

I. *Stances de quatre vers.*

Ces stances sont plusieurs quatrains joints ensemble, et liés par un sens qui dure jusqu'à la fin de la pièce. Entre le premier vers masculin ou féminin, et celui qui lui répond, on met un ou deux vers d'une rime différente, comme dans ces vers où l'Amitié fait elle-même son portrait.

J'ai le visage long, et la mine naïve,
Je suis sans finesse et sans art.
Mon teint est fort uni, ma couleur assez vive,
Et je ne mets jamais de fard.
Mon abord est civil ; j'ai la bouche riante,
Et mes yeux ont mille douceurs :
Mais quoique je sois belle, agréable et charmante,
Je règne sur bien peu de cœurs.

On me proteste assez, et presque tous les hommes
Se vantent de suivre mes lois :
Mais que j'en connois peu dans le siècle où nous sommes,
Dont le cœur réponde à ma voix !
Ceux que je fais aimer d'une flamme fidèle,
Me font l'objet de tous leurs soins ;
Et quoique je vieillisse, ils me trouvent fort belle,
Et ne m'en estiment pas moins.
On m'accuse pourtant d'aimer trop à paroître
Où l'on voit la prospérité ;
Cependant il est vrai qu'on ne me peut connoître
Qu'au milieu de l'adversité.

Autre exemple :

Dans ce sallon pacifique
Où président les neuf sœurs,
Un loisir philosophique
T'offre encor d'autres douceurs.

Là, nous trouverons sans peine
Avec toi, le verre en main,
L'homme après qui Diogène
Courut si long-temps en vain.

Et dans la douce allégresse
Dont tu sais nous abreuver,
Nous puiserons la sagesse
Qu'il chercha sans la trouver.—J. B. Rousseau.

Remarque. Les véritables quatrains n'ont aucune liaison pour le sens, et la morale en est ordinairement la matière. Exemple :

Ne demandez à Dieu ni gloire, ni richesse,
Ni ces biens dont l'éclat rend le peuple étonné :
Mais pour bien commander, demandez la sagesse ;
Avec un don si saint tout vous sera donné.

Ecoutez et lisez la céleste parole,
Que, dans les livres saints, Dieu nous donne pour loi.
La politique humaine au prix d'elle est frivole,
Et forme plus souvent un tyran qu'un bon Roi.

II. *Stances de six vers.*

Elles sont composées d'un quatrain et de deux vers d'une même rime, qui se mettent au commencement ou à la fin. D'ailleurs les vers d'un quatrain se mêlent de la même manière que ci-dessus.

Si les deux vers d'une même rime sont au commencement, alors à la fin du troisième, on met ordinairement un repos, et le sens ne doit pas s'étendre jusqu'au qua-

trième. Ce repos donne beaucoup de grâce et d'harmonie à cette sorte de stances.

On peut voir, par les exemples suivans, que ce repos peut être plus ou moins marqué, et qu'il n'est pas rigoureusement exigé dans les sixains.

Ce n'est donc point assez que ce peuple perfide,
De la sainte cité profanateur stupide,
Ait dans tout l'Orient porté ses étendards ;
Et paisible tyran de la Grèce abattue,
Partage à notre vue
La plus belle moitié du trône des Césars.

Des veilles, des travaux un foible cœur s'étonne.
Apprenons toutefois, que le fils de Latone,
Dont nous suivons la cour,
Ne nous vend qu'à ce prix ces traits de vive flamme
Et ces aîles de feu qui ravissent une âme
Au céleste séjour.

La place de ce repos varie, et est tantôt après le second, tantôt après le quatrième vers, dans les sixains où les deux vers d'une même rime sont à la fin de la strophe, comme dans les stances suivantes.

Seigneur, dans ton temple adorable,
Quel mortel est digne d'entrer ?
Qui pourra, grand Dieu pénétrer
Ce sanctuaire impénétrable,
Où tes saints inclinés, d'un œil respectueux,
Contemplent de ton front l'éclat majestueux ?

Ce sera celui qui du vice
Evite le sentier impur,
Qui marche d'un pas ferme et sûr,
Dans le chemin de la justice ;
Attentif et fidèle à distinguer sa voix,
Intrépide et sévère à pratiquer ses loix ;

Celui devant qui le superbe,
Enflé d'une vaine splendeur,
Paroît plus bas dans sa grandeur
Que l'insecte caché sous l'herbe ;
Qui bravant du méchant le faste couronné,
Honore la vertu du juste infortuné.

III. *Stances de huit vers.*

Ces stances ne sont ordinairement que deux quatrains joints ensemble. Le sens doit finir après le premier ;

et les vers de tous les deux s'entrelacent, comme nous l'avons déjà dit. Exemple :

Tel en un sacré vallon,
Sur le bord d'une onde pure,
Croît à l'abri de l'Aquilon
Un jeune lys, l'amour de la nature.
Loin du monde élevé, de tous les dons des Cieux
Il est orné dès sa naissance ;
Et du méchant l'abord contagieux
N'altère point son innocence.
RACINE, *chœurs d'Athalie.*

Si quelque jour étant ivre
La mort arrêtoit mes pas,
Je ne voudrois pas revivre
Après un si doux trépas :
Je m'en irois dans l'Averne
Faire enivrer Alecton,
Et bâtir une taverne
Dans le manoir de Pluton.—MAITRE ADAM.

Ces stances peuvent aussi commencer par deux vers sur une même rime, et les six autres sont sur des rimes croisées. Quelquefois aussi ces stances n'ont qu'un sixain sur deux ou trois rimes, après quoi viennent deux vers de même rime.

Ces mélanges de rime peuvent aisément se concevoir, sans qu'il soit nécessaire d'en citer des exemples ; d'ailleurs ils ne sont pas communs.

IV. *Stances de dix vers.*

Les stances de dix vers ne sont autre chose qu'un quatrain et un sixain, dont les vers s'entremêlent selon les règles ordinaires. Elles tirent leur harmonie d'un premier repos placé à la fin du quatrain, et d'un second après le septième vers. Ex.

C'est un arrêt du Ciel, il faut que l'homme meure ;
Tel est son partage et son sort :
Rien n'est plus certain que la mort,
Et rien plus incertain que cette dernière heure.
Heureuse incertitude, utile obscurité,
Par où ta divine bonté
A veiller, à prier, sans cesse nous convie !
Que ne pouvons-nous point avec un tel secours,
Qui nous fait regarder tous les jours de la vie
Comme le dernier de nos jours !

Les Cieux instruisent la terre
A révérer leur auteur ;
Tout ce que leur globe enserre,
Célèbre un Dieu Créateur.
Quel plus sublime cantique
Que ce concert magnifique
De tous les célestes corps !
Quelle grandeur infinie !
Quelle divine harmonie
Résulte de leurs accords !

RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE IMPAIR.

Les stances de nombre impair ont toutes, trois vers sur une même rime. L'ordonnance des vers y est d'ailleurs arbitraire, excepté qu'on ne peut mettre que deux rimes semblables de suite, et que le quatrain par lequel commencent les stances de sept ou de neuf vers, doit être terminé par un repos.

Stances de cinq vers.

O rives du Jourdain ! ô champs aimés des Cieux !
Sacrés monts, fertiles vallées,
Par cent miracles signalées,
Du doux pays de nos ayeux
Serons-nous toujours exilées ?

Pardonne, Dieu puissant, pardonne à ma foiblesse,
A l'aspect des méchans, confus, épouvanté,
Le trouble m'a saisi, mes pas ont hésité ;
Mon zèle m'a trahi, Seigneur, je le confesse,
En voyant leur prospérité.

Stances de sept vers.

Si la loi du Seigneur vous touche,
Si le mensonge vous fait peur,
Si la justice en votre cœur
Règne aussi bien qu'en votre bouche ;
Parlez, fils des hommes, pourquoi
Faut-il qu'une haine farouche
Préside aux jugemens que vous lancez sur moi ?

Stance de neuf vers.

Quel rempart, quelle autre barrière
Pourra défendre l'innocent
Contre la fraude meurtrière
De l'impie adroit et puissant ?
Sa langue aux feintes préparée,

Ressemble à la flèche acérée
Qui part et frappe en un moment
C'est un feu léger dans l'entrée,
Que suit un long embrâsement.

DU SONNET.

Boileau feint qu'Apollon,

Voulant pousser à bout tous les rimeurs françois,
Inventa du Sonnet les rigoureuses lois,
Voulut qu'en deux quatrains de mesure pareille,
La rime avec deux sons frappât huit fois l'oreille;
Et qu'ensuite six vers artistement rangés,
Fussent en deux tercets par le sens partagés.
Sur-tout de ce poème il bannit la licence,
Défendit qu'un vers foible y pût jamais entrer,
Et qu'un mot déjà mis osât s'y remontrer.
Du reste il l'enrichit d'une beauté suprême:
Un Sonnet sans défaut vaut seul un long Poème.

Le Sonnet est composé de quatorze vers d'une mesure égale, et pour l'ordinaire de douze syllabes; ces vers sont partagés en deux quatrains et un sixain.

Les rimes masculines et féminines des deux quatrains sont semblables, et on les entremêle dans l'un, de la même manière que dans l'autre.

Le sixain se coupe en deux tercets, c'est-à-dire, en deux stances de trois vers. Ces tercets commencent l'un et l'autre par deux rimes semblables, en sorte que le troisième vers du premier, rime avec le troisième du second.

Il faut éviter que le mélange des rimes, dans les quatre derniers vers du sixain, soit le même que dans les quatrains.

Le second vers de chaque quatrain doit avoir un repos. Les deux quatrains et les deux tercets doivent être terminés chacun par un repos encore plus grand.

D'ailleurs tout doit être noble dans ce Poème, pensées, style, élocution. Point de répétitions, point de redondance. La force et l'élévation en sont les principaux caractères.

On voit cependant des Sonnets, dont les sujets ne sont pas sublimes; le style alors en est médiocre, et doit l'être. Voici deux exemples du Sonnet. Le pre-

mier dans le genre simple, exprime la nature même du Sonnet.

Doris, qui sait qu'aux vers quelquefois je me plais,
Me demande un Sonnet et je m'en désespère.
Quatorze vers grand Dieu, le moyen de les faire!
En voilà cependant déjà quatre de faits.
Je ne pouvais d'abord trouver de rime, mais
En fesant, on apprend à se tirer d'affaire.
Poursuivons; les quatrains ne m'étonneront guère,
Si du premier tercet je puis faire les frais.
Je commence au hasard, et si je ne m'abuse,
Je n'ai pas commencé sans l'aveu de ma Muse,
Puisqu'en si peu de temps je m'en tire si net.
J'entame le second, et ma joie est extrême;
Car des vers commandés j'achève le treizième.
Comptez s'ils sont quatorze, et voilà le Sonnet.

AUTRE SONNET.

Grand Dieu tes jugemens sont remplis d'équité:
Toujours tu prends plaisir à nous être propice;
Mais j'ai tant fait de mal, que jamais ta bonté
Ne me pardonnera qu'en blessant ta justice.

Oui, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété
Ne laisse à ton pouvoir que le choix du supplice.
Ton intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,
Et ta clémence même attend que je périsse.

Contente ton désir, puisqu'il t'est glorieux;
Offense-toi des pleurs qui coulent de mes yeux:
Tonne, frappe, il est temps, rends-moi guerre pour guerre.

J'adore, en périssant, la raison qui t'aigrit:
Mais dessus quel endroit tombera ton tonnerre
Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus-Christ.

DU RONDEAU.

Le Rondeau né Gaulois a la naïveté.

Tel est le caractère de ce petit poème. Toutes sortes de vers y sont propres, excepté les Alexandrins qui ont trop de gravité. Il y entre treize vers de même mesure, sur deux rimes.

On peut faire dans le Rondeau ce qu'on ne fait point dans les autres Poèmes. Comme il ne doit y avoir dans les huit derniers vers que trois rimes féminines, on peut mettre de suite sur trois rimes masculines le cinquième, le sixième et le septième. Mais on fait rarement ce mélange dans les cinq derniers vers.

Le Rondeau a deux repos nécessaires, l'un après le cinquième vers, l'autre après le refrain.

Le refrain qui se place après le huitième vers, et à la fin de la pièce, n'est autre chose que la répétition d'un ou de plusieurs mots du premier vers. Il doit avoir un sens lié avec ce qui précède, et être amené délicatement. Le premier des deux Rondeaux qui suivent, explique les règles du poème.

Ma foi, c'est fait de moi, car Isabeau
M'a conjuré de lui faire un Rondeau :
Cela me met en une peine extrême.
Quoi treize vers, huit en eau, cinq en *ême !*
Je lui ferois aussi-tôt un bateau.
En voilà cinq pourtant en un monceau :
Fesons-en huit en invoquant Brodeau,
Et puis mettons par quelque stratagème,
Ma foi, c'est fait.

Si je pouvois encor de mon cerveau
Tirer cinq vers, l'ouvrage seroit beau :
Mais cependant me voilà dans l'onzième,
Et si je crois que je fais le douzième :
En voilà treize ajustés au niveau.
Ma foi, c'est fait.

AUTRE RONDEAU.

Le bel esprit, au siècle de Marot,
Des dons du Ciel passoit pour le gros lot ;
Des grands seigneurs il donnoit accointance,
Menoit par fois à noble jouissance,
Et qui plus est fesoit bouillir le pot.
Or est passé ce temps où d'un bon mot,
Stance ou dixain, on payoit son écot ;
Plus n'en voyons qui prennent pour finance
Le bel esprit.

A prix d'argent l'auteur, comme le sot,
Boit sa chopine et mange son gigot ;
Heureux encor d'en avoir suffisance !
Maints ont le chef plus rempli que la panse :
Dame Ignorance a fait enfin capot
Le bel esprit.

DE L'ÉPIGRAMME.

L'Epigramme plus libre, en son tour plus borné,
N'est souvent qu'un bon mot de deux rimes orné.

Cette pièce ne doit contenir qu'autant de vers qu'il en faut pour exprimer vivement la pensée ou le bon mot

qui en est l'âme. C'est pourquoi le nombre n'en est pas déterminé, non plus que la mesure et le mélange des rimes. Exemple :

Ci-gît ma femme : ah ! qu'elle est bien
Pour son repos et pour le mien !

Un Magister s'empressant d'étouffer
Quelque rumeur parmi la populace,
D'un coup dans l'œil se fit apostropher,
Dont il tomba, fesant laide grimace.
Lors un frater s'écria : place, place ;
J'ai pour ce mal un baume souverain.
Perdrai-je l'œil ? lui dit messer Pancrace ;
Non, mon ami, je le tiens dans ma main.

AUTRE ÉPIGRAMME.

Entre Racine et l'aîné des Corneilles
Les Chrysogons se font modérateurs :
L'un, à leur gré, passe les sept merveilles ;
L'autre ne plaît qu'aux versificateurs.
Or maintenant, veillez, graves auteurs,
Mordez vos doigts, ramez comme corsaires,
Pour mériter de pareils protecteurs,
Ou pour trouver de pareils adversaires.

DU MADRIGAL.

Le Madrigal plus simple, et plus noble en son tour,
Respire la douceur, la tendresse et l'amour.—Boileau.

Ce petit poème ne diffère que par-là de l'Epigramme, dont la pointe est souvent aiguisée par la satyre. Exemple :

L'autre jour l'enfant de Cythère,
Sous une treille à demi gris,
Disoit, en parlant à sa mère :
Je bois à toi, ma chère Iris.
Vénus le regarde en colère :
Maman, calmez votre courroux,
Si je vous prends pour ma bergère,
J'ai pris cent fois Iris pour vous.

Nota. Le Sonnet et le Rondeau ont aujourd'hui perdu toute leur vogue, et il est très-rare que l'on s'exerce dans ces deux genres de poésie.

LATELY PUBLISHED BY

RICHARDSON & LORD,

A

Manual of French Phrases,

AND

FRENCH CONVERSATIONS:

ADAPTED TO WANOSTROCHT'S GRAMMAR.

Containing an extensive collection of words and dialogues under each rule, with examples from the best French Authors.

Utilius homini nihil est quàm rectè loqui.
Phæd. Lib. IV. Fab. XII.

BY N. M. HENTZ.

ADVERTISEMENT.

LONG experience has shewn, that to acquire the habit of conversing in a foreign language, the surest method for the learner, is to commit a great number of phrases employed in conversation and adapted to the rules of the Grammar which he goes through.

Most persons, who have studied the French language with care, find little, or no difficulty, in reading our Authors,

but very few indeed find themselves able to converse with fluency. For the purpose of removing this difficulty, a list of many books, or manuals of conversation, has been published; some containing useful matter, many without method or accuracy, all arranged in chapters, or under heads, taking the most common subjects which may be the topics of conversation, as if the mind, transformed into a mechanical engine, could apply such chapters to all cases which may occur in discourse. A book therefore is still needed, which being adapted to one of the best Grammars in use, may—First, give to the learner a number of phrases, placed under each rule, analogous to the exercise which is to be written. Second, incorporate with those phrases all words in common use, arranged, as far as possible, according to some fixed principle. Third, introduce gradually the idioms of the language, beginning with the most simple.

Such is the plan of the *Manual* which we have added to WANOSTROCHT'S GRAMMAR. Every number, or division, corresponds to a rule, and we have added a quotation, from some of our best poets, to almost every paragraph. For the phrases, our principal source has been the last edition of the Dictionary of the Academy; the Grammaire des Grammaires has been our guide throughout; for the selection of words we have consulted many vocabularies—that of Mr. POPPLETON has appeared to us to be the most complete.

AUG 2 2 1938